

PART NO. ENMDEC-NA1-8

HITACHI

Reliable solutions

Operator's Manual

ZAXIS

75US-5N

85USB-5N

Hydraulic Excavator

ZX75US-5N • 85USB-5N HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR OPERATOR'S MANUAL

 **Hitachi Construction Machinery Co., Ltd.**

URL:<http://www.hitachi-c-m.com>

PRINTED IN JAPAN (K) 2021, 01

ENMDEC-NA1-8

Serial No.
ZX75US-5N 015001 and up
ZX85USB-5N 017001 and up

INTRODUCTION

Read this manual carefully to learn how to operate and service your machine correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or machine damage.

This standard specification machine can be operated under the following conditions without being modified.
Atmospheric Temperature: -20 °C to 40 °C (-4 °F to 104 °F)
Altitude: 0 m to 2000 m (0 ft to 6600 ft)

In case the machine is used under conditions other than described above, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

This manual should be considered a permanent part of your machine and should remain with the machine when you sell it.

This machine is of metric design. Measurements in this manual are metric. Use only metric hardware and tools as specified.

Right-hand and left-hand sides are determined by facing in the direction of forward travel.

Write product identification numbers in the Machine Numbers section. Accurately record all the numbers to help in tracing the machine should it be stolen. Your dealer also needs these numbers when you order parts. If this manual is kept on the machine, also file the identification numbers in a secure place off the machine.

Be sure to use fuel that complies with JIS K-2204, EN-590 or ASTM D-975 which contains 15 ppm or lower sulfur. Also use fuel that complies with solid contamination level of class 18/16/13 of ISO4406-1999 (solid contamination includes dust). If the fuel specified above is not used, exhaust gas that exceeds the regulation values may be discharged, causing serious problem on the engine. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

Warranty is provided as a part of Hitachi's support program for customers who operate and maintain their equipment as described in this manual. The warranty is explained on the warranty certificate which you should have received from your dealer.

This warranty provides you the assurance that Hitachi will back its products where defects appear within the warranty period. In some circumstances, Hitachi also provides field improvements, often without charge to the customer, even if the product is out of warranty.

Should the equipment be abused, or modified to change its performance beyond the original factory specifications, the warranty will become void and field improvements may be denied.

Setting fuel delivery above specifications or otherwise overpowering machines will result in such action.

Only qualified, experienced operators officially licensed (according to local law) should be allowed to operate the machine. Moreover, only officially licensed personnel should be allowed to inspect and service the machine.

PRIOR TO OPERATING THIS MACHINE, INCLUDING COMMUNICATION SYSTEM, IN A COUNTRY OTHER THAN A COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE, IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO MAKE MODIFICATIONS TO IT SO THAT IT COMPLIES WITH THE LOCAL REGULATORY STANDARDS (INCLUDING SAFETY STANDARDS) AND LEGAL REQUIREMENTS OF THAT PARTICULAR COUNTRY. PLEASE DO NOT EXPORT OR OPERATE THIS MACHINE OUTSIDE OF THE COUNTRY OF ITS INTENDED USE UNTIL SUCH COMPLIANCE HAS BEEN CONFIRMED. PLEASE CONTACT HITACHI CONSTRUCTION MACHINERY CO., LTD. OR ANY OF OUR AUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR OR DEALER IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS CONCERNING COMPLIANCE.

CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

INDEX

MACHINE NUMBERS

SAFETY

SAFETY SIGNS

COMPONENTS NAME

GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE

OPERATOR'S STATION

BREAK-IN

OPERATING THE ENGINE

DRIVING THE MACHINE

OPERATING THE MACHINE

TRANSPORTING

MAINTENANCE

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

STORAGE

TROUBLESHOOTING

SPECIFICATIONS

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

INDEX

CONTENTS

MACHINE NUMBERS	1	Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids.....	S-35
SAFETY	S-1	Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper	S-35
Recognize Safety Information	S-1	Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating	S-36
Understand Signal Words.....	S-1	Beware of Asbestos and Silicon Dust and Other Contamination.....	S-36
Follow Safety Instructions.....	S-2	Prevent Battery Explosions	S-37
Prepare for Emergencies.....	S-3	Service Air Conditioning System Safely	S-37
Wear Protective Clothing.....	S-3	Handle Chemical Products Safely.....	S-38
Protect Against Noise	S-4	Dispose of Waste Properly.....	S-38
Inspect Machine	S-4	Never Ride Attachment.....	S-39
General Precautions for Cab.....	S-5	Notes for Muffler Filter.....	S-39
Use Handholds and Steps	S-6	Precautions for Communication Terminal.....	S-39
Adjust the Operator's Seat	S-6	Notes on Protection of Operator's Station When the Machine Rolls Over.....	S-40
Ensure Safety Before Rising from or Leaving Operator's Seat.....	S-7	SAFETY SIGNS	S-41
Fasten Your Seat Belt.....	S-7	COMPONENTS NAME.....	1-1
Move and Operate Machine Safely.....	S-8	GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE	1-2
Operate Only from Operator's Seat	S-8	OPERATOR'S STATION.....	1-3
Jump Starting	S-9	Muffler Filter	1-3
Keep Riders off Machine	S-9	Cab Features.....	1-6
Precautions for Operations	S-10	ZX75US-5N	1-6
Investigate Job Site Beforehand	S-11	ZX85USB-5N	1-7
Install OPG Guard	S-12	Multi Function Monitor	1-8
Restriction of Attachment Installation	S-12	Default Setting	1-9
Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines....	S-13	Basic Screen.....	1-10
Confirm Direction of Machine to Be Driven.....	S-13	How to Use Screens	1-11
Drive Machine Safely.....	S-14	Displaying Basic Screen	1-11
Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents.....	S-16	Hour Meter	1-14
Avoid Injury from Back-Over and Swing Accidents	S-17	Clock.....	1-14
Keep Person Clear from Working Area.....	S-18	Fuel Gauge	1-14
Never Position Bucket Over Anyone	S-18	Coolant Temperature Gauge	1-15
Avoid Undercutting.....	S-19	Operating Status Icon Display.....	1-15
Avoid Tipping.....	S-19	Security Functions (Optional)	1-16
Never Undercut a High Bank.....	S-20	Input Password	1-16
Dig with Caution.....	S-20	Extending Password Duration Time	1-17
Operate with Caution	S-20	Alarm Occurrence Screen.....	1-18
Avoid Power Lines.....	S-21	Remedy	1-20
Precautions for Lightning.....	S-21	Muffler Filter	1-24
Object Handling	S-22	Muffler Filter Condition Display.....	1-24
Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object.....	S-23	Muffler Filter Manual Regeneration Request.....	1-25
Park Machine Safely.....	S-24	Manual Regeneration Procedure	1-26
Handle Fluids Safely—Avoid Fires.....	S-24	Main Menu.....	1-27
Transport Safely	S-25	Air Conditioner.....	1-28
Practice Safe Maintenance.....	S-26	Circulation Air Mode.....	1-28
Warn Others of Service Work	S-27	Air Conditioner ON/OFF	1-28
Support Machine Properly.....	S-27	Radio	1-29
Stay Clear of Moving Parts	S-28	Mail (Optional).....	1-30
Prevent Parts from Flying	S-28	Setting Menu	1-32
Store Attachments Safely	S-29	Date and Time.....	1-33
Prevent Burns.....	S-29	Time Adjustment	1-33
Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically.....	S-30	Date Adjustment.....	1-35
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	S-30	Display Mode Setting	1-37
Prevent Fires.....	S-31		
Evacuating in Case of Fire.....	S-33		
Beware of Exhaust Fumes.....	S-33		
Precautions for Welding and Grinding	S-34		
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines	S-35		

CONTENTS

Auto Shut-Down	1-39	Using Cigar Lighter.....	1-93
Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF	1-39	Cab Light Switch.....	1-94
Acting Time Setting.....	1-40	Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever	1-95
Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited	1-41	Engine Stop Switch.....	1-96
Setting Procedure	1-41	Fuse Box.....	1-97
Password Change (Optional).....	1-43	Fuse Box A	1-97
Sub Meter	1-47	Fuse Box B.....	1-97
Rear View Camera Monitor	1-49	Auto Air Conditioner	1-98
Rear View Camera ON/OFF	1-49	Features	1-98
Brightness Adjustment.....	1-51	Components Name.....	1-99
Language Settings.....	1-53	Controller Part Name and Function	1-100
Lists of Display Language.....	1-55	Cab Heater Operation	1-102
Unit Selection	1-56	Cooling Operation.....	1-103
Display Item Selection (Rear View Camera OFF)	1-58	Defroster Operation.....	1-104
Main Menu Sequence Change	1-60	Cool Head/Warm Foot Operation	1-104
Information Menu	1-62	Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage	1-105
Operation	1-63	For Rapid Cooling	1-105
Fuel Consumption	1-63	When Windows Become Clouded	1-105
Attachment Operation.....	1-65	Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance	1-105
Travel Operation.....	1-67	AM/FM Radio Operation	1-106
Actual operation	1-69	Controls on the Radio.....	1-106
Maintenance	1-71	Tuning Procedure	1-106
Maintenance Notice.....	1-71	Station Presetting Procedure.....	1-107
Time Remains and Maintenance Interval.....	1-73	Station Auto-Presetting Procedure	1-108
Troubleshooting	1-75	TONE Control.....	1-109
Monitoring.....	1-77	Audio Input (Optional)	1-110
Switch Panel.....	1-79	Cab Door Release Lever	1-111
Return to Previous Screen (Monitor)	1-80	Opening/Closing and Removing Cab Inside Window ..	1-112
Return to Basic Screen (Monitor)	1-80	Opening Upper Front Window	1-113
Select/Confirm Switch (Monitor).....	1-80	Removing and Storing Lower Front Window	1-115
Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch		Opening Side Windows	1-116
(Air Conditioner)	1-80	Opening/Closing Overhead Window	
AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch (Air Conditioner).....	1-80	(Clear Hatch: If Equipped).....	1-117
AM/FM Selector/Tuning Switch (Radio).....	1-81	Emergency Exit	1-118
Power Switch/Volume Control Knob (Radio).....	1-81	Adjusting Operator's Seat	1-120
Engine Control Dial	1-81	Seat Height and Angle Adjustment	1-120
Auto-Idle Switch.....	1-82	Console and Seat Fore-aft Adjustment.....	1-120
Travel Mode Switch	1-82	Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment	1-120
Power Mode Switch	1-83	Suspension Adjustment.....	1-120
Work Light Switch.....	1-83	Backrest Adjustment	1-121
Wiper/Washer Switch	1-84	Armrest Adjustment	1-121
Overhead Window Wiper and Washer Switch		Adjusting Operator's Seat (Optional)	1-122
(ZX75US-5N) (Optional)	1-85	Adjusting Seat Height	1-122
Numeric Keypad.....	1-85	Console and Seat Fore-aft Adjustment.....	1-122
Switch Panel (for Optional Equipment).....	1-86	Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment	1-122
Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional).....	1-87	Suspension Adjustment.....	1-123
Swing Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional)	1-87	Fore-Aft Position Adjustment of Seat Surface.....	1-123
Rear Work Light Switch (Optional).....	1-87	Angle Adjustment of Seat Surface.....	1-123
Overload Alarm Switch (Optional).....	1-87	Backrest Adjustment	1-123
Seat Heater Switch	1-88	Armrest Adjustment	1-123
Rotating Lamp Switch (Optional).....	1-88	Console Height Adjustment	1-124
Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional)	1-88	Adjusting Procedures	1-124
Key Switch.....	1-89	Installation and Adjustment of Mirrors	1-125
Horn Switch	1-89	Seat Belt	1-126
Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional).....	1-90	BREAK-IN	2-1
Cigar Lighter.....	1-93	Breaking in New Machine	2-1

CONTENTS

OPERATING THE ENGINE	3-1	Maintenance Guide Table	7-5
Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting	3-1	Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance	7-8
Before Starting Engine	3-2	Hood and Access Covers	7-9
Starting the Engine	3-3	Maintenance Guide	7-10
Check Instruments After Starting Engine	3-7	Periodic Replacement of Parts	7-14
Using Booster Batteries	3-8	Kind of Oils	7-15
Stopping the Engine	3-10	Recommended Engine Oil	7-15
DRIVING THE MACHINE	4-1	A. Greasing	7-18
Travel Levers and Pedals	4-1	Front Joint Pins	7-18
Travel Mode Switch	4-3	Swing Bearing	7-20
Travel Alarm (Optional)	4-4	Swing Internal Gear	7-21
Traveling	4-5	Blade Joint Pins	7-22
Traveling on Soft Ground	4-6	B. Engine	7-23
Raise One Track Using Boom and Arm	4-7	Engine Oil Level	7-23
Towing Machine	4-8	Change Engine Oil	7-24
Operating in Water or Mud	4-9	Replace Engine Oil Filter	7-24
Precautions for Traveling on Slopes	4-10	C. Transmission	7-26
Parking the Machine on Slopes	4-11	Travel Reduction Gear	7-26
Parking the Machine	4-11	D. Hydraulic System	7-28
OPERATING THE MACHINE	5-1	Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment	7-28
Control Lever (ISO Pattern)	5-1	Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter	
Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever	5-2	Element	7-30
Blade Lever	5-3	Check Hydraulic Oil Level	7-32
Warming Up Operation	5-4	Drain Hydraulic Tank Sump	7-33
Engine Speed Control	5-5	Change Hydraulic Oil	7-34
Auto-Idle	5-6	Suction Filter Cleaning	7-34
Auto Shut-Down	5-8	Air Bleeding Procedures	7-36
Muffler Filter Manual Regeneration	5-11	Replace Full-Flow Filter	7-37
Power Mode	5-13	Std. Model	7-37
Operating Backhoe	5-14	Demolition and logging work	7-38
Shovel	5-15	Replace Pilot Oil Filter	7-40
Grading Operation	5-16	Replace Swing Drain Filter	7-41
Avoid Driving Bucket Teeth into Ground	5-17	Serial No.	7-41
Avoid Striking With Bucket	5-17	ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522	7-41
Avoid Abusive Operation	5-18	ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111	7-41
Avoid Side Load the Bucket	5-18	Replace Air Breather Element	7-42
Avoid Hitting Blade with Front-End Attachment	5-19	Check Hoses and Lines	7-43
Do Not Use Wide Track Shoes on Rough Ground	5-20	E. Fuel System	7-47
Shackle Hole Usage	5-21	Check Fuel Level	7-47
Lifting	5-22	Drain Fuel Tank Sump	7-49
Emergency Boom Lowering Procedure	5-23	Drain Fuel Pre-Filter	7-50
Precautions for After Operations	5-26	Air Bleeding Procedures	7-51
TRANSPORTING	6-1	Replace Fuel Main Filter Element	7-52
Transporting by Road	6-1	Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element	7-53
Loading/Unloading on a Trailer	6-2	Check Fuel Hoses	7-54
Fastening Machine for Transporting	6-5	F. Air Cleaner	7-55
Unloading	6-6	Clean and Replace Air Cleaner Outer Element	7-55
Lifting Machine	6-7	Replace Air Cleaner Inner Elements (Optional)	7-55
Wire Rope Length while lifting the Machine,		G. Cooling System	7-57
Wire Rope Load Bearing Values	6-9	Check Coolant Level	7-58
MAINTENANCE	7-1	Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension	7-59
Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures	7-1	Change Coolant	7-60
Check the Hour Meter Regularly	7-3	Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler Core	7-61
Layout	7-4	Clean Oil Cooler and Radiator Front Screen	7-61
		Clean Air Conditioner Condenser	7-61
		Clean Fuel Cooler Front Screen	7-61

CONTENTS

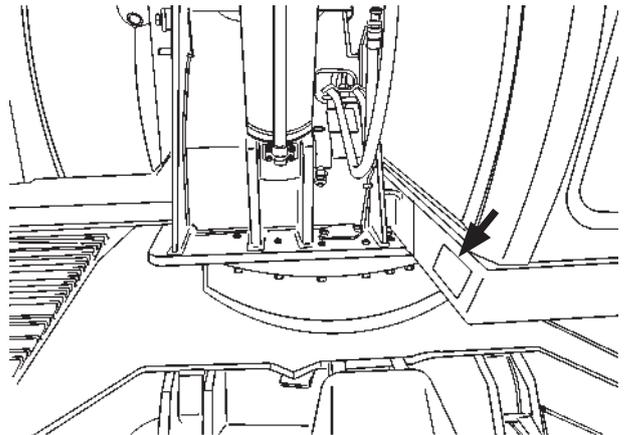
H. Electrical System.....	7-62	Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Breaker) (Optional)	13-4
Batteries	7-62	Precautions for Breaker Operation.....	13-5
Electrolyte Level Check.....	7-64	Change Hydraulic Oil and	
Check Electrolyte Specific Gravity	7-65	Replace Full-Flow Filter Element	13-9
Replace Batteries	7-66	Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Crusher) Std. Model	
Replacing Fuses	7-67	(Optional).....	13-10
I. Miscellaneous.....	7-69	Precautions for Crusher Operation	13-11
Check and Replace Bucket Teeth	7-69	Attachment.....	13-14
Change Bucket.....	7-71	Attachment Connection Parts	13-17
Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel.....	7-72	Precaution for Arm Roll-In/Bucket Roll-In Combined	
Adjust Bucket Linkage	7-73	Operation.....	13-19
Remove Travel Levers	7-74	Precaution for Arm Roll-In/Bucket Roll-In Combined	
Check and Replace Seat Belt.....	7-74	Operation.....	13-19
Check Windshield Fluid Level.....	7-75	Control Lever (HITACHI).....	13-20
Check Track Sag (Steel Crawler)	7-76	Control Lever (SAE-backhoe Pattern).....	13-21
Check Track Sag (Rubber Crawler) (Optional).....	7-79	INDEX.....	14-1
Check Rubber Track for Damage	7-79		
Converting the Track	7-81		
Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter	7-82		
Check Air Conditioner	7-85		
Clean Cab Floor.....	7-87		
Check, Clean and Function Check Injector.....	7-88		
Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance	7-88		
Measure Engine Compression Pressure.....	7-88		
Check Starter and Alternator	7-88		
Check, Clean and Function Check EGR Valve.....	7-88		
Check Gas Damper	7-88		
Check Crankcase Breather	7-89		
Clean EGR Cooler	7-89		
Check Intake Throttle Valve.....	7-89		
Check Radiator Cap.....	7-89		
Tightening and Retightening Torque of			
Nuts and Bolts.....	7-89		
J. Muffler Filter	7-99		
Check and Clean Filter Element of Muffler Filter	7-99		
Check and Clean Muffler Filter	7-99		
MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL			
CONDITIONS	9-1		
STORAGE	10-1		
Storing the Machine.....	10-1		
TROUBLESHOOTING	11-1		
SPECIFICATIONS	12-1		
Specifications ZX75US-5N.....	12-1		
Working Ranges ZX75US-5N.....	12-2		
Shoe Types and Applications ZX75US-5N	12-3		
Specifications ZX85USB-5N	12-4		
Working Ranges ZX85USB-5N	12-5		
Shoe Types and Applications ZX85USB-5N	12-6		
OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES	13-1		
Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and			
Quick Coupler.....	13-1		
Pipings for Breaker and Crusher.....	13-2		
Secondary Relief Pressure Adjustment	13-3		

MACHINE NUMBERS

The manufacturing Nos. explained in this group is the individual number (serial No.) given to each machine and hydraulic components. These numbers are requested when inquiring any information on the machine and/or components. Fill these serial Nos. in the blank spaces in this group to immediately make them available upon request.

Machine

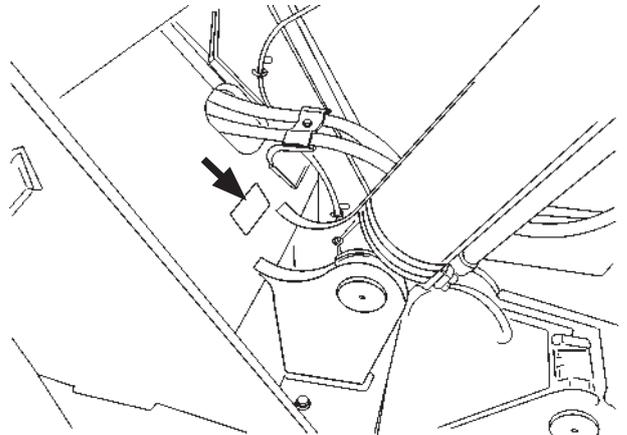
TYPE : _____
 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER : _____



M1CD-01-002

Product Identification Number

PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER : _____



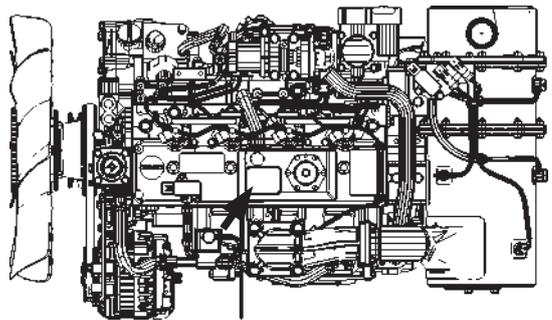
M1CD-01-003

 **NOTE:** _____ Marks to indicate the start and end of the PIN
 HCMDCAA0000100001

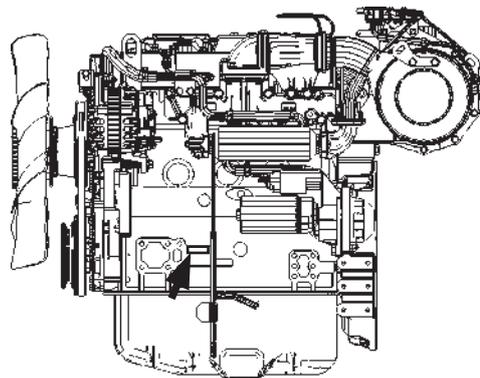
 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (PIN)

Engine

TYPE : _____
 MFG. NO. : _____



MDEC-00-001



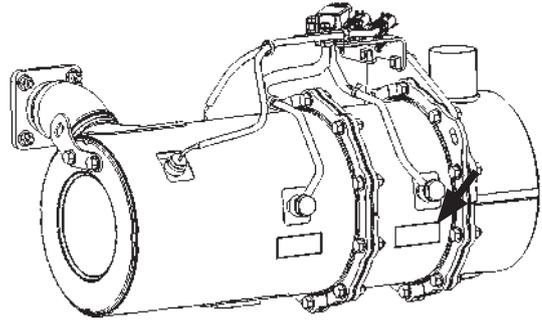
MDEC-00-002

MACHINE NUMBERS

Muffler Filter

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____

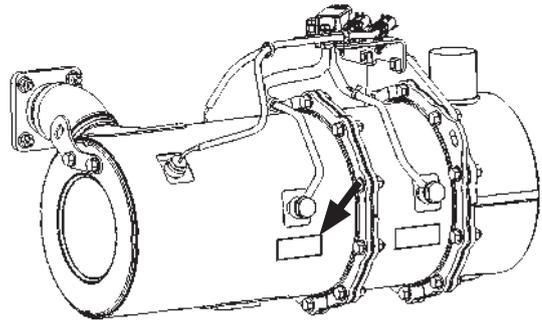


MADG-00-017

DOC (Diesel Oxidation Catalyst)

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____

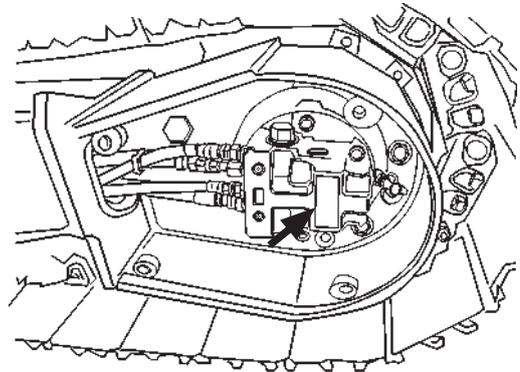


MADG-00-017

Travel Motor

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____

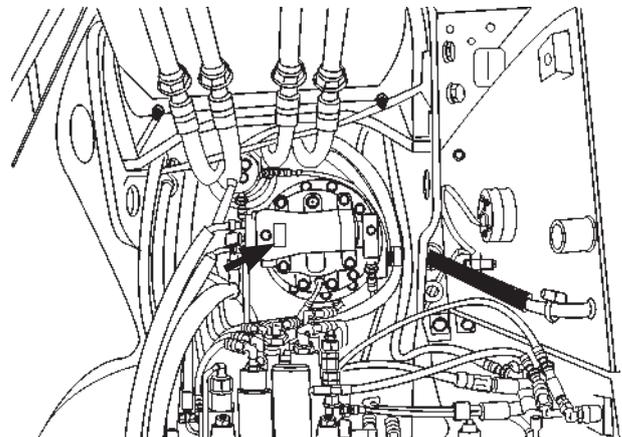


M1CD-01-005

Swing Motor

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____



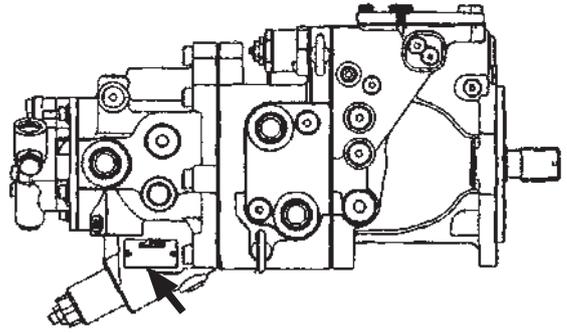
M1CD-07-004

MACHINE NUMBERS

Hydraulic Pump

TYPE : _____

MFG. NO. : _____



M1P1-01-002

SAFETY

Recognize Safety Information

- These are the **SAFETY ALERT SYMBOLS**.
 - When you see these symbols on your machine or in this manual, be alert to the potential for personal injury.
 - Follow recommended precautions and safe operating practices.



SA-2644

Understand Signal Words

- On machine safety signs, signal words designating the degree or level of hazard - **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION** - are used with the safety alert symbol.
 - **DANGER** indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 - **WARNING** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 - **CAUTION** indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
 - **DANGER or WARNING safety signs** are located near specific hazards. General precautions are listed on **CAUTION safety signs**.
 - Some safety signs do not use any of the designated signal words above after the safety alert symbol are occasionally used on this machine.



IMPORTANT



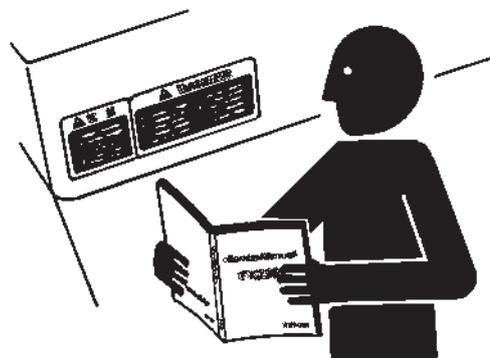
- To avoid confusing machine protection with personal safety messages, a signal word **IMPORTANT** indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in damage to the machine.
-  **NOTE**: indicates an additional explanation for an element of information.

SA-1223

SAFETY

Follow Safety Instructions

- Carefully read and follow all safety signs on the machine and all safety messages in this manual.
- Safety signs should be installed, maintained and replaced when necessary.
 - If a safety sign or this manual is damaged or missing, order a replacement from your authorized dealer in the same way you order other replacement parts (be sure to state machine model and serial number when ordering).
- Learn how to operate the machine and its controls correctly and safely.
- Allow only trained, qualified, authorized personnel to operate the machine.
- Keep your machine in proper working condition.
 - Unauthorized modifications of the machine may impair its function and/or safety and affect machine life.
 - Do not modify any machine parts without authorization. Failure to do so may deteriorate the part safety, function, and/or service life. In addition, personal accident, machine trouble, and/or damage to material caused by unauthorized modifications will void Hitachi Warranty Policy.
 - Never attempt to modify or disassemble the inlet/exhaust parts and the muffler filter. Avoid giving shocks on the muffler filter by striking elements with other objects or dropping the elements. Failure to do so may affect the exhaust gas purifying device, possibly damaging it or lowering its performance.
 - Do not use attachments and/or optional parts or equipment not authorized by Hitachi. Failure to do so may deteriorate the safety, function, and/or service life of the machine. In addition, personal accident, machine trouble, and/or damage to material caused by using unauthorized attachments and/or optional parts or equipment will void Hitachi Warranty Policy.
- The safety messages in this SAFETY chapter are intended to illustrate basic safety procedures of machines. However it is impossible for these safety messages to cover every hazardous situation you may encounter. If you have any questions, you should first consult your supervisor and/or your authorized dealer before operating or performing maintenance work on the machine.



SA-003

SAFETY

Prepare for Emergencies

- Be prepared if a fire starts or if an accident occurs.
 - Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher on hand.
 - Thoroughly read and understand the label attached on the fire extinguisher to use it properly.
 - To ensure that a fire extinguisher can be always used when necessary, check and service the fire extinguisher at the recommended intervals as specified in the fire extinguisher manual.
 - Establish emergency procedure guidelines to cope with fires and accidents.
 - Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department posted near your telephone.



SA-437

Wear Protective Clothing

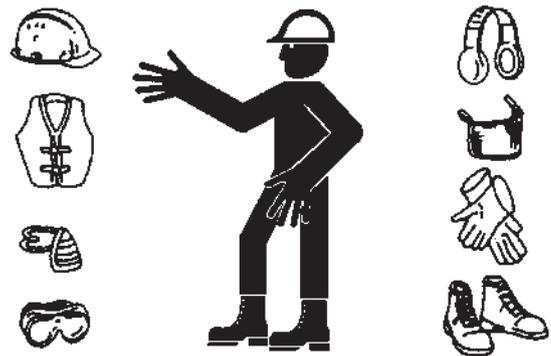
- Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

You may need:

- A hard hat
- Safety shoes
- Safety glasses, goggles, or face shield
- Heavy gloves
- Hearing protection
- Reflective clothing
- Wet weather gear
- Respirator or filter mask.

Be sure to wear the correct equipment and clothing for the job. Do not take any chances.

- Avoid wearing loose clothing, jewelry, or other items that can catch on control levers or other parts of the machine.
- Operating equipment safely requires the full attention of the operator. Do not wear radio or music headphones while operating the machine.



SA-438

SAFETY

Protect Against Noise

- Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.
 - Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortably loud noises.



SA-434

Inspect Machine

- Inspect your machine carefully each day or shift by walking around it before you start it to avoid personal injury.
 - In the walk-around inspection be sure to cover all points described in the "Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting" section in the operator's manual.



SA-435

SAFETY

General Precautions for Cab

- Before entering the cab, thoroughly remove all dirt and/or oil such as mud, grease, soil or stones that may mess up the cab from the soles of your work boots. If any controls such as a pedal is operated while with dirt and/or oil on the soles of the operator's work boots, the operator's foot may slip off the pedal, possibly resulting in a personal accident.
- Do not mess up around the operator's seat with parts, tools, soil, stones, obstacles that may fold up or turn over, cans or lunch box. The levers or pedals become inoperable if obstacle jams in operation stroke of the travel levers/pedals, pilot control shut-off lever or control levers, which may result in serious injury or death.
- Avoid storing transparent bottles in the cab. Do not attach any transparent type window decorations on the windowpanes as they may focus sunlight, possibly starting a fire.
- Refrain from listening to the radio, or using music headphones or mobile telephones in the cab while operating the machine.
- Keep all flammable objects and/or explosives away from the machine.
- After using the ashtray, always cover it to extinguish the match and/or tobacco.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the cab. When the temperature in the cab increases, the lighter may explode.
- Use proper floor mat dedicated to the machine. If another floor mat is used, it may be displaced and contact with the travel pedals during operation, resulting in serious injury or death.

SAFETY

Use Handholds and Steps

- Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.
 - When you get on and off the machine, always face the machine and maintain a three-point contact with the steps and handrails.
 - Do not use any controls as hand-holds.
 - Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.
 - Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.
 - Never get on and off the machine with tools in your hands.



SA-439

Adjust the Operator's Seat

- A poorly adjusted seat for either the operator or for the work at hand may quickly fatigue the operator leading to misoperations.
 - The seat should be adjusted whenever changing the operator for the machine.
 - The operator should be able to fully depress the pedals and to correctly operate the control levers with his back against the seat back.
 - If not, move the seat forward or backward, and check again.
 - Adjust the rear view mirror position so that the best rear visibility is obtained from the operator's seat. If the mirror is broken, immediately replace it with a new one.



SA-378

SAFETY

Ensure Safety Before Rising from or Leaving Operator's Seat

- Before rising from the operator's seat to open/close either side window or to adjust the seat position, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and then move the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with a control lever and/or pedal, possibly resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- Before leaving the machine, be sure to first lower the front attachment to the ground and then move the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine.
- Before leaving the machine, close all windows, doors, and access covers and lock them up.

Fasten Your Seat Belt

- If the machine should overturn, the operator may become injured and/or thrown from the cab. Additionally the operator may be crushed by the overturning machine, resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine webbing, buckle and attaching hardware. If any item is damaged or worn, replace the seat belt or component before operating the machine.
 - Be sure to remain seated with the seat belt securely fastened at all times when the machine is in operation to minimize the chance of injury from an accident.
 - We recommend that the seat belt be replaced every three years regardless of its apparent condition.



SA-237

SAFETY

Move and Operate Machine Safely

- Bystanders can be run over.
 - Take extra care not to run over bystanders. Confirm the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.
 - Always keep the travel alarm and horn in working condition (if equipped). It warns people when the machine starts to move.
 - Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.
 - Use appropriate illumination. Check that all lights are operable before operating the machine. If any faulty illumination is present, immediately repair it.
 - Ensure the cab door, windows, doors and covers are securely locked.
 - Check the mirrors and the monitor in the CAB for problems.
If there is, replace the problem part(s) or clean the mirror, camera and the monitor.
Refer to Rear View Monitor section on the cleaning of the camera and the monitor.



SA-426

Operate Only from Operator's Seat

- Inappropriate engine starting procedures may cause the machine to runaway, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Start the engine only when seated in the operator's seat.
 - NEVER start the engine while standing on the track or on ground.
 - Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.
 - Before starting the engine, confirm that all control levers are in neutral.
 - Before starting the engine, confirm the safety around the machine and sound the horn to alert bystanders.



SA-444

SAFETY

Jump Starting

- Battery gas can explode, resulting in serious injury.
 - If the engine must be jump started, be sure to follow the instructions shown in the “OPERATING THE ENGINE” chapter in the operator’s manual.
 - The operator must be in the operator’s seat so that the machine will be under control when the engine starts. Jump starting is a two-person operation.
 - Never use a frozen battery.
 - Failure to follow correct jump starting procedures could result in a battery explosion or a runaway machine.



SA-032

Keep Riders off Machine

- Riders on machine are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the machine.
 - Only the operator should be on the machine. Keep riders off.
 - Riders also obstruct the operator’s view, resulting in the machine being operated in an unsafe manner.



SA-379

SAFETY

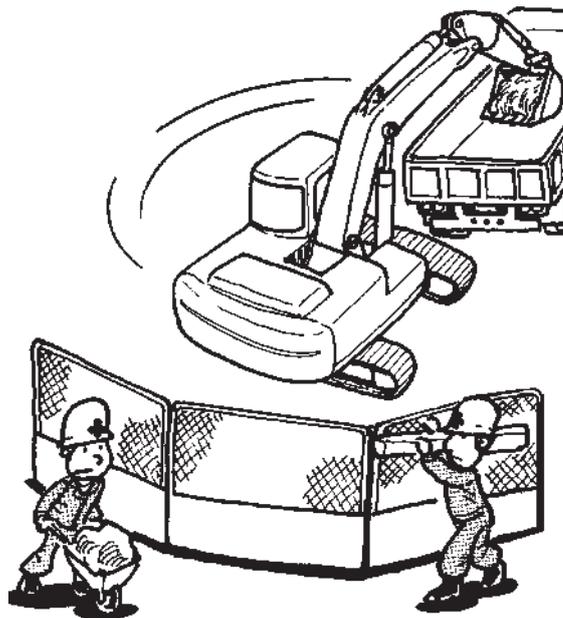
Precautions for Operations

- Investigate the work site before starting operations.
 - Be sure to wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate for the job, such as a hard hat, etc. when operating the machine.
 - Clear all persons and obstacles from area of operation and machine movement.

Always beware of the surroundings while operating.

When working in a small area surrounded by obstacles, take care not to hit the upperstructure against obstacles.

- When loading onto trucks, bring the bucket over the truck beds from the rear side. Take care not to swing the bucket over the cab or over any person.



M178-05-007

SAFETY

Investigate Job Site Beforehand

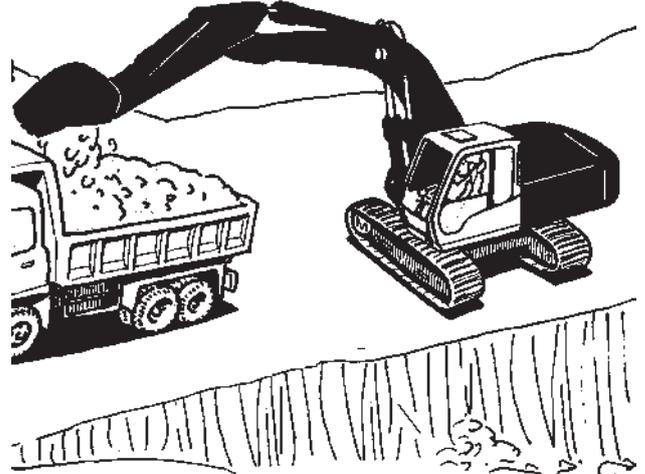
- When working at the edge of an excavation or on a road shoulder, the machine could tip over, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Investigate the configuration and ground conditions of the job site beforehand to prevent the machine from falling and to prevent the ground, stockpiles or banks from collapsing.
 - Make a work plan. Use machines appropriate to the work and job site.
 - Reinforce ground, edges and road shoulders as necessary. Keep the machine well back from the edges of excavations and road shoulders.
 - When working on an incline or on a road shoulder, employ a signal person as required.
 - Confirm that your machine is equipped with a FOPS cab before working in areas where the possibility of falling stones or debris exist.
 - When the footing is weak, reinforce the ground before starting work.
 - When working on frozen ground, be extremely alert. As ambient temperatures rise, footing becomes loose and slippery.
 - Beware the possibility of fire when operating the machine near flammable objects such as dry grass.



SA-380

SAFETY

- Make sure the worksite has sufficient strength to firmly support the machine.
When working close to an excavation or at road shoulders, operate the machine with the tracks positioned perpendicular to the cliff face with travel motors at the rear, so that the machine can more easily evacuate if the cliff face collapses.
- If working on the bottom of a cliff or a high bank is required, be sure to investigate the area first and confirm that no danger of the cliff or bank collapsing exists. If any possibility of cliff or bank collapsing exists, do not work on the area.
- Soft ground may collapse when operating the machine on it, possibly causing the machine to tip over. When working on soft ground is required, be sure to reinforce the ground first using large pieces of steel plates strong and firm enough to easily support the machine.
- Note that there is always a possibility of machine tipping over when working on rough terrain or on slopes. Prevent machine tipping over from occurring. When operating on rough terrain or on slopes:
 - Reduce the engine speed.
 - Select slow travel speed mode.
 - Operate the machine slowly and be cautious with machine movements.

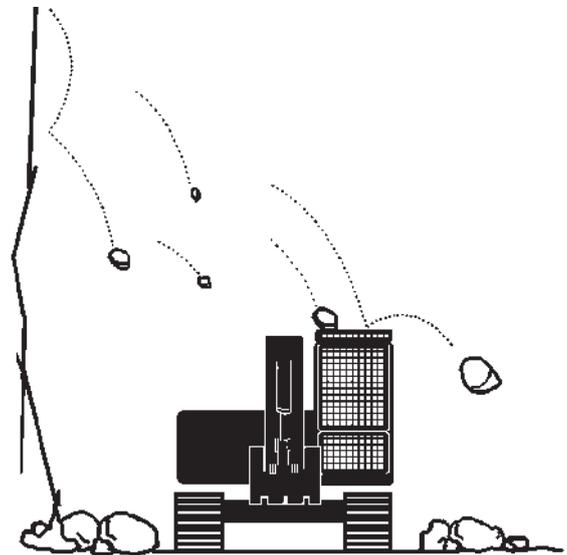


M104-05-016

Install OPG Guard

In case the machine is operated in areas where the possibilities of falling stones or debris exist, equip Hitachi OPG guard. Consult your authorized dealer for installing the OPG guard. The guard can be compliant with ROPS standards depending on the machine specifications.
In order not to impair operator protective structure:
Replace damaged ROPS or OPG guard. Never attempt to repair or modify the guard.

ROPS: Roll Over Protective Structure
OPG: Operator Protective Guard



SA-490

Restriction of Attachment Installation

- Do not install an attachment which exceeds specified weight for the machine structure.

SAFETY

Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines

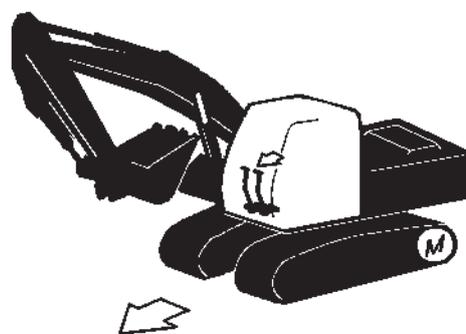
- For jobs involving multiple machines, provide signals commonly known by all personnel involved. Also, appoint a signal person to coordinate the job site. Make sure that all personnel obey the signal person's directions.



SA-481

Confirm Direction of Machine to Be Driven

- Incorrect travel pedal/lever operation may result in serious injury or death.
 - Before driving the machine, confirm the position of the undercarriage in relation to the operator's position. If the travel motors are located in front of the cab, the machine will move in reverse when travel pedals/levers are operated to the front.

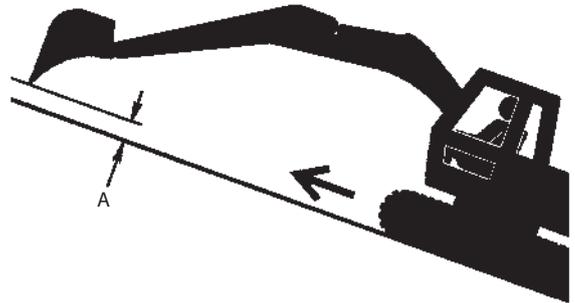


SA-491

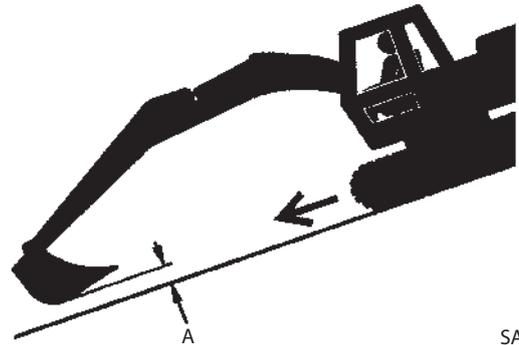
SAFETY

Drive Machine Safely

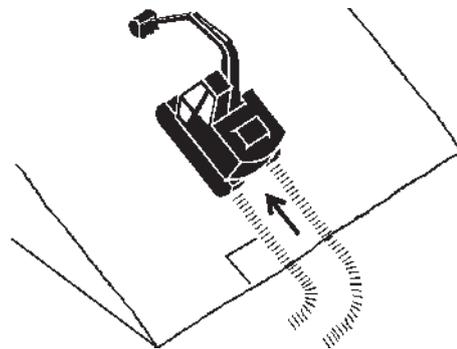
- Before driving the machine, always confirm that the travel levers/pedals direction corresponds to the direction you wish to drive.
 - Be sure to detour around any obstructions.
 - Avoid traveling over obstructions. Soil, fragments of rocks, and/or metal pieces may scatter around the machine. Do not allow personnel to stay around the machine while traveling.
- Driving on a slope may cause the machine to slip or overturn, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Never attempt to ascend or descend 35 degrees or steeper slopes.
 - Be sure to fasten the seat belt.
 - When driving up or down a slope, keep the bucket facing the direction of travel, approximately 0.2 to 0.3 m (A) above the ground.
 - If the machine starts to skid or becomes unstable, immediately lower the bucket to the ground and stop.
 - Driving across the face of a slope or steering on a slope may cause the machine to skid or turnover. If the direction must be changed, move the machine to level ground, then, change the direction to ensure safe operation.



SA-657

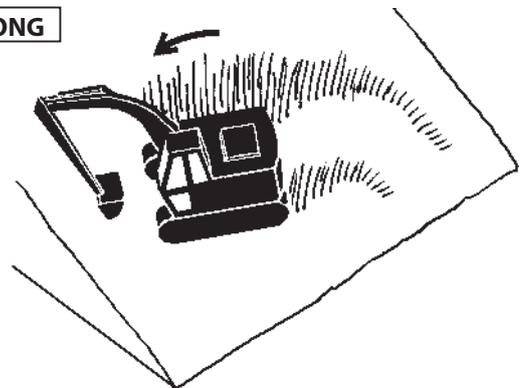


SA-658



SA-441

WRONG



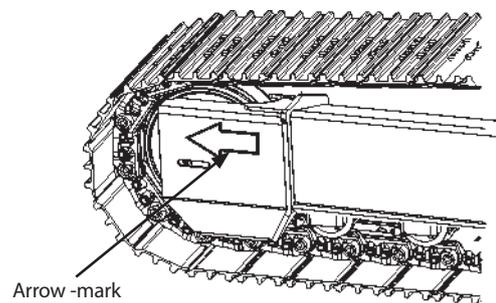
SA-590

SAFETY

- Avoid swinging the upperstructure on slopes. Never attempt to swing the upperstructure downhill. The machine may tip over. If swinging uphill is unavoidable, carefully operate the upperstructure and boom at slow speed.
- If the engine stalls on a slope, immediately lower the bucket to the ground. Return the control levers to neutral. Then, restart the engine.
- Be sure to thoroughly warm up the machine before ascending steep slopes. If hydraulic oil has not warmed up sufficiently, sufficient performance may not be obtained.
- Use a signal person when moving, swinging or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.
- Before moving machine, determine which way to move travel pedals/levers for the direction you want to go. When the travel motors are in the rear, pushing down on the front of the travel pedals or pushing the levers forward moves the machine forward, towards the idlers. An arrow-mark seal is stuck on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the machine front direction.
- Select a travel route that is as flat as possible. Steer the machine as straight as possible, making small gradual changes in direction.
- Before traveling on them, check the strengths of bridges and road shoulders, and reinforce if necessary.
- Use wood plates in order not to damage the road surface. Be careful of steering when operating on asphalt roads in summer.
- When crossing train tracks, use wood plates in order not to damage them.
- Do not make contact with electric wires or bridges.
- When crossing a river, measure the depth of the river using the bucket, and cross slowly. Do not cross the river when the depth of the river is deeper than the upper edge of the upper roller.
- When traveling on rough terrain, reduce engine speed. Select slow travel speed. Slower speed will reduce possible damage to the machine.
- Avoid operations that may damage the track and undercarriage components.
- During freezing weather, always clean snow and ice from track shoes before loading and unloading machine, to prevent the machine from slipping.



M104-05-008



M178-03-001



SA-011

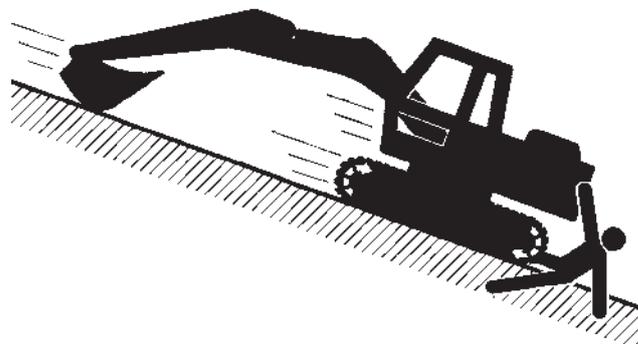
SAFETY

Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents

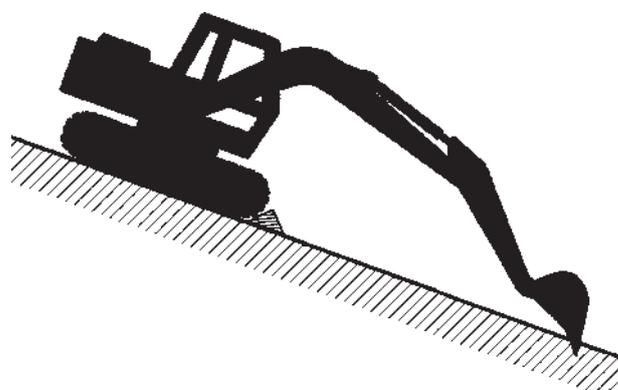
- Death or serious injury may result if you attempt to mount or stop a moving machine.

To avoid rollaways:

- Select level ground when possible to park the machine.
- Do not park the machine on a grade.
- Lower the bucket and/or other work tools to the ground.
- Turn the auto-idle switch OFF.
- Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes to cool down the engine.
- Stop the engine and remove the key from the key switch.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to LOCK position.
- Block both tracks and lower the bucket to the ground. Thrust the bucket teeth into the ground if you must park on a grade.
- Position the machine to prevent rolling.
- Park at a reasonable distance from other machines.



SA-391



SA-2273

SAFETY

Avoid Injury from Back-Over and Swing Accidents

- If any person is present near the machine when backing or swinging the upperstructure, the machine may hit or run over that person, resulting in serious injury or death.

To avoid back-over and swing accidents:

- Always look around BEFORE YOU BACK UP AND SWING THE MACHINE. BE SURE THAT ALL BYSTANDERS ARE CLEAR.
- Keep the travel alarm in working condition (if equipped). ALWAYS BE ALERT FOR BYSTANDERS MOVING INTO THE WORK AREA. USE THE HORN OR OTHER SIGNAL TO WARN BYSTANDERS BEFORE MOVING MACHINE.
- USE A SIGNAL PERSON WHEN BACKING UP IF YOUR VIEW IS OBSTRUCTED. ALWAYS KEEP THE SIGNAL PERSON IN VIEW.

Use hand signals, which conform to your local regulations, when work conditions require a signal person.

- No machine motions shall be made unless signals are clearly understood by both signalman and operator.
- Learn the meanings of all flags, signs, and markings used on the job and confirm who has the responsibility for signaling.
- Keep windows, mirrors, and lights clean and in good condition.
- Dust, heavy rain, fog, etc., can reduce visibility. As visibility decreases, reduce speed and use proper lighting.
- Read and understand all operating instructions in the operator's manual.



SA-383

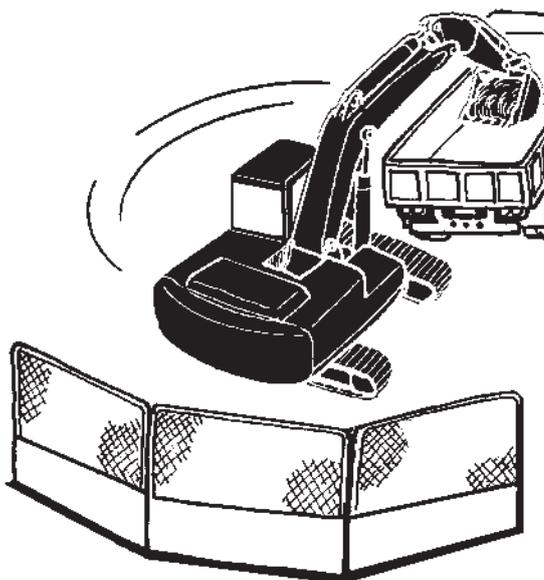


SA-384

SAFETY

Keep Person Clear from Working Area

- A person may be hit severely by the swinging front attachment or counterweight and/or may be crushed against an other object, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Keep all persons clear from the area of operation and machine movement.
- Before operating the machine, set up barriers to the sides and rear area of the bucket swing radius to prevent anyone from entering the work area.



SA-386

Never Position Bucket Over Anyone

- Never lift, move, or swing bucket above anyone or a truck cab. Serious injury or machine damage may result due to bucket load spill or due to collision with the bucket.

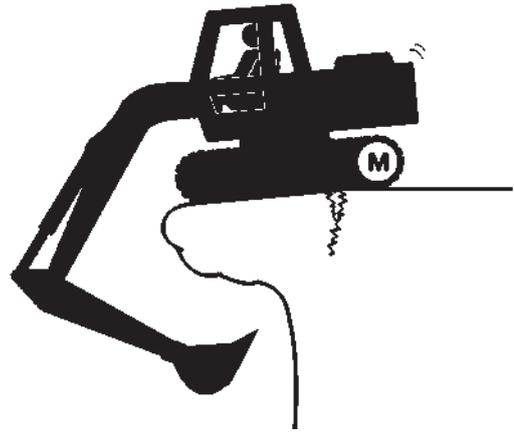


SA-487

SAFETY

Avoid Undercutting

- In order to retreat from the edge of an excavation if the footing should collapse, always position the undercarriage perpendicular to the edge of the excavation with the travel motors at the rear.
- If the footing starts to collapse and if retreat is not possible, do not panic. Often, the machine can be secured by lowering the front attachment, in such cases.



SA-488

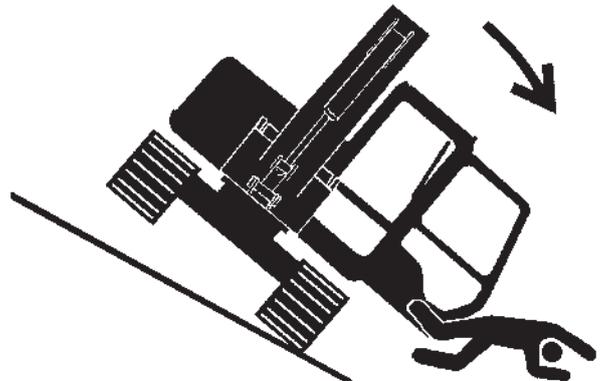
Avoid Tipping

**DO NOT ATTEMPT TO JUMP CLEAR OF TIPPING MACHINE
--- SERIOUS OR FATAL CRUSHING INJURIES WILL RESULT**

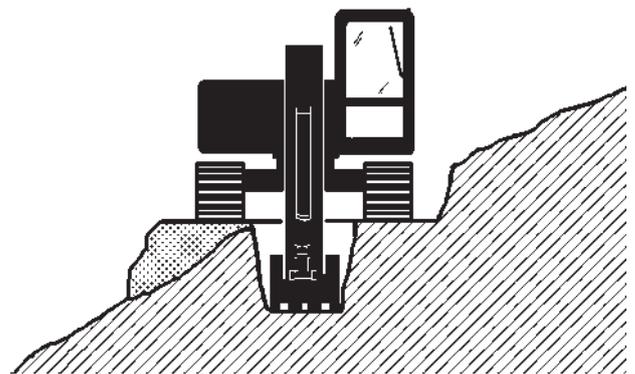
**MACHINE WILL TIP OVER FASTER THAN YOU CAN JUMP
FREE**

FASTEN YOUR SEAT BELT

- The danger of tipping is always present when operating on a grade, possibly resulting in serious injury or death. To avoid tipping:
- Be extra careful before operating on a grade.
 - Prepare machine operating area flat.
 - Keep the bucket low to the ground and close to the machine.
 - Reduce operating speeds to avoid tipping or slipping.
 - Avoid changing direction when traveling on grades.
 - NEVER attempt to travel across a grade steeper than 15 degrees if crossing the grade is unavoidable.
 - Reduce swing speed as necessary when swinging loads.
- Be careful when working on frozen ground.
 - Temperature increases will cause the ground to become soft and make ground travel unstable.



SA-012



SA-440

SAFETY

Never Undercut a High Bank

- The edges could collapse or a land slide could occur causing serious injury or death.



SA-489

Dig with Caution

- Accidental severing of underground cables or gas lines may cause an explosion and/or fire, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Before digging check the location of cables, gas lines, and water lines.
 - Keep the minimum distance required, by law, from cables, gas lines, and water lines.
 - If a fiber optic cable should be accidentally severed, do not look into the end. Doing so may result in serious eye injury.
 - Contact your local "diggers hot line" if available in your area, and/or the utility companies directly. Have them mark all underground utilities.



SA-382

Operate with Caution

- If the front attachment or any other part of the machine hits against an overhead obstacle, such as a bridge, both the machine and the overhead obstacle will be damaged, and personal injury may result as well.
 - Take care to avoid hitting overhead obstacles with the boom or arm.



SA-389

SAFETY

Avoid Power Lines

- Serious injury or death can result if the machine or front attachments are not kept a safe distance from electric lines.
- When operating near an electric line, NEVER move any part of the machine or load closer than 3 m plus twice the line insulator length.
- Check and comply with any local regulations that may apply.
- Wet ground will expand the area that could cause any person on it to be affected by electric shock. Keep all bystanders or co-workers away from the site.



SA-381

Precautions for Lightning

- Lightning may strike the machine.

If lightning comes close, immediately stop the operation, and take the following action.

- When you are around the machine or operating cab-less machine, evacuate to a safe place far away from the machine.
- When you are in the cab, stay in the cab until lightning has passed and safety is secured. Close the cab doors and windows. Lower the bucket to the ground, and stop the engine. Put your hands on your lap to avoid contact with any metal surfaces. Never go out of the cab.

If lightning strikes the machine or near the machine, check all of the machine safety devices for any failure after lightning has passed and safety is secured. If any trouble is found, operate the machine only after repairing it.

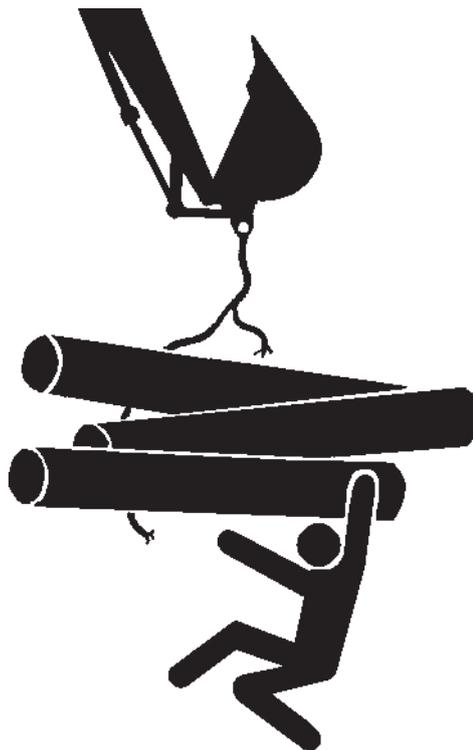


SA-2715

SAFETY

Object Handling

- If a lifted load should fall, any person nearby may be struck by the falling load or may be crushed underneath it, resulting in serious injury or death.
 - When using the machine for craning operations, be sure to comply with all local regulations.
 - Do not use damaged chains or frayed cables, cables, slings, or ropes.
 - Before craning, position the upperstructure with the travel motors at the rear.
 - Move the load slowly and carefully. Never move it suddenly.
 - Keep all persons well away from the load.
 - Never move a load over a person's head.
 - Do not allow anyone to approach the load until it is safely and securely situated on supporting blocks or on the ground.
 - Never attach a sling or chain to the bucket teeth. They may come off, causing the load to fall.

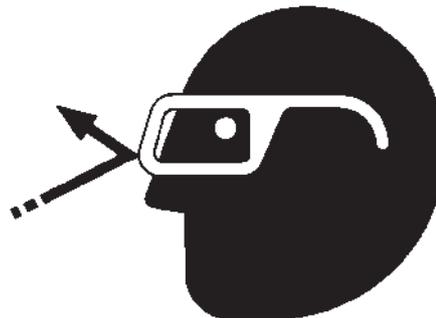


SA-014

SAFETY

Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object

- During hammer operation, debris from earth, rock or metal may fly in all directions, resulting in a serious personal injury or death.
 - When driving the connecting pins in or out, wear goggles or safety glasses, hard hat and face shield.



SA-432

- During machine operation, debris from earth, rock or metal may fly off from the track and bucket, resulting in a serious personal injury or death.
 - Ensure nobody presents in or around the work area while machine is operating.



SA-344

- Falling of accumulated earth or dirt onto people may result in a serious personal injury or death.
 - Before performing maintenance or inspection under carriage, remove accumulated debris.



SA-527

SAFETY

Park Machine Safely

To avoid accidents:

- Park machine on a firm, level surface.
- Lower bucket to the ground.
- Turn auto-idle switch OFF.
- Run engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
- Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine.
- Remove the key from the key switch.
- Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
- Close windows, roof vent, and cab door.
- Lock all access doors and compartments.



SA-390

Handle Fluids Safely—Avoid Fires

- Handle fuel with care; it is highly flammable. If fuel ignites, an explosion and/or a fire may occur, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
 - Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks.
 - Always stop the engine before refueling the machine.
 - Fill the fuel tank outdoors.
- All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolants are flammable.
 - Store flammable fluids well away from fire hazards.
 - Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.
 - Do not store oily rags; they can ignite and burn spontaneously.
 - Securely tighten the fuel and oil filler cap.



SA-018



SA-019

SAFETY

Transport Safely

- Take care the machine may turn over when loading or unloading the machine onto or off of a truck or trailer.
 - Observe the related regulations and rules for safe transportation.
 - Select an appropriate truck or trailer for the machine to be transported.
 - Be sure to use a signal person.
 - Always follow the following precautions for loading or unloading:
 1. Select solid and level ground.
 2. Always use a ramp or deck strong enough to support the machine weight.
 3. Turn auto-idle switch OFF.
 4. Always select the slow speed mode with the travel mode switch.
 5. Never load or unload the machine onto or off a truck or trailer using the front attachment functions when driving up or down the ramp.
 6. Never steer the machine while on the ramp. If the traveling direction must be changed while the ramp, unload the machine from the ramp, reposition the machine on the ground, then try loading again.
 7. The top end of the ramp where it meets the flatbed is a sudden bump. Take care when traveling over it.
 8. Place blocks in front of and behind the tires. Securely hold the machine to the truck or trailer deck with wire ropes.



SA-395

Be sure to further follow the details described in the TRANSPORTING section.

SAFETY

Practice Safe Maintenance

To avoid accidents:

- Understand service procedures before starting work.
- Keep the work area clean and dry.
- Do not spray water or steam inside cab.
- Never lubricate or service the machine while it is moving.
- Keep hands, feet and clothing away from power-driven parts.

Before servicing the machine:

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
4. Run the engine at slow idle speed without load for 5 minutes.
5. Turn the key switch to OFF to stop engine.
6. Relieve the pressure in the hydraulic system by moving the control levers several times.
7. Remove the key from the key switch.
8. Attach a "Do Not Operate" tag on the control lever.
9. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
10. Allow the engine to cool.

- If a maintenance procedure must be performed with the engine running, do not leave the machine unattended.
- If the machine must be raised, maintain a 90 to 110° angle between the boom and arm. Securely support any machine elements that must be raised for service work.
- Inspect certain parts periodically and repair or replace as necessary. Refer to the section discussing that part in the "MAINTENANCE" chapter of this manual.
- Keep all parts in good condition and properly installed.
- Fix damage immediately. Replace worn or broken parts. Remove any buildup of grease, oil, or debris.
- When cleaning parts, always use nonflammable detergent oil. Never use highly flammable oil such as fuel oil and gasoline to clean parts or surfaces.
- Disconnect battery ground cable (–) before making adjustments to electrical systems or before performing welding on the machine.



SA-028



SA-527

SAFETY

- Sufficiently illuminate the work site. Use a maintenance work light when working under or inside the machine.
- Always use a work light protected with a guard. In case the light bulb is broken, spilled fuel, oil, antifreeze fluid, or window washer fluid may catch fire.



SA-037

Warn Others of Service Work

- Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.
 - Before performing any work on the machine, attach a “Do Not Operate” tag on the control lever.This tag is available from your authorized dealer.



SS3076175

Support Machine Properly

- Never attempt to work on the machine without securing the machine first.
 - Always lower the attachment to the ground before you work on the machine.
 - If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment. Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tires, or props that may crumble under continuous load. Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack.

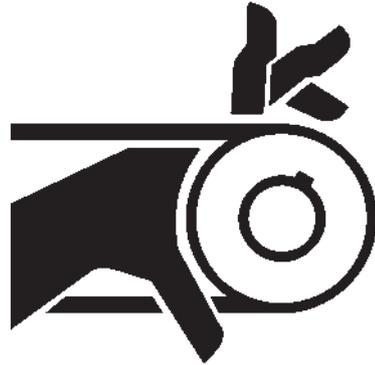


SA-527

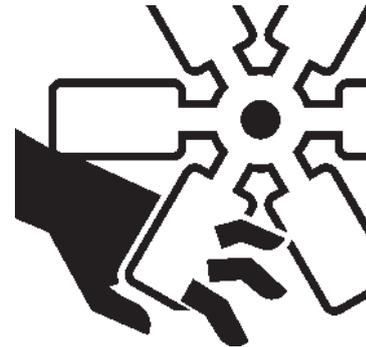
SAFETY

Stay Clear of Moving Parts

- Entanglement in moving parts can cause serious injury.
 - To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, clothing, jewelry and hair do not become entangled when working around rotating parts.



SA-026



SA-2294

Prevent Parts from Flying

- Grease in the track adjuster is under high pressure. Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious injury, blindness, or death.
 - Do not attempt to remove GREASE FITTING or VALVE ASSEMBLY.
 - Do not attempt to remove grease fitting securing cover.
 - As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from valve.
 - Never attempt to disassemble the track adjuster. Inadvertent disassembling of the track adjuster may cause the parts such as a spring to fly off, possibly resulting in severe personal injury or death.
- Travel reduction gears are under pressure.
 - As pieces may fly off, be sure to keep body and face away from AIR RELEASE PLUG to avoid injury.
 - GEAR OIL is hot. Wait for GEAR OIL to cool, then gradually loosen AIR RELEASE PLUG to release pressure.

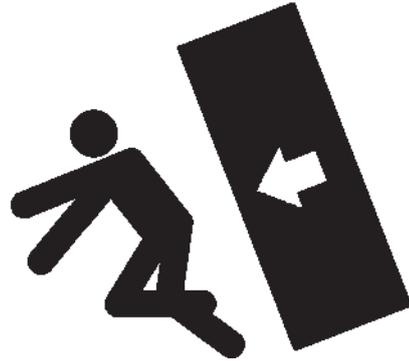


SA-344

SAFETY

Store Attachments Safely

- Stored attachments such as buckets, hydraulic hammers, and blades can fall and cause serious injury or death.
- Securely store attachments and implements to prevent falling. Keep children and bystanders away from storage areas.



SA-034

Prevent Burns

Hot spraying fluids:

- After operation, engine coolant is hot and under pressure. Hot water or steam is contained in the engine, radiator and heater lines. Skin contact with escaping hot water or steam can cause severe burns.
- To avoid possible injury from hot spraying water. DO NOT remove the radiator cap until the engine is cool. When opening, turn the cap slowly to the stop. Allow all pressure to be released before removing the cap.
- The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Again, be sure to release all pressure before removing the cap.



SA-039

Hot fluids and surfaces:

- Engine oil, gear oil and hydraulic oil also become hot during operation. The engine, hoses, lines and other parts become hot as well.
- Wait for the oil and components to cool before starting any maintenance or inspection work.



SA-225

SAFETY

Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically

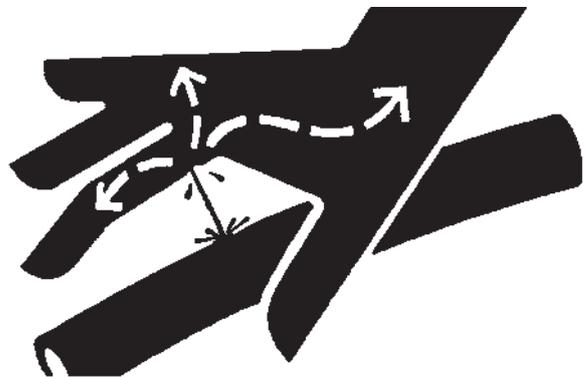
- Rubber hoses that contain flammable fluids under pressure may break due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration due to aging, fatigue, and abrasion of rubber hoses by inspection alone.
 - Periodically replace the rubber hoses. (See the page of "Periodic replacement of parts" in the operator's manual.)
- Failure to periodically replace rubber hoses may cause a fire, fluid injection into skin, or the front attachment to fall on a person nearby, which may result in severe burns, gangrene, or otherwise serious injury or death.



SA-019

Avoid High-Pressure Fluids

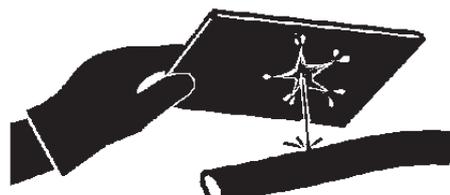
- Fluids such as diesel fuel or hydraulic oil under pressure can penetrate the skin or eyes causing serious injury, blindness or death.
 - Avoid this hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines.
 - Tighten all connections before applying pressure.
 - Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard; take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. Wear a face shield or goggles for eye protection.
 - If an accident occurs, see a doctor familiar with this type of injury immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.



SA-031



SA-292



SA-044

SAFETY

Prevent Fires

Check for Oil Leaks:

- Fuel, hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fires.
 - Check for oil leaks due to missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, damage to the oil-cooler, and loose oil-cooler flange bolts.
 - Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, lines, hoses, oil-cooler and oil-cooler flange bolts.
 - Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines.
 - Never install bent or damaged lines, pipes, or hoses.
 - Replace fuel hoses and hydraulic hoses periodically even if there is no abnormality in their external appearance.



SA-019

Check for Shorts:

- Short circuits can cause fires.
 - Clean and tighten all electrical connections.
 - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for loose, kinked, hardened or frayed electrical cables and wires.
 - Check before each shift or after eight (8) to ten (10) hours operation for missing or damaged terminal caps.
 - **DO NOT OPERATE MACHINE** if cable or wires are loose, kinked, etc.
 - Never attempt to modify electric wirings.

SAFETY

Clean up Flammable Materials:

- Spilled fuel and oil, and trash, grease, debris, accumulated coal dust, and other flammable materials may cause fires.
 - Prevent fires by inspecting and cleaning the machine daily, and by removing adhered oil or accumulated flammable materials immediately. Check and clean high temperature parts such as the exhaust outlet and mufflers earlier than the normal interval.
 - Do not wrap high temperature parts such as a muffler or exhaust pipe with oil absorbents.
 - Do not store oily cloths as they are vulnerable to catching fire.
 - Keep flammable materials away from open flames.
 - Do not ignite or crush a pressurized or sealed container.
 - Wire screens may be provided on openings on the engine compartment covers to prevent flammable materials such as dead leaves from entering. However, flammable materials which have passed through the wire screen may cause fires. Check and clean the machine every day and immediately remove accumulated flammable materials.

Check Key Switch:

- If a fire breaks out, failure to stop the engine will escalate the fire, hampering fire fighting.
 - Always check key switch function before operating the machine every day:
 1. Start the engine and run it at slow idle.
 2. Turn the key switch to the OFF position to confirm that the engine stops.
 - If any abnormalities are found, be sure to repair them before operating the machine.

Check Heat Shields:

- Damaged or missing heat shields may lead to fires.
 - Damaged or missing heat shields must be repaired or replaced before operating the machine.
 - If hydraulic hoses are broken while the engine cover is open, splattered oil on the high temperature parts such as mufflers may cause fire. Always close the engine cover while operating the machine.

SAFETY

Evacuating in Case of Fire

- If a fire breaks out, evacuate the machine in the following way:
 - Stop the engine by turning the key switch to the OFF position if there is time.
 - Use a fire extinguisher if there is time.
 - Exit the machine.
- In an emergency, if the cab door or front window can not be opened, break the front or rear window panes with the emergency evacuation hammer to escape from the cab. Refer to the explanation pages on the Emergency Evacuation Method.



SA-393



SS-1510

Beware of Exhaust Fumes

- Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.
 - If you must operate in a building, be sure there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.
 - PM (Particle Matter) combustion may generate white smoke during muffler filter regeneration. Do not perform muffler filter manual regeneration indoors without proper ventilation.



SA-016

SAFETY

Precautions for Welding and Grinding

- Welding may generate gas and/or small fires.
 - Be sure to perform welding in a well ventilated and prepared area. Store flammable objects in a safe place before starting welding.
 - Only qualified personnel should perform welding. Never allow an unqualified person to perform welding.
- Grinding on the machine may create fire hazards. Store flammable objects in a safe place before starting grinding.
- After finishing welding and grinding, recheck that there are no abnormalities such as the area surrounding the welded area still smoldering.



SA-818

SAFETY

Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines

- Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders.
- Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.
- Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install temporary fire-resistant guards to protect hoses or other materials before engaging in welding, soldering, etc..



SA-030

Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids

- Do not weld or flame cut pipes or tubes that contain flammable fluids.
- Clean them thoroughly with nonflammable solvent before welding or flame cutting them.

Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper

High-pressure nitrogen gas is sealed in the accumulator and the gas damper. Inappropriate handling may cause explosion, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

Strictly comply with the following items: Do not disassemble the unit.

- Keep the units away from open flames and fire.
- Do not bore a hole, do not cut by torch.
- Avoid giving shocks by hitting or rolling the unit.
- Before disposing the unit, sealed gas must be released. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

SAFETY

Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating

- Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch. If inhaled, these fumes may cause sickness.
 - Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.
 - Do all such work outside or in a well-ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.
 - Remove paint before welding or heating:
 1. If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust. Wear an approved respirator.
 2. If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.



SA-029

Beware of Asbestos and Silicon Dust and Other Contamination

- Take care not to inhale dust produced in the work site. Inhalation of asbestos fibers may be the cause of lung cancer. Inhalation of silicon dust or other contamination may cause sickness.
 - Depending on the work site conditions, the risk of inhaling asbestos fiber, silicon dust or other contamination may exist. Spray water to prevent asbestos fibers, silicon dust or other contamination from becoming airborne. Do not use compressed air.
 - When operating the machine in a work site where asbestos fibers, silicon dust or other contamination might be present, be sure to operate the machine from the upwind side and wear a mask rated to prevent the inhalation of asbestos, silicon dust or other contamination.
 - Keep bystanders out of the work site during operation.
 - Asbestos fibers might be present in imitation parts. Use only genuine Hitachi Parts.



SA-029

SAFETY

Prevent Battery Explosions

- Battery gas can explode.
 - Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery.
 - Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.
 - Do not charge a frozen battery; it may explode. Warm the battery to 16 °C (60 °F) first.
 - Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
 - Loose terminals may produce sparks. Securely tighten all terminals.
 - Connect terminals to the correct electrical poles. Failure to do so may cause damage to the electrical parts or fire.
- Battery electrolyte is poisonous. If the battery should explode, battery electrolyte may be splashed into eyes, possibly resulting in blindness.
 - Be sure to wear eye protection when checking electrolyte specific gravity.



SA-032

Service Air Conditioning System Safely

- If spilled onto skin, refrigerant may cause a cold contact burn.
 - Refer to the instructions described on the container for proper use when handling the refrigerant.
 - Use a recovery and recycling system to avoid leaking refrigerant into the atmosphere.
 - Never touch the refrigerant.



SA-405

SAFETY

Handle Chemical Products Safely

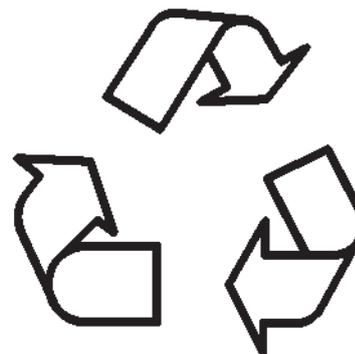
- Direct exposure to hazardous chemicals can cause serious injury. Potentially hazardous chemicals used with your machine include such items as lubricants, coolants, paints, and adhesives.
 - A Safety Data Sheet (SDS) provides specific details on chemical products: physical and health hazards, safety procedures, and emergency response techniques.
 - Check the SDS before you start any job using a hazardous chemical. That way you will know exactly what the risks are and how to do the job safely. Then follow procedures and use recommended equipment.
 - See your authorized dealer for SDS's (available only in English) on chemical products used with your machine.



SA-2579

Dispose of Waste Properly

- Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment and ecology. Potentially harmful waste used with HITACHI equipment includes such items as oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, and batteries.
 - Use leakproof containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.
 - Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.
 - Air conditioning refrigerants escaping into the air can damage the Earth's atmosphere. Government regulations may require a certified air conditioning service center to recover and recycle used air conditioning refrigerants.
 - Inquire on the proper way to recycle or dispose of waste from your local environmental or recycling center, or from your authorized dealer.



SA-226

SAFETY

Never Ride Attachment

Never allow anyone to ride attachments or load. This is an extremely dangerous practice.

Notes for Muffler Filter

Muffler Filter

The muffler filter removes particle matters (PM) in the exhaust gas. The muffler filter traps PM, and it is automatically regenerated by burning PM when the set amount of PM is accumulated in the filter. Follow the instructions below to prevent the muffler filter from being damaged.

⚠ WARNING: Exhaust gas from the muffler filter, muffler and exhaust piping becomes hot during and right after engine running and filter regeneration (burning PM). Keep away from the direction of the exhaust piping and its vicinity during the filter regeneration. Be careful not to let your skin contact with any hot gas from the exhaust piping. It may cause severe burns.

Do not directly touch water coming out of the muffler filter. The water is mildly-acidic by oxidation catalyst mounted in the muffler filter. If filter water spills on your skin, immediately flush it out with clean water.

Precautions for Communication Terminal

Electrical wave transmitted from the communication terminal may cause malfunction of other electronic devices. Inquire the device manufacturer for electrical wave disturbance upon using an electronic device near the communication terminal.

SAFETY

Notes on Protection of Operator's Station When the Machine Rolls Over

The cab corresponds to the structure to protect the operator by absorbing impact energy when the machine rolls over (Roll-Over Protective Structure (ROPS)).

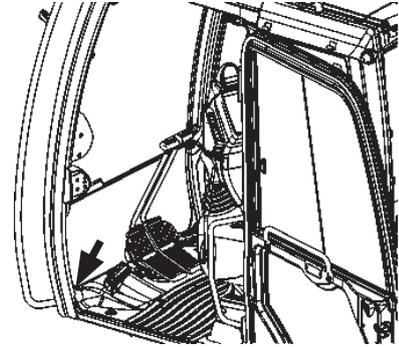
However, when the machine mass exceeds the maximum operating mass described in the ROPS certification by modifying the machine or installing a special attachment, the cab can not fulfill its protective function, possibly causing serious injury or death.

In order to ensure the protective structure, follow the instructions below.

- Consult your authorized dealer before welding parts or drilling a hole on the cab, which possibly reduces the cab strength.
- Be sure to always fasten the seat belt when operating the machine. If the machine rolls over without operator fastening the seat belt, the operator may become injured, may be thrown out from the cab and/or may become crushed under the machine even though the cab has the protective structure.

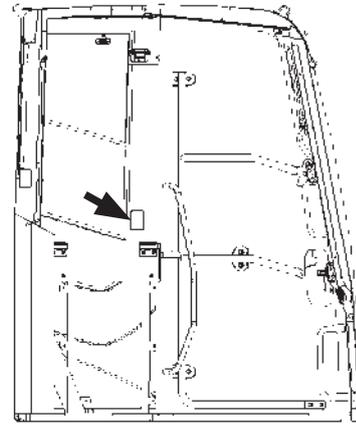
The ROPS certification is valid under the following conditions.

- The machine mass is lower than the maximum operating mass described in the ROPS certification.
- The ROPS is properly installed.
- No modification is made to the ROPS.
- The ROPS is free from damage.



ZX75US-5N

MDAA-01-298



ZX85USB-5N

MDEP-00-001

PROTECTIVE STRUCTURE
CERTIFICATION

MACHINE MAX. OPERATING WEIGHT
10100kg (22267LBS)

ROPS : ISO12117-2:

OPG TOP GUARD: ISO10262:
(LEVEL1)

MODEL

ZX75US-5A	ZX85US-5A
ZX85USB-5A	ZX75US-5N
ZX85USB-5N	

HITACHI

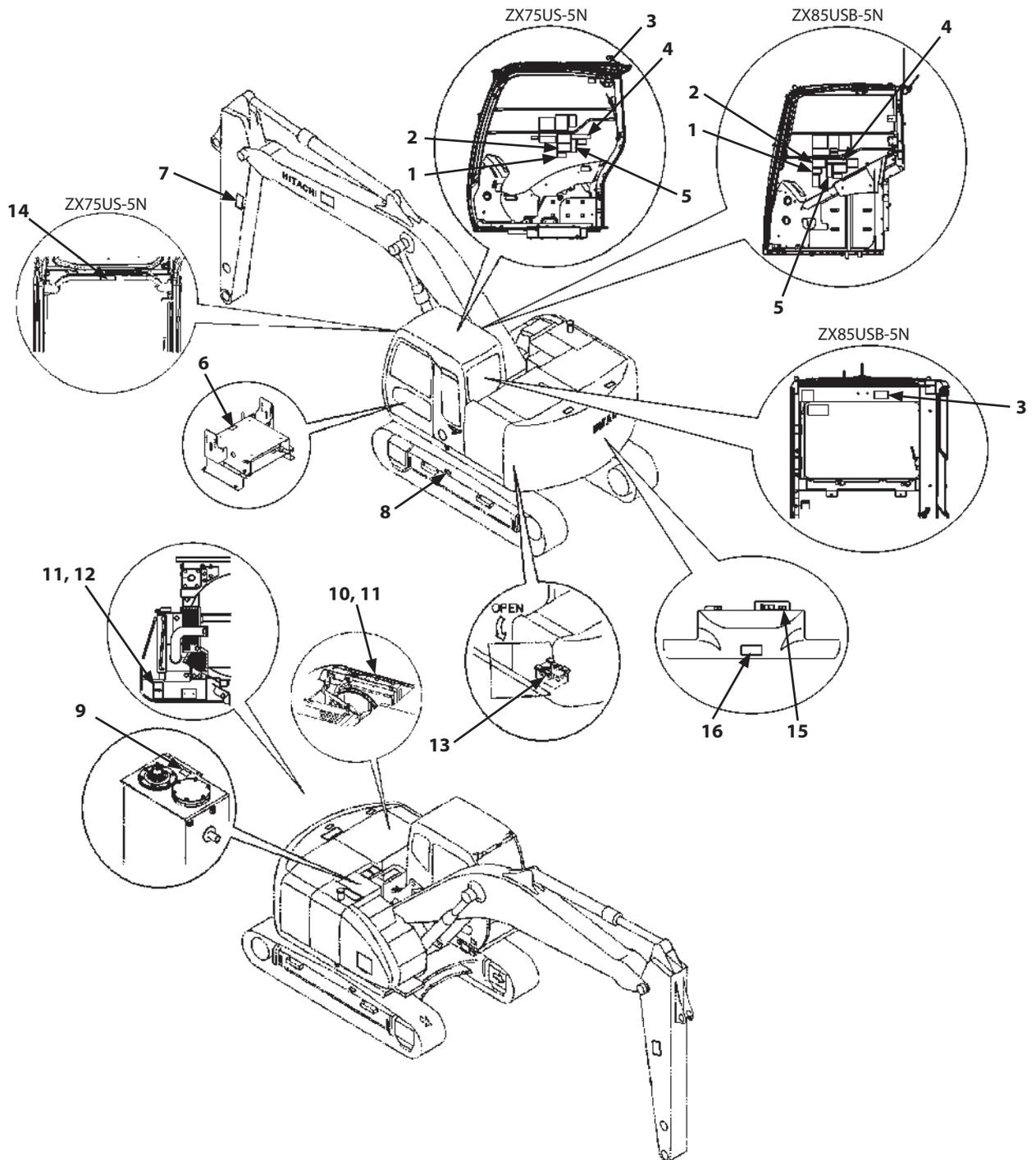
Maximum operating Weight assuring the ROPS →

Applicable Machine Model Number →

SS-3491

SAFETY SIGNS

All safety signs and their locations affixed on the machine are illustrated in this group. Make sure of the contents described in the safety signs through reading actual ones affixed on the machine to ensure safe machine operation. Always keep the safety signs clean. In case a safety sign is broken or lost, immediately, obtain a new replacement and affix it again in position on the machine. Use the part No. indicated under the right corner of each safety sign illustration when placing an order of it to the Hitachi dealer.

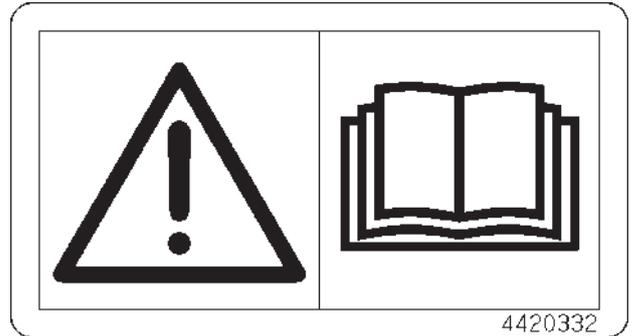


SAFETY SIGNS

1.

WARNING!

Prior to operation, maintenance, disassembling, and transportation of the machine, be sure to read and understand the Operator's Manual.

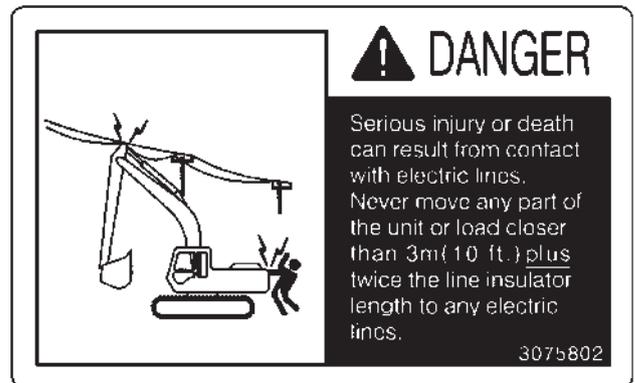


4420332

SS4420332-2

2.

Sign indicates an electrocution hazard if machine is brought too near electric power lines.
Keep a safe distance from electric power lines.



3075802

SS-862

3.

Sign indicates a hazard from falling window.
After raising window, be sure to lock it in place with lock pins.

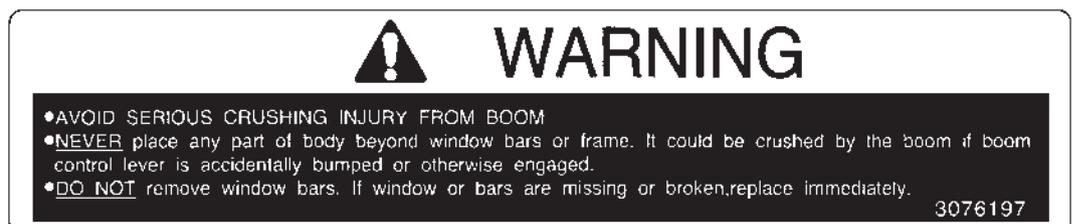


4371798

SS-863

4.

Do not extend your hands or head from the window. Your hands or head may come in contact with the boom.



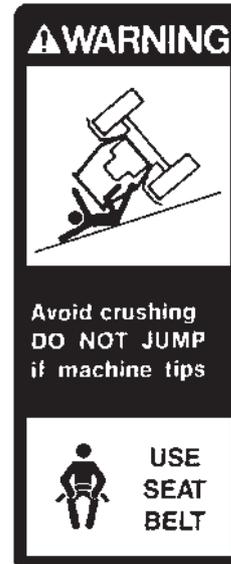
3076197

SS-859

SAFETY SIGNS

5.

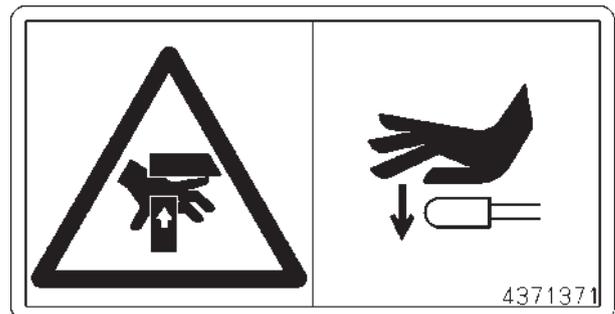
If the machine should overturn, the operator may become injured and/or throw from the cab and/or crushed by the overturning machine.



SS3088058

6.

When moving the seat height/tilt lever downward, press the lever grip with a palm from the top side. Do not grasp the lever grip to operate the lever, possibly resulting in pinch of your fingers into the seat stand.

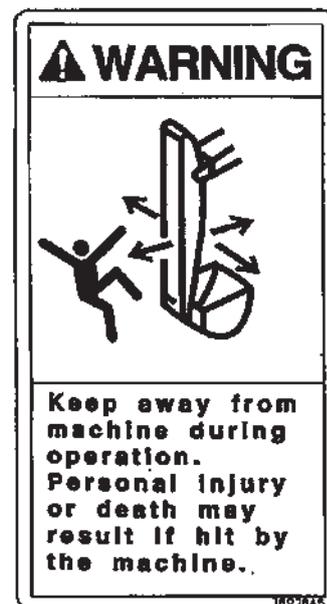


4371371

SS4371371-3

7.

Sign indicates a hazard of being hit by the working device of the machine.
Keep away from machine during operation.



SS3092845

SAFETY SIGNS

8.

Sign indicates a hazard of a flying plug from track adjuster that could cause injury.

Read manual before adjusting track for safe and proper handling.



SS-408

9.

Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot.

Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.

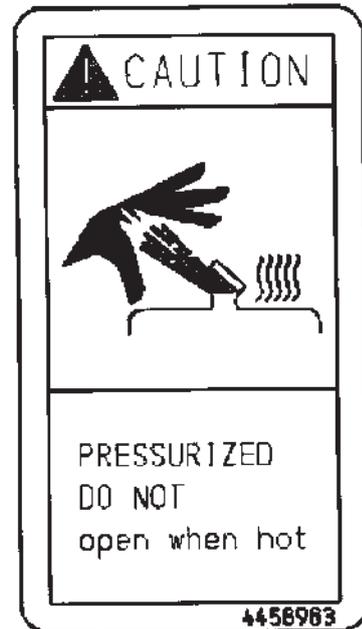


SS-864

SAFETY SIGNS

10.

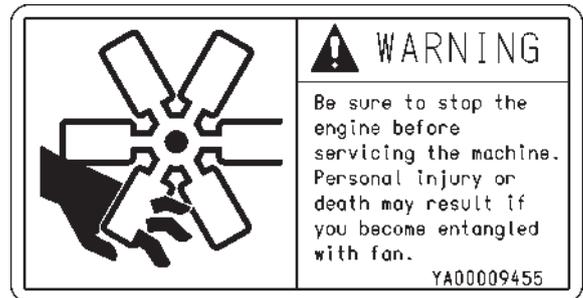
Sign indicates a burn hazard from spurting hot water or oil if radiator or hydraulic oil tank is uncapped while hot. Allow radiator or hydraulic oil tank to cool before removing cap.



SS4456963

11.

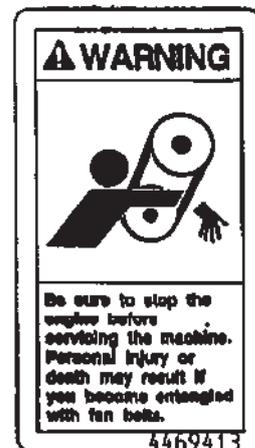
Sign indicates the hazard of rotating parts, such as fan, etc. that could cause injury by being caught. Turn off before inspection and maintenance.



SSYA00009455

12.

Sign indicates a hazard of rotating parts, such as belt. Turn off before inspection and maintenance.

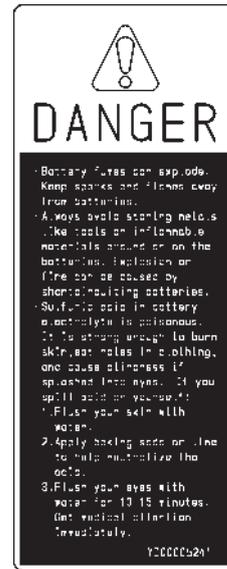


SS4469413

SAFETY SIGNS

13.

Sign indicates an explosion hazard.
 Keep fire and open flames away from this area.
 Skin contact with electrolyte will cause burns. Splashed electrolyte into eyes will cause blindness. Take care not to touch electrolyte.



SSYD00005241

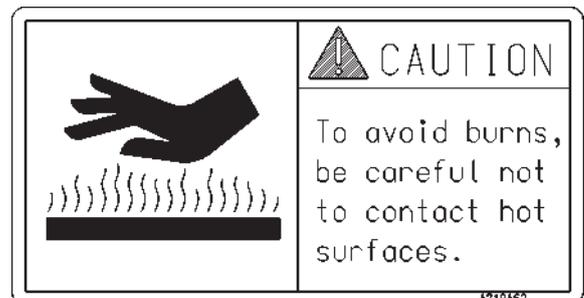
14.



SS4467093

15.

Possible severe burns. Do not touch the engine components while they are hot.



SS4719462

16.

Sign indicates a crush hazard by rotation of upper structure of the machine.
 Keep away from swinging area of machine.

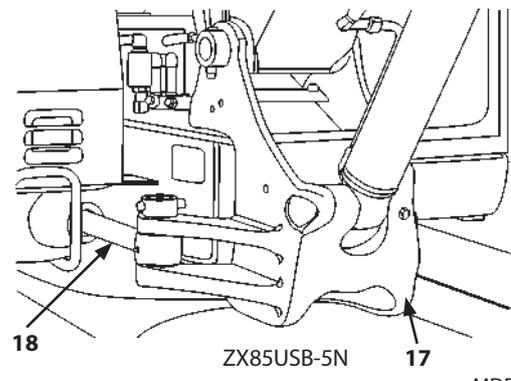
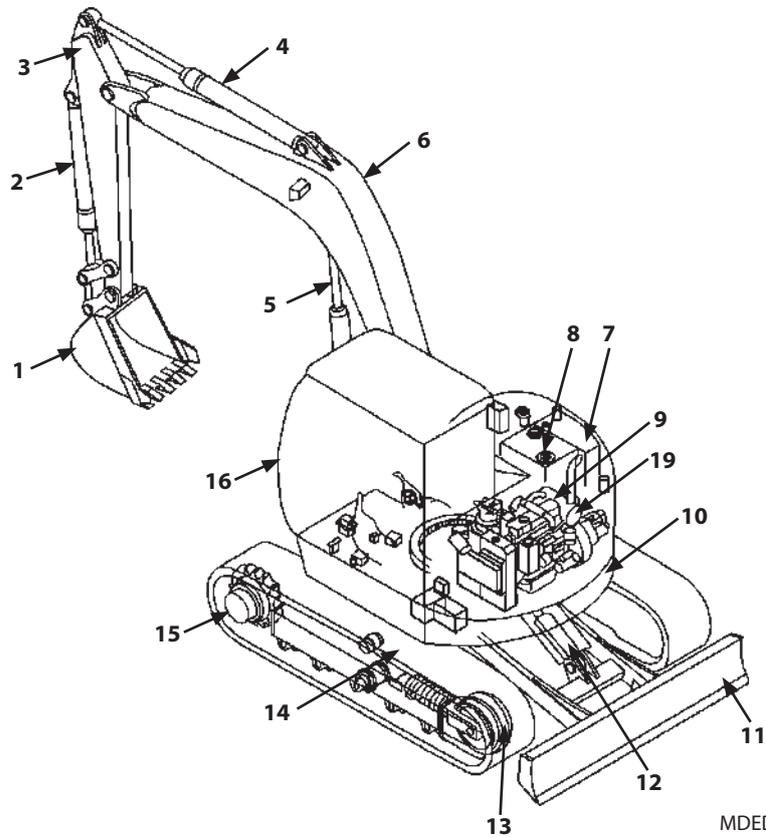


SS-024

COMPONENTS NAME

Components Name

- 1- Bucket
- 2- Bucket Cylinder
- 3- Arm
- 4- Arm Cylinder
- 5- Boom Cylinder
- 6- Boom
- 7- Fuel Tank
- 8- Hydraulic Oil Tank
- 9- Engine
- 10- Counterweight
- 11- Blade
- 12- Blade Cylinder
- 13- Travel Device
- 14- Track
- 15- Front Idler
- 16- Cab
- 17- Boom Swing Post
- 18- Boom Swing Cylinder
- 19- Muffler Filter



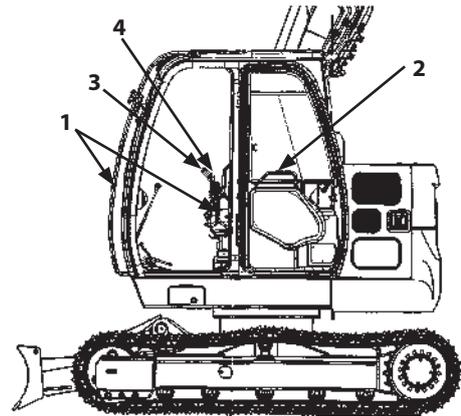
GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE

Getting ON/OFF the Machine

Handrails (1) are provided in and around the machine. These are used to get on and off the cab safely as well as to do inspection and maintenance of the machine safely. Never jump on or off the machine as it is very dangerous.

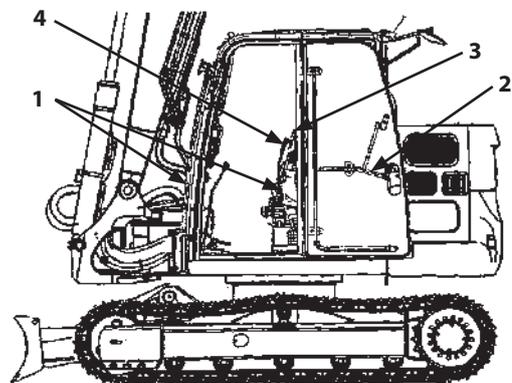
⚠ WARNING:

- **Never attach a wire on the handrails (1) to lift the cab or main body or while transporting the machine on a truck or trailer as it is dangerous.**
- **The door handle (2) is not a handrail. Do not use the door handle (2) as a handrail when getting on and off the machine.**
- **Do not hold the control levers (3) or pilot control shut-off lever (4) when getting on and off the machine.**



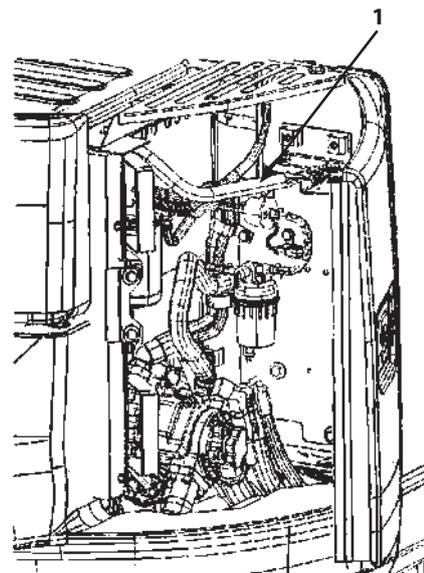
ZX75US-5N

MDED-01-016



ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-015



Inside of Right Rear Cover

MDED-01-017

OPERATOR'S STATION

Muffler Filter

The muffler filter removes particle matters (PM) from the exhaust gas. The muffler filter traps PM, and it is automatically regenerated by burning PM when a set amount of PM is accumulated in the filter. Follow the instructions below to prevent the muffler filter from being damaged.

WARNING:

- **Exhaust gas from the muffler filter, exhaust piping and tail piping becomes hot during and right after engine running and filter regeneration (burning PM). Be careful not to let your skin contact any part of exhaust system or hot gas from the exhaust piping.**
- **If flammable objects such as dead leaves or paper scraps are around the muffler, they may cause a fire.**
- **Before maintaining the machine, stop the engine and make sure the engine has sufficiently cooled down in order to prevent burns.**

IMPORTANT:

- **Be sure to use fuel that complies with JIS K-2204, EN-590 or ASTM D-975 which contents 15 ppm or lower sulfur. If the fuel described above is not used, exhaust gas that exceeds the regulation values may be discharged and serious problems may arise on the engine.**
- **Use only genuine Hitachi or oil manufacture's engine oil. Using engine oil other than the genuine Hitachi or oil manufacturer may shorten the muffler cleaning interval and increase the fuel consumption rate.**
- **Besides, using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector. It also affects the engine parts, leading to malfunction.**

OPERATOR'S STATION

- **Do not modify the machine without authorization. Never attempt to modify the air inlet and exhaust parts such as the air duct, muffler filter and the exhaust outlet. Also never attempt to disassemble the muffler filter. Avoid giving shocks on the muffler filter by striking elements with other objects or dropping the elements. Failure to do so may affect the exhaust gas purifying device, possibly damaging it or lowering its performance.**
- **PM combustion may generate white smoke during muffler filter regeneration. Do not attempt to do muffler filter manual regeneration in a badly ventilated indoors.**

 NOTE:

- *The muffler filter traps PM, and it is automatically regenerated by burning PM when the set amount of PM is accumulated in the filter. It is called auto-regeneration. Two types of auto-regeneration are provided to take place at non-regular intervals depending on the machine's working conditions. The auto-regeneration may start during operation of the machine; you can continue to operate the machine. (refer to 1-24)*
- *Turning the pilot control shut-off lever to LOCK position while performing auto-regeneration may change the engine sound, this is not a malfunction.*
- *The engine sound may differ from normal sound during auto-regeneration, which is not a malfunction.*
- *Do not stop the engine during regeneration unless absolutely necessary.*
- *The auto-regeneration may be terminated depending on the machine operating condition. At this time, the muffler filter regeneration request indicator will flash, the buzzer will sound, and the engine speed and power will drop. (refer to 1-26) This mark indicates that the muffler filter regeneration is required manually. It is called manual regeneration. Perform manual regeneration following the specified procedure. (refer to 1-27)*

OPERATOR'S STATION

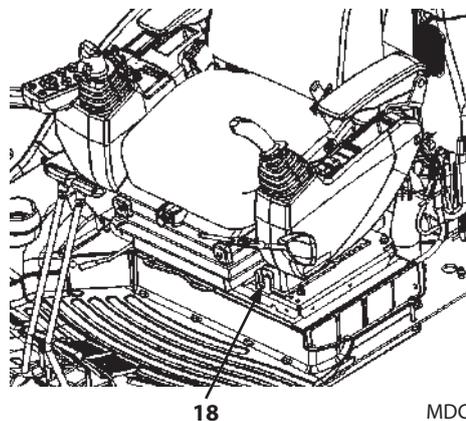
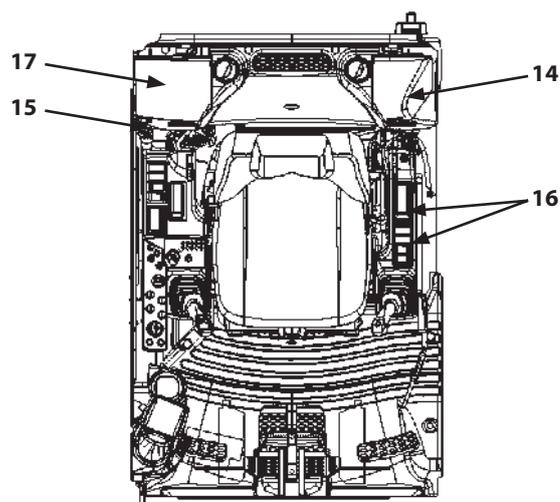
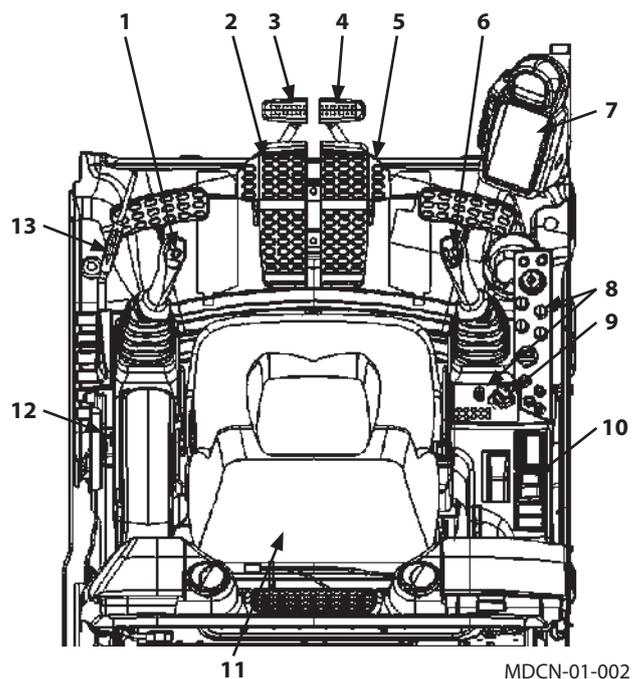
- *If approximately 3 hours has passed without previous regeneration being completed, the muffler filter regeneration request will flash, the buzzer will sound, and the engine speed and power will drop. (refer to 1-25) Perform manual regeneration following the specified procedure in this case. (refer to 1-26)*
- *When the machine is operated without performing manual regeneration, the muffler filter may be damaged. Immediately move the machine to a safe area and perform manual regeneration.*
- *If the machine is continuously operated without performing manual regeneration, the engine speed and power will drop. The engine will automatically stop approximately after 2 hours. If the muffler filter alarm or engine trouble alarm is displayed, the buzzer will sound and the engine will automatically stop approximately after 30 minutes. At this time, consult your authorized Hitachi dealer for repairing the muffler filter.*
- *Both auto and manual regenerations restore muffler filter function. It is not a malfunction.*
- *If auto-regeneration interval becomes shorter, consult your authorized Hitachi dealer.*
- *White smoke may occur for several minutes after the engine start, this is not a malfunction.*

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Features

ZX75US-5N

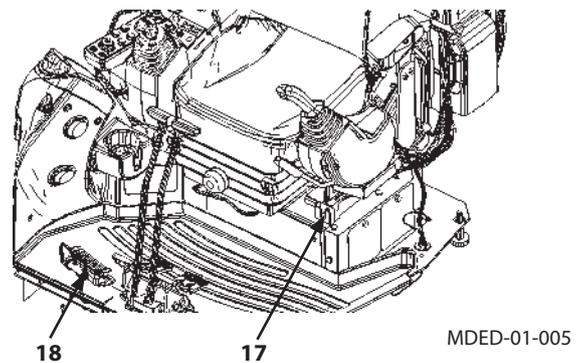
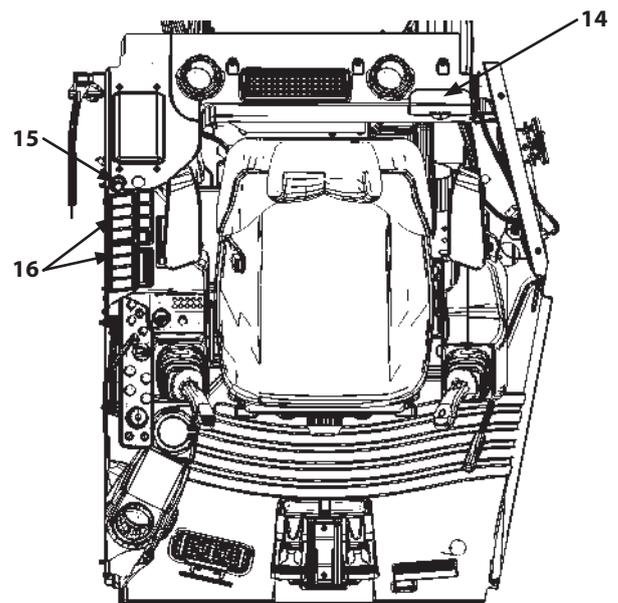
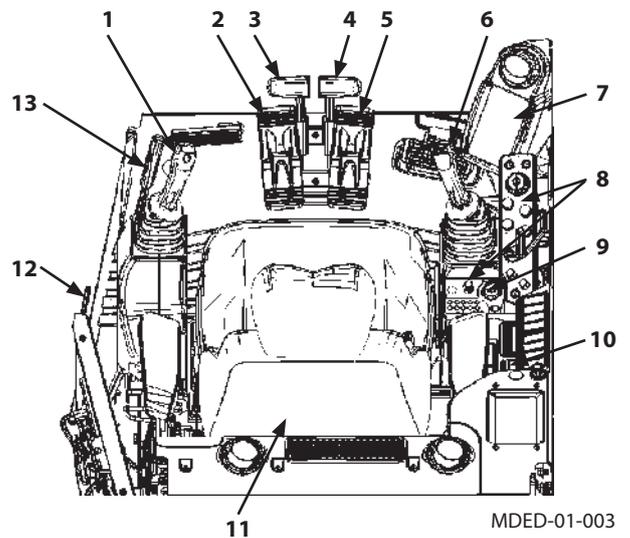
- 1- Left Control Lever/Horn Switch
- 2- Left Travel Pedal
- 3- Left Travel Lever
- 4- Right Travel Lever
- 5- Right Travel Pedal
- 6- Right Control Lever
- 7- Multi Function Monitor Panel
- 8- Switch Panel
- 9- Key Switch
- 10- Regeneration Switch
- 11- Operator's Seat
- 12- Cab Door Release Lever
- 13- Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever
- 14- Fuse Box
- 15- Cigar Lighter
- 16- Switch Panel (for Optional Equipments)
Glove Compartment (without Optional Equipments)
- 17- Glove Compartment (Hot and Cool Box)
- 18- Engine Stop Switch



OPERATOR'S STATION

ZX85USB-5N

- 1- Left Control Lever/Horn Switch
- 2- Left Travel Pedal
- 3- Left Travel Lever
- 4- Right Travel Lever
- 5- Right Travel Pedal
- 6- Right Control Lever (On Top of Lever)
- 7- Multi Function Monitor Panel
- 8- Switch Panel
- 9- Key Switch
- 10- Regeneration Switch
- 11- Operator's Seat
- 12- Cab Door Release Lever
- 13- Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever
- 14- Fuse Box
- 15- Cigar Lighter
- 16- Switch Panel (for Optional Equipments)
- 17- Engine Stop Switch
- 18- Boom Swing Pedal



OPERATOR'S STATION

Multi Function Monitor

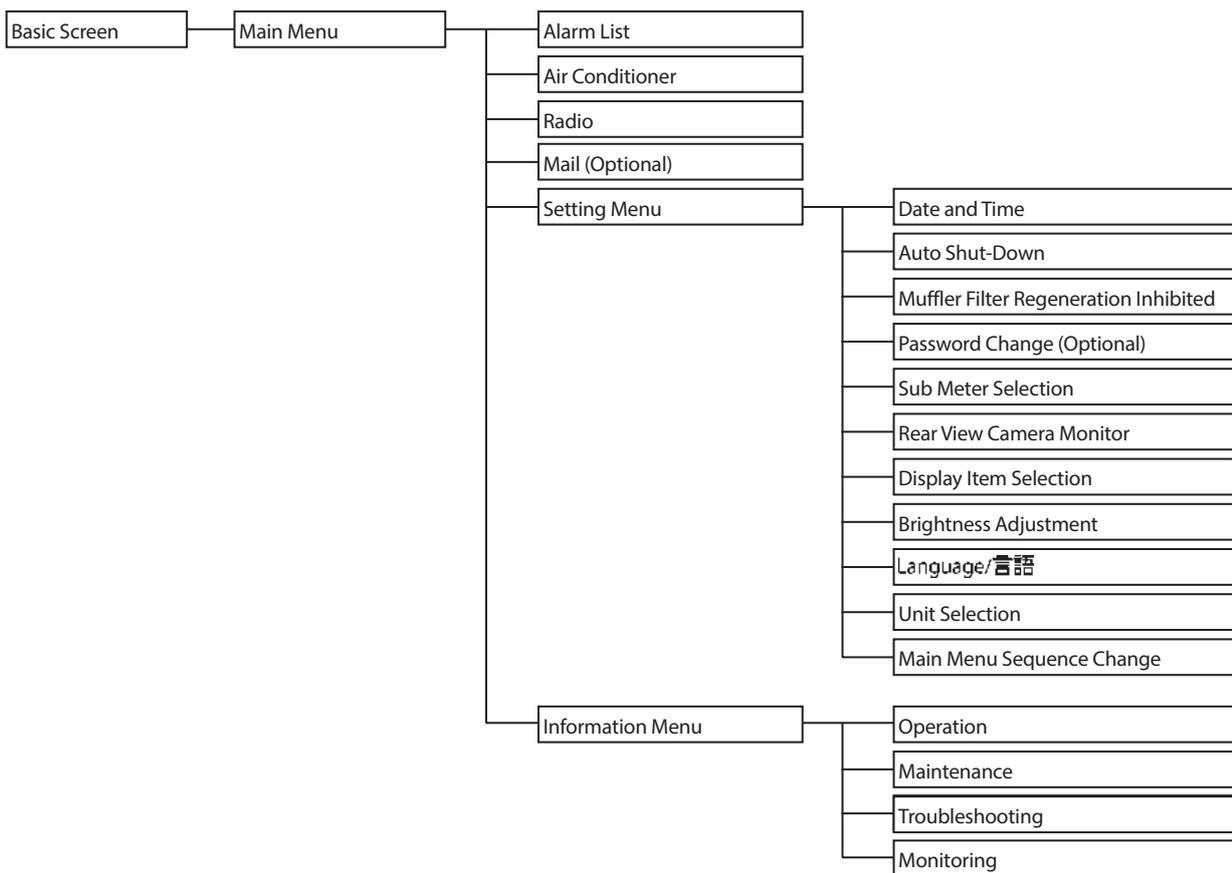
Feature

The multi function monitor displays various meters, indicators, radio and air conditioner, numeric keypad lock function, rearview camera image, work mode selection and maintenance screen.

Screen Configuration

The multi function monitor consists of the following screens.

There are 6 menus, and a further 15 sub menus.



OPERATOR'S STATION

Default Setting

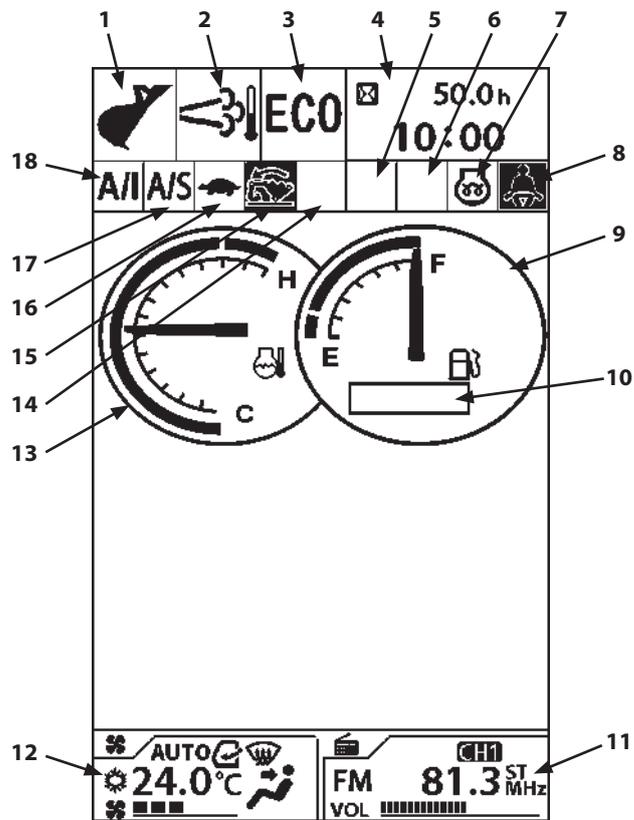
Function	Item	Default
Auto Shut-Down	ON/OFF of Auto Shut-down	OFF
	Setting Time	1 min
Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited	Regeneration Inhibited	OFF

 **NOTE:** Typical functions are shown in the table. Check the initial values of other functions on each monitor screen.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Basic Screen

- 1- Work Mode Display
- 2- Muffler Filter
- 3- Power Mode Display
- 4- Hour Meter, Clock
- 5- Auxiliary
- 6- Auxiliary
- 7- Preheat Display
- 8- Seat Belt Display
- 9- Fuel Gauge
- 10- Sub Meter
- 11- Radio Display
- 12- Air Conditioner Display
- 13- Coolant Temperature Gauge
- 14- Auxiliary
- 15- Overload Alarm Display (Optional)
- 16- Travel Mode Indicator
- 17- Auto Shut-Down Display
- 18- Auto-Idle Display



MDAA-01-020EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

How to Use Screens

Displaying Basic Screen

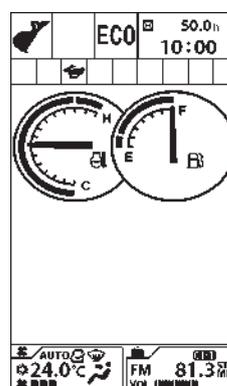
IMPORTANT: Start the engine after the basic screen is displayed.

When the key switch is turned to the ACC or ON position, the starting screen displays for about two seconds. When the key switch is kept in ACC position, only hour meter, clock and radio will be displayed. When the key switch is turned from ACC to ON position, the basic screen will be displayed.



Starting Screen

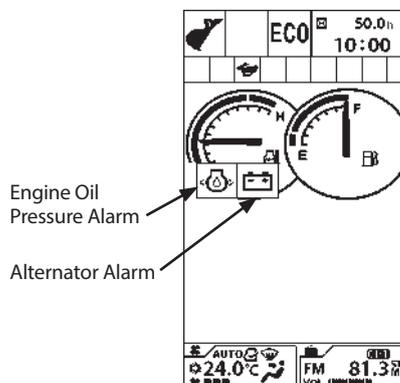
MDAA-01-003EN



Basic Screen

MDAA-01-001EN

IMPORTANT: When the key switch is turned to the ON position, engine oil pressure alarm and alternator alarm will be displayed on the basic screen. Until the alternator starts generating power after the engine starts, the alternator alarm is displayed on the screen. Until the engine oil pressure exceeds the given pressure, the engine oil pressure alarm will stay lit.

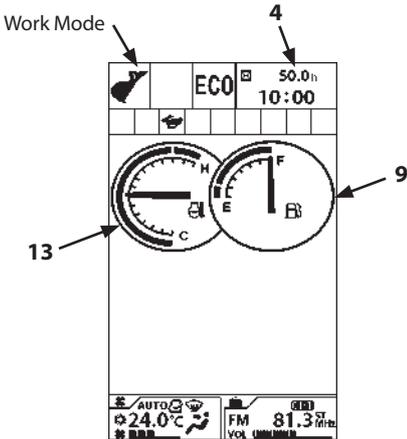


MDAA-01-041

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Display of Meters
 Items to be displayed
 4- Hour Meter, Clock
 9- Fuel Gauge
 13- Coolant Temperature Gauge
- Work Mode Display
 The attachments being used are displayed.

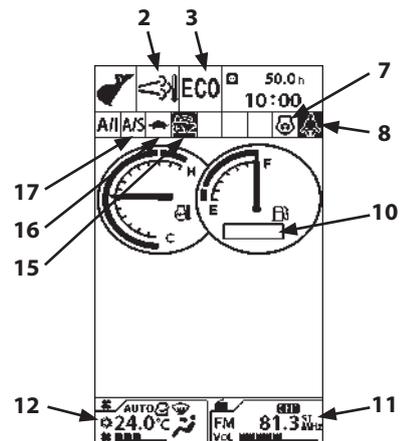
Digging Mode



MDAA-01-001EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Muffler Filter Display (2)
Displays condition of the muffler filter.
- Power Mode Display (3)
Displays the power mode selected from the switch panel.
- Preheat Display (7)
While the current is being supplied to the glow plug, the indicator is displayed.
- Seat Belt Display (8)
Turns ON when the key switch is in the ON position, and turns OFF 5 seconds after the engine starts.
- Sub Meter Display (10)
Fuel consumption or breaker hour meter is displayed.
- Radio Display (11)
Displays the radio panel
- Air Conditioner Display (12)
Displays the air conditioner panel.
- Overload Alarm Display (15) (Optional)
The system measures the load of suspended load from the bottom pressure of boom cylinder. When overload is detected, an alarm is displayed.
- Travel Mode Display (16)
Displays the travel mode selected from the switch panel.
- Auto Shut-Down Display (17)
When the auto shut-down is turned ON from the menu screen, the auto shut-down display (17) displays. When the key switch is turned ON while the auto shut-down is enabled, the auto shut-down display blinks for 10 seconds.



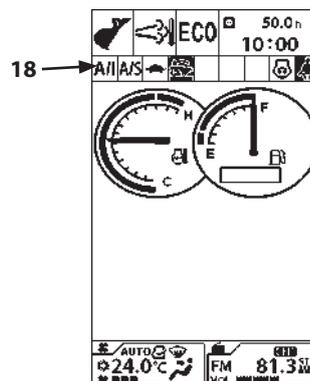
MDAA-01-286EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

- **Auto-Idle Display (18)**

When the auto-idle is selected from the switch panel, the auto-idle display (18) displays.

When the key switch is turned ON while the auto-idle switch is also ON, the auto-idle display blinks for 10 seconds.

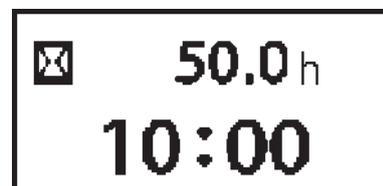


MDAA-01-286EN

Hour Meter

Total (accumulated) machine operation hours counted since the machine started working, are displayed in hours (h).

One digit after the decimal point indicates tenths of an hour (6 minutes).



MDAA-01-021EN

Clock

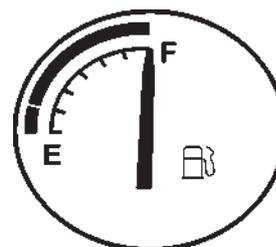
Indicates the present time.

24-h/12-h display can be selected.

(Refer to "Date and Time" for switching the display mode.)

Fuel Gauge

The remaining fuel amount is indicated by the needle. Refuel before the needle reaches "E".

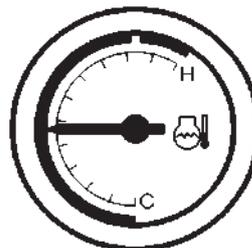


MDAA-01-276

OPERATOR'S STATION

Coolant Temperature Gauge

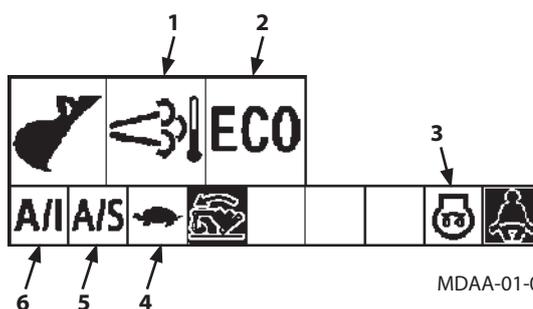
The engine coolant temperature is indicated with a needle. Normally the needle is around the center of the scale during operation.



M1U1-01-047

Operating Status Icon Display

Displays icons indicating the current status of the muffler filter display (1) and power mode (2), preheat indicator (3), travel mode (4), auto shut-down (5) ON and auto-idle (6) ON selected from the switch panel, when these systems are activated.



MDAA-01-023EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Security Functions (Optional)

Input Password

IMPORTANT:

- When required to activate the numeric keypad function, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
- If the password is forgotten, the machine must be modified. Be extremely careful not to forget the password.

1. Turn the key switch ON. After the starting screen is displayed, the password input screen will be displayed.
2. Input a password by using the numeric keypad.
3. The monitor unit matches the input password to the registered one. If they match, the basic screen displays. The engine is ready to run. If an incorrect password is input three times, a buzzer sounds for thirty seconds. During that time, the buzzer does not stop even if the key switch is turned ON/OFF.

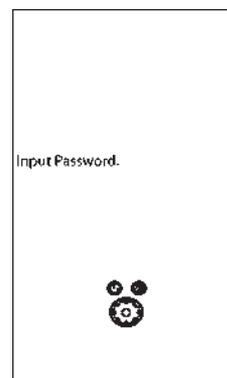
 **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering the password, push the CLEAR key in order to erase the entered characters.

4. After thirty seconds, if the key switch is turned to the ON position, the starting screen displays and the password input screen displays again. Then the password can be input again.
5. If an incorrect password is input again, the buzzer sounds for a further thirty seconds.



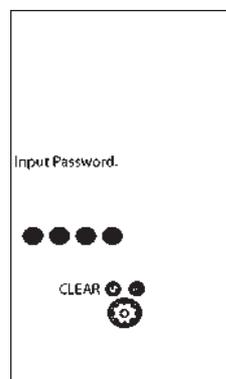
Starting Screen

MDAA-01-003EN

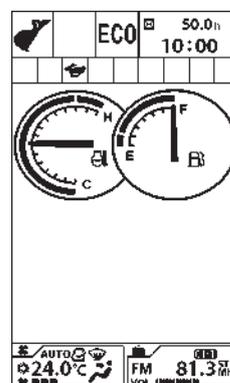


Password Input Screen

MDAA-01-085EN



MDAA-01-086EN



Basic Screen

MDAA-01-001EN

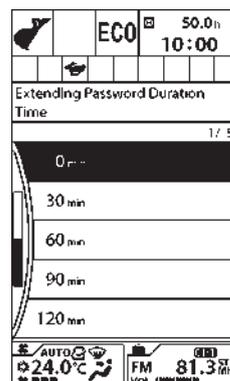
OPERATOR'S STATION

Extending Password Duration Time

IMPORTANT: This operation is applicable only to those machines that require a password.

By using the password duration screen, password duration time can be set. When restarting the machine, a password need not be input within the specified timeframe.

1. When turning the key switch from ON to ACC position, the monitor unit displays the password duration screen for ten seconds.



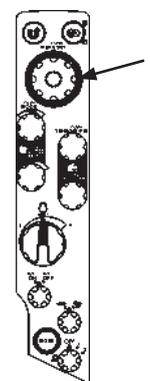
MDAA-01-087EN

Password Duration Screen (Key Switch: OFF)

2. While the password duration screen is still displayed, rotate selector knob (1) to highlight the relevant time. Pushing selector knob (1) sets the password duration time.

- Duration time 0 minute
- Duration time 30 minute
- Duration time 60 minute
- Duration time 90 minute
- Duration time 120 minute

NOTE: If the password duration time is not set explicitly, a duration of 0 is assumed.



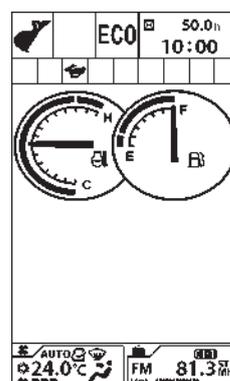
MDAA-01-040

3. If turning the key switch to the ON position within the password duration time, the monitor unit displays the basic screen after the starting screen.



Starting Screen

MDAA-01-003EN

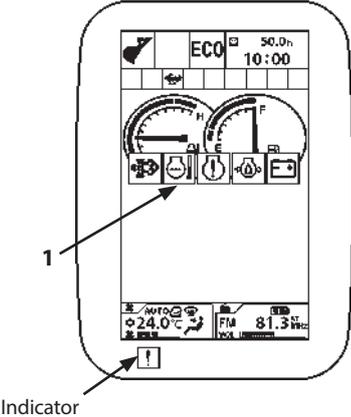


MDAA-01-001EN

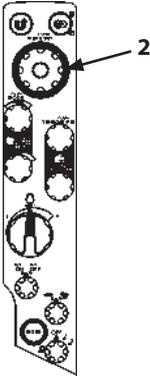
OPERATOR'S STATION

Alarm Occurrence Screen

In case any abnormality occurs, alarm marks (1) are displayed on the basic screen.
If six or more alarms are generated, the alarm marks (1) can be scrolled by rotating switch (2).



MDAA-01-316EN



MDAA-01-040

OPERATOR'S STATION

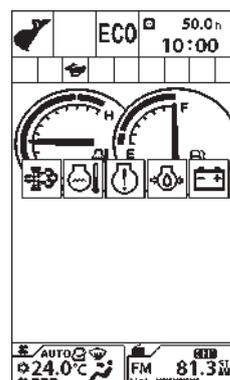
Follow the procedure below to display detailed information for an alarm.

Push selector knob (1) on the basic screen to display the main menu.

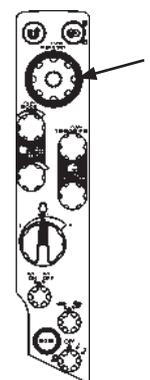
Rotate selector knob (1) to select the alarm list, and push selector knob (1).

Rotate selector knob (1) to select a required alarm from the alarm list, and push selector knob (1).

Detailed information of the selected alarm will be displayed.

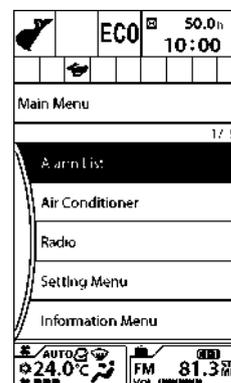


MDAA-01-004EN



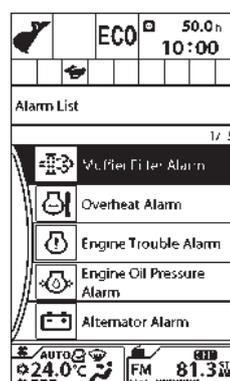
MDAA-01-040

CAUTION: The main menu displays the alarm list only when an alarm occurs.



MDEC-01-077EN

CAUTION: The alarm list contains only currently generated alarms.



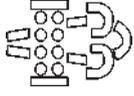
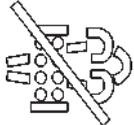
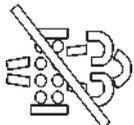
MDAA-01-078EN



MDAA-01-079EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Remedy

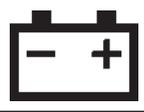
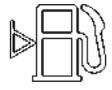
Display	Contents of Alarms	Remedy
	Muffler Filter Alarm* (Blinking) (Red)	Muffler filter is abnormal. Immediately set the machine in the park position, stop the engine and contact your authorized dealer.
	Muffler Filter Regeneration Request (Blinking) (Yellow)	The muffler filter needs immediate regeneration. Otherwise damage to the filter may result. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position, run the engine at slow idle speed, and turn the muffler filter switch to REGENERATION position.
	Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited Alarm (Lighting) (Yellow)	Regeneration is inhibited. Move the machine to a safe area, turn regeneration inhibition OFF, and perform manual regeneration.
	Muffler Filter Auto-Regeneration Inhibited Alarm (Lighting) (Yellow)	Auto-regeneration is inhibited.
	Overheat Alarm**	Engine coolant temperature has abnormally increased. Stop operation. Run the engine at slow idle speed to lower the coolant temperature.

 NOTE:

*Alarm mark is displayed and buzzer will sound.

**Alarm mark is displayed and buzzer will sound. Turn engine control dial to the slow idle position, and buzzer will stop.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Display	Contents of Alarms	Remedy
	Engine Trouble Alarm*	Engine or engine related parts are abnormal. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
	Engine Oil Pressure Alarm	Engine oil pressure has decreased. Immediately stop the engine. Check the engine oil system and oil level.
	Engine Start Disabled	As the pilot shut-off lever is lowered, the engine cannot start.
	Engine Start Disabled	As the engine emergency switch is ON, the engine cannot start.
	Alternator Alarm	Electrical system is abnormal. Check alternator and battery system.
	Fuel Level Alarm	Fuel level is low. Refill fuel as soon as possible.

 NOTE: *Alarm mark is displayed and buzzer will sound.

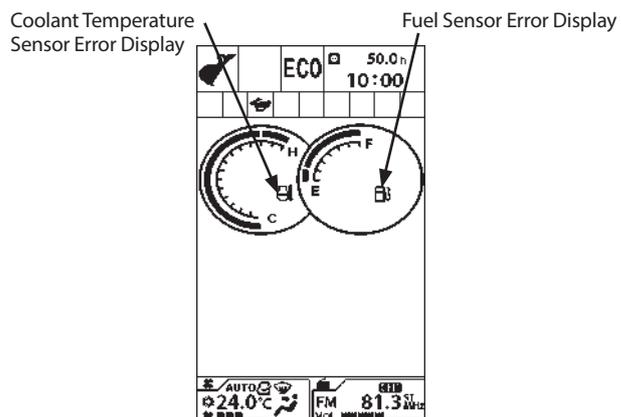
OPERATOR'S STATION

Display	Contents of Alarms	Remedy
	Hydraulic Oil Filter Restriction Alarm	The hydraulic oil filter is clogged. Clean or replace the hydraulic oil filter.
	Air Cleaner Restriction Alarm	Air filter elements are clogged. Clean or replace air filter elements.
	System Failure Alarm	Communication system is abnormal. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
	Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever Alarm	Pilot control shut-off lever system is abnormal. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
	Water Separator Alarm	Water Separator is Full. Drain Water.

 **NOTE:** The hydraulic oil filter alarm lights only when the high performance element (optional) is used.

OPERATOR'S STATION

- **Fuel Sensor Error Display**
If the fuel sensor is faulty, the color of the fuel mark changes and the needle disappears. If the harness between the fuel sensor and the controller unit is broken, the needle disappears.
- **Coolant Temperature Sensor Error Display**
If the coolant temperature sensor is faulty, color of the temperature mark changes and the needle disappears. If the harness between the temperature sensor and the controller unit is broken, the needle disappears.



MDAA-01-024EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Muffler Filter

Muffler Filter Condition Display

Muffler Filter Display (1) displays the condition of the muffler filter.



This mark indicates that the exhaust temperature is high during the muffler filter regeneration. It lights while auto-regeneration is in process.



NOTE:

- The auto-regeneration is performed at random times. The auto-regeneration may start during operation of the machine; you can continue to operate the machine. Turning the pilot shut-off lever to LOCK position while performing auto-regeneration may change the engine sound, this is not a malfunction.
- The engine sound may differ from normal sound during auto-regeneration, which is not a malfunction.
- Do not stop the engine during regeneration unless absolutely necessary.

When the manual regeneration switch is pushed during the auto-regeneration process, the message "Minimal Exhaust Restriction. Exhaust Filter Cleaning Not Available." will be displayed on monitor (2).

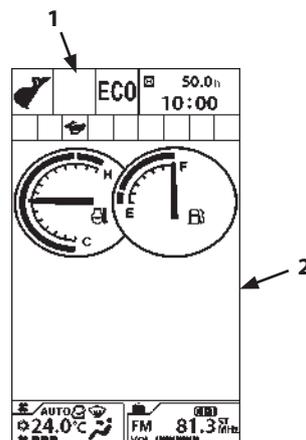
Regeneration may not be completed according to the operating conditions of the machine. In this case, muffler filter regeneration request will be displayed on the monitor. Immediately perform manual regeneration following the procedure.



This mark indicates that the muffler filter regeneration is inhibited. Regeneration will not be performed while this mark is lit.

However, auto-regeneration may be performed depending on the working conditions, which is not a malfunction.

IMPORTANT: Set the muffler filter regeneration to inhibited while operating the machine in a flammable environment. (Refer to 1-41)



MDAA-01-001EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Muffler Filter Manual Regeneration Request

The muffler filter needs regeneration. Usually, regeneration is performed automatically. However, manual regeneration is required depending on the conditions. In that case, marks described below may be indicated on monitor (1).



(Blinking,
Yellow)

This mark indicates that immediate muffler filter manual regeneration is required. Perform manual regeneration following the below procedure.



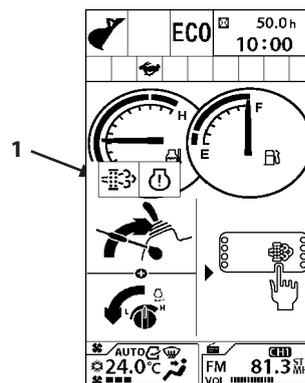
(Blinking,
Red)

This mark indicates that the muffler filter has over collected particle matter. Immediately stop operation, park the machine in a safe location. Then, contact your nearest Hitachi dealer.



(Lighting,
Yellow)

This mark indicates that the muffler filter regeneration is inhibited. It is displayed when the manual regeneration request arises while muffler filter regeneration is inhibited. Move the machine to a safe place. Perform manual regeneration following the below procedure.



MDEC-01-005

IMPORTANT:

- **Manual regeneration that is performed when the muffler filter regeneration request is displayed restores muffler filter function. This is not a malfunction.**
- **If the machine is continuously operated despite the muffler filter regeneration request is displayed, muffler filter alarm and engine trouble alarm will be displayed, and the buzzer sounds. Consult your authorized dealer for repairing the muffler filter.**

OPERATOR'S STATION

Manual Regeneration Procedure

When manual regeneration is needed, screen (1) as shown in the right will be displayed. When this screen is displayed, you need to perform manual regeneration. Before starting manual regeneration, be sure to check the following.

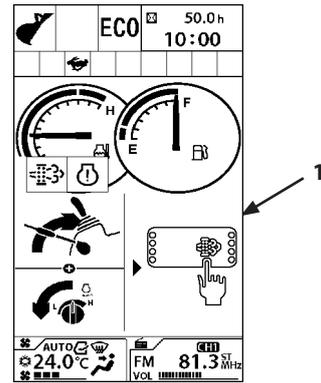
If the rear view camera is equipped on the machine and the camera is enabled, screen (1) is displayed only when the pilot control shut-off lever is in LOCK position.

- No person is present around the machine.
 - Keep flammable objects away from the muffler.
 - Remaining fuel alarm is not lit.
1. Park the machine in a safe place. Lower the front attachment onto the ground.

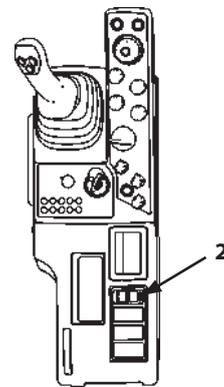
2. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
3. Set the engine control dial to slow idle.
4. Push and hold muffler filter manual regeneration switch (2) (about 1 second).
5. When pushing the muffler filter manual regeneration switch, screen (3) as shown in the right will be displayed and the manual regeneration starts. Bar graph on the screen indicates progress of the regeneration process.

CAUTION: The regeneration does not start unless the pilot control shut-off lever is in the LOCK position and the engine control dial is in slow idle. When touching the pilot shut-off lever or the engine control dial during regeneration, the regeneration process is aborted. When the process is aborted, start over again.

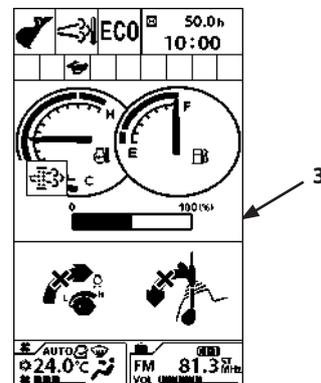
6. When the regeneration is finished, "Regeneration Has Completed." message will be displayed. If "Regeneration Has Failed." message is displayed, start over the regeneration process again. Failure of regeneration process may happen in the conditions other than above (such as malfunction of a sensor that affects regeneration at low ambient temperature).



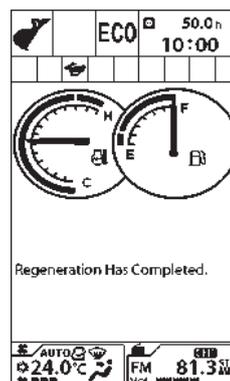
MDEC-01-005



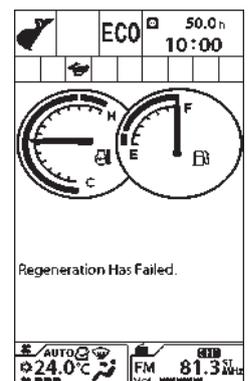
MDAA-01-330



MDEC-01-006



MDAA-01-083EN



MDAA-01-084EN

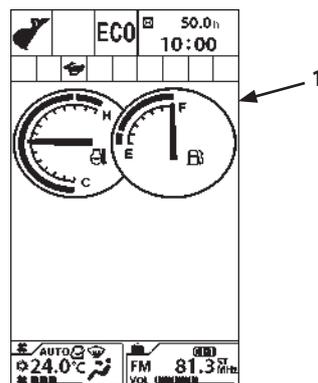
OPERATOR'S STATION

Main Menu

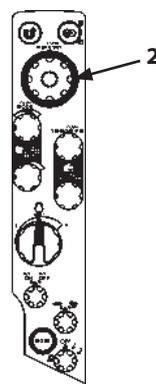
Press selector knob (2) while displaying basic screen (1) to display main menu screen (3).

The main menu screen contains the items shown in the figure to the right. The alarm list is displayed only when an alarm is generated.

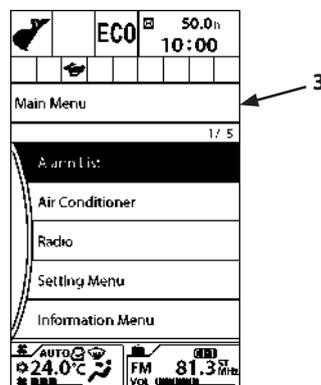
Mail (optional) menu will not be displayed unless they are set beforehand.



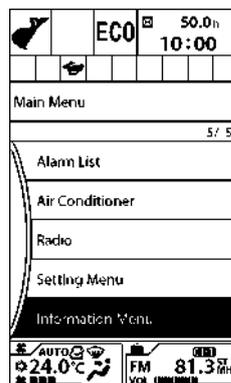
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



MDEC-01-077EN



MDEC-01-190EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Air Conditioner

Most air conditioner functions are operated by using switches (3) and (4), however air vent selection and turning A/C ON and OFF are performed from the air conditioner setting screen in the menu. (Refer to the page 1-98)

Circulation Air Mode

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (5).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Air Conditioner (6).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Air Conditioner screen (7).

Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight  (8) mark.

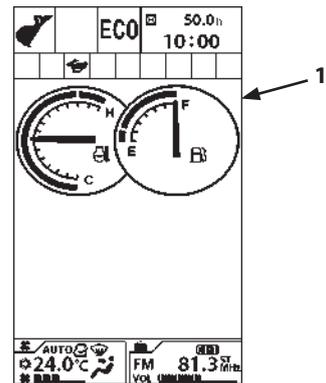
4. Press selector knob (2) to set the circulation mode.
5. Press selector knob (2) again to switch the fresh air mode.

Air Conditioner ON/OFF

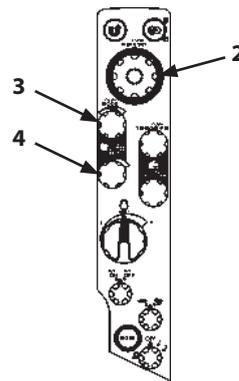
1. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight A/C (9).
2. Press selector knob (2) to turn the air compressor ON.
3. Press selector knob (2) again to turn the air compressor OFF.

 **NOTE:** When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.

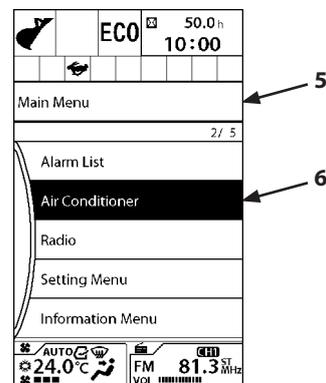
IMPORTANT: If mark (10) is displayed on the air conditioner display, communication between the air conditioner and the monitor is abnormal. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.



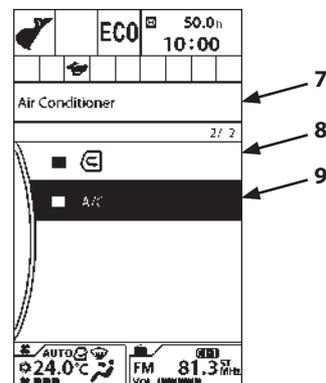
MDAA-01-001EN



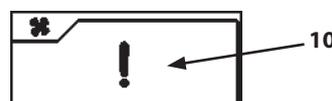
MDAA-01-040



MDEC-01-089EN



MDAA-01-091EN



MDAA-01-226

OPERATOR'S STATION

Radio

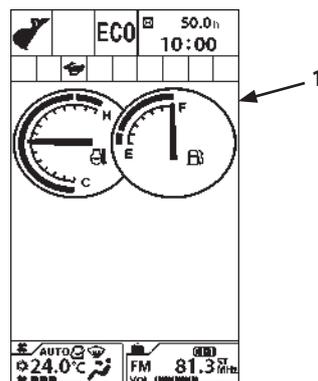
Most radio functions are operated by using switches (3) and (4), however memory channel setting, seek function, TONE adjustment, and AUTO PRESET are done at the radio screen in the main menu.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (5).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Radio (6).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display the radio screen.

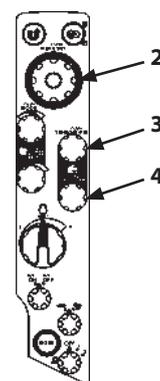
(Refer to the page 1-106)

IMPORTANT: If mark (7) is displayed on the radio display, communication between the radio and the monitor is abnormal. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

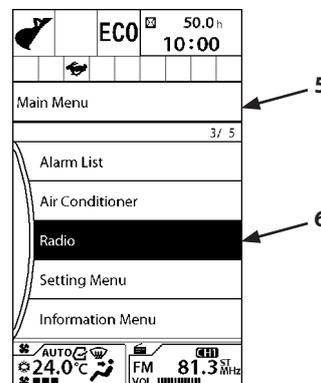
Press the numeric keypad of 1 to 8 while the radio is ON, the radio station will switch to memorized channel of 1 to 8. (Refer to 1-85 and 1-105)



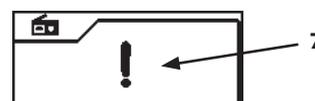
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



MDEC-01-092EN



MDAA-01-227

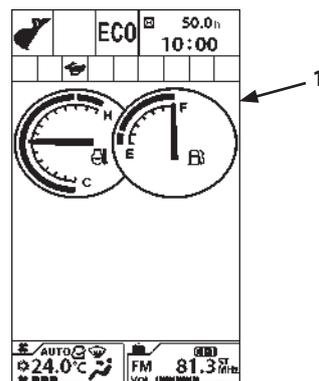
OPERATOR'S STATION

Mail (Optional)

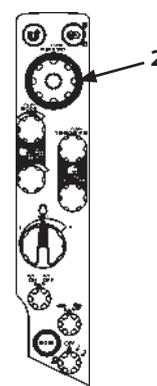
IMPORTANT: This function is available only to a machine equipped with a communication terminal. When using the mail function, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Mail (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Mail screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired request.
5. Press selector knob (2) to send mail information to the communication terminal.

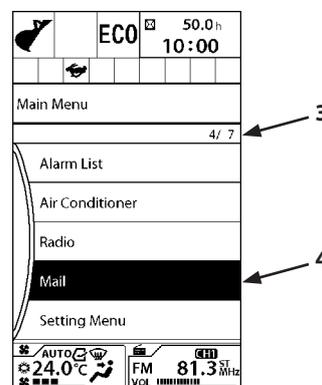
- General Request
- Fuel Replenishment Request
- Service Maintenance Request
- Forwarding Request



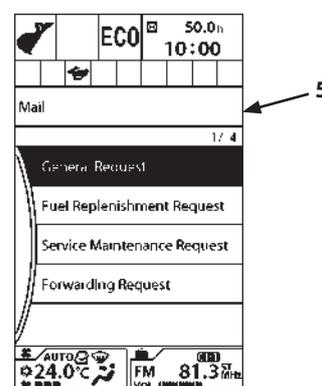
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



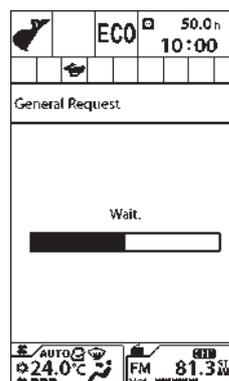
MDEC-01-109EN



MDAA-01-110EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

- While mail information is sent to the communication terminal, the message "Wait." is displayed on the screen.

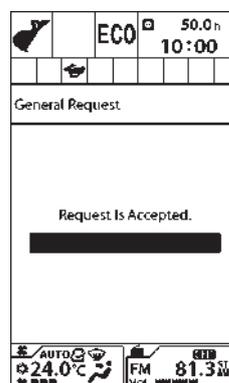


MDAA-01-111EN

- When the communication terminal completes receiving mail information, the message "Request Is Accepted." is displayed on the screen.

Push the back key to return to the Mail screen.

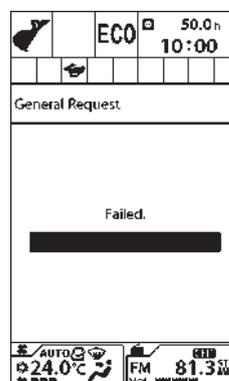
- Then, a mail is sent from the communication terminal to the central server.



MDAA-01-112EN

 **NOTE:** Depending on the machine's operating environment, the mail may not be sent.

 **NOTE:** When the communication terminal could not receive the mail, the message "Failed." is displayed on the screen.



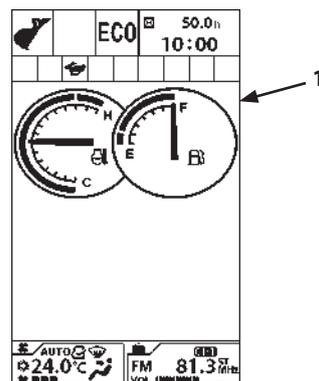
MDAA-01-113EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

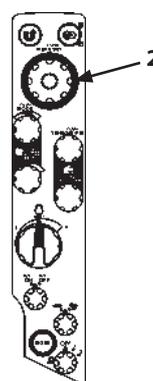
Setting Menu

Setting menu consists of date and time setting, attachment adjustment, attachment name, auto shut-down setting, change password, selecting sub meter, brightness adjustment of back monitor and screen.

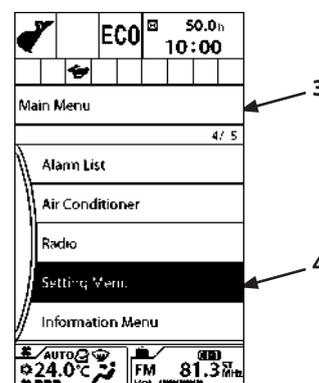
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



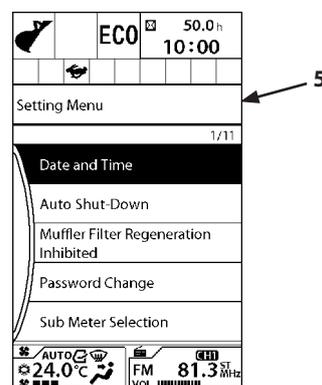
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



MDEC-01-114EN



MDEC-01-115EN

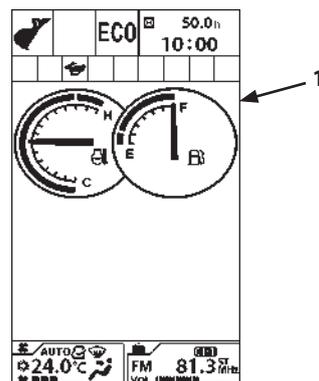
OPERATOR'S STATION

Date and Time

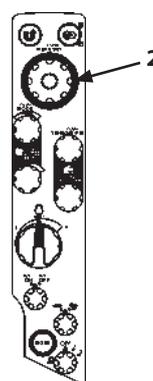
Time, date and display mode can be set on this screen. Year-month-day format and 24h/12h display mode are selected in the display setting.

Time Adjustment

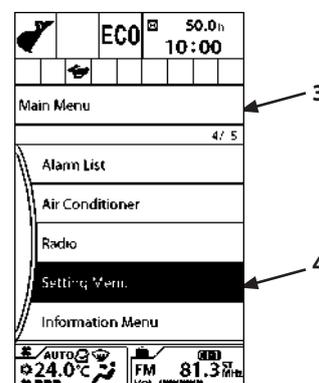
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date and Time (6).



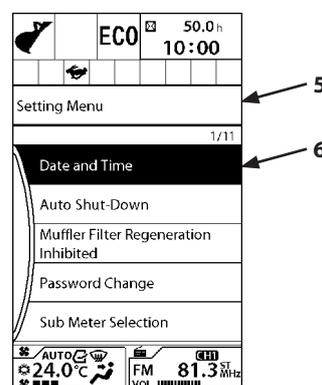
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



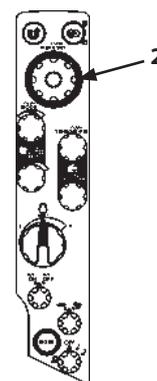
MDEC-01-114EN



MDEC-01-115EN

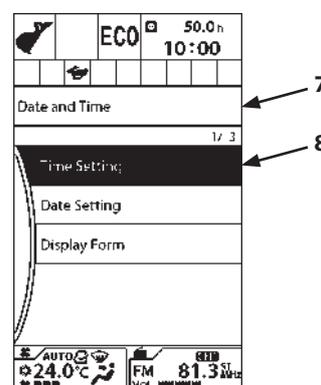
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Date and Time screen (7).



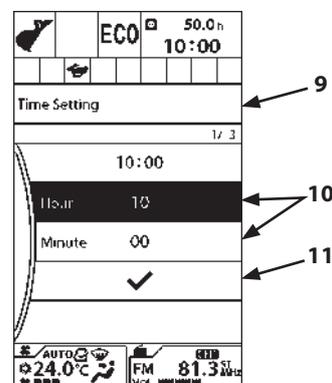
MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Time Setting (8).
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Time Setting screen (9).

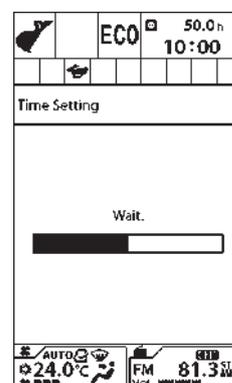


MDAA-01-117EN

8. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Hour or Minute and push selector knob (2).
9. Rotate selector knob (2) to adjust the clock. Rotate clockwise to adjust the number upwards, and counterclockwise to decrease it.
10. Push selector knob (2) to end the Time setting procedure.
11. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ✓ (11). Push selector knob (2) to make the change.



MDAA-01-118EN

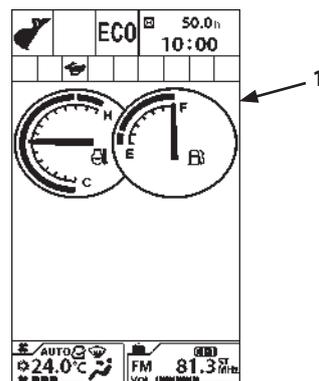


MDAA-01-121EN

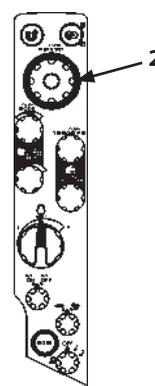
OPERATOR'S STATION

Date Adjustment

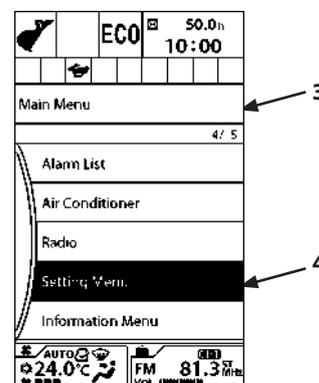
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date and Time (6).



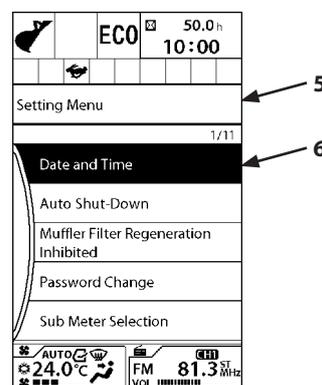
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



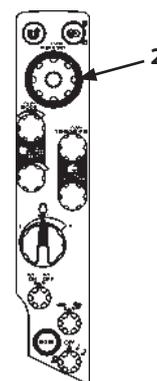
MDEC-01-114EN



MDEC-01-115EN

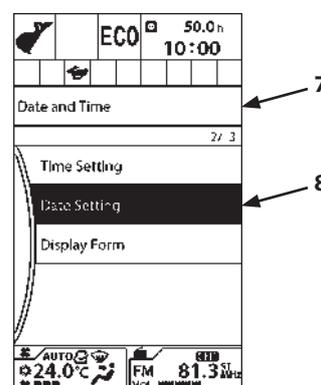
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Date and Time screen (7).



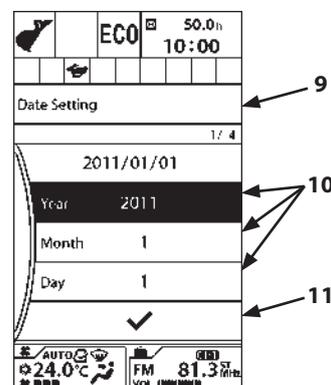
MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date Setting (8).
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Date Setting screen (9).

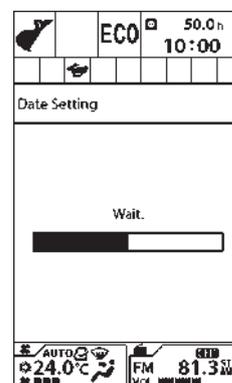


MDAA-01-122EN

8. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Year, Month or Day and push selector knob (2).
9. Rotate selector knob (2) to adjust the clock. Rotate clockwise to adjust the number upwards, and counterclockwise to decrease it.
10. Push selector knob (2) to end the date setting procedure.
11. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ✓ (11). Push selector knob (2) to make the change.



MDAA-01-123EN

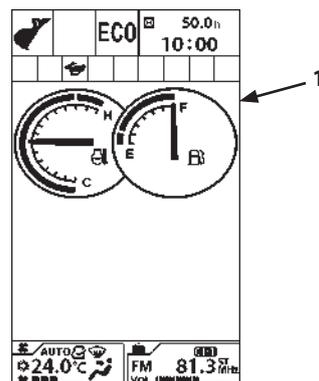


MDAA-01-127EN

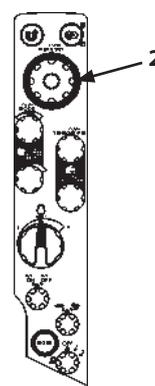
OPERATOR'S STATION

Display Mode Setting

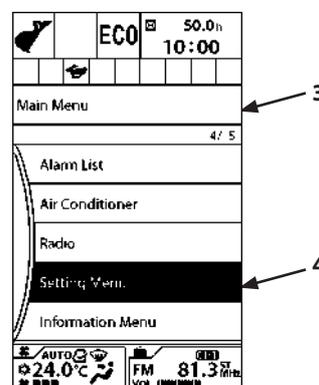
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date and Time (6).



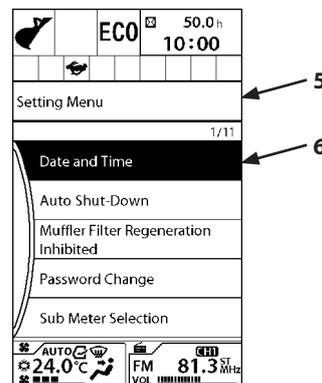
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



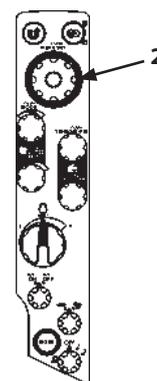
MDEC-01-114EN



MDEC-01-115EN

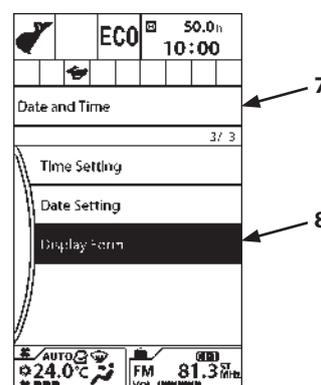
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Date and Time screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

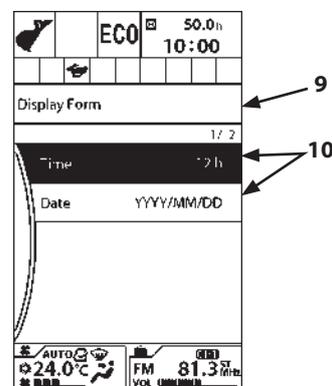
6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Display Form (8).



MDAA-01-228EN

7. Press selector knob (2) to display Display Form screen (9).
 8. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Date (10) and push selector knob (2).

Time : Each time selector knob (2) is pushed, the time format is changed as follows: 12 h → 24 h → 12 h.
 Date : Each time selector knob (2) is pushed, the date format is changed as follows: YYYY/MM/DD → MM/DD/YYYY → DD/MM/YYYY → YYYY/MM/DD.



MDAA-01-229EN



MDAA-01-230EN



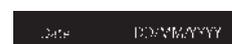
MDAA-01-231EN



MDAA-01-232EN



MDAA-01-233EN



MDAA-01-234EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Auto Shut-Down

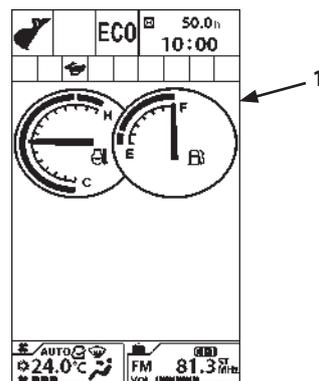
⚠ WARNING: This function automatically stops the engine. Take extra care on the work and work environment when using this function.

The auto shut-down function can be set in this screen. Set the auto shut-down time and enable (ON) the function beforehand. The engine automatically stops after the preset time at the state in which the pilot control shut-off lever is pulled. 30 seconds before the engine stop, the monitor displays a message that engine will be stopped and the indicator starts flashing. The buzzer also sounds. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, continuously sounds from 15 seconds. The engine speed decreases to the idling speed, and then stops after 15 seconds. When the pilot control shut-off lever is pushed before stopping the engine, the auto shut-down is disabled and the engine will not stop.

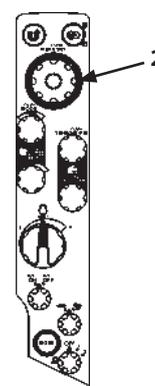
IMPORTANT: When the engine stops by the auto shut-down function, turn the key switch to ACC or OFF once and then turn it to START to restart the engine. Turn the key switch OFF after auto shut-down when leaving the machine for long period of time. Do not leave the machine after auto shut-down. Failure to do so may discharge the batteries.

Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF

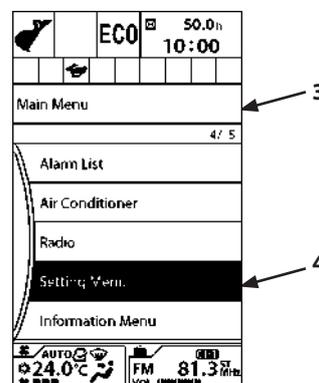
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Auto Shut-Down (6).



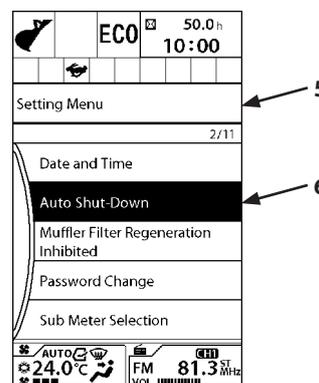
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



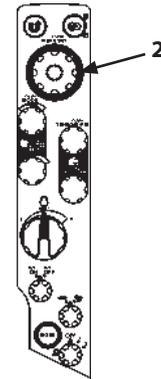
MDEC-01-114EN



MDEC-01-147EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

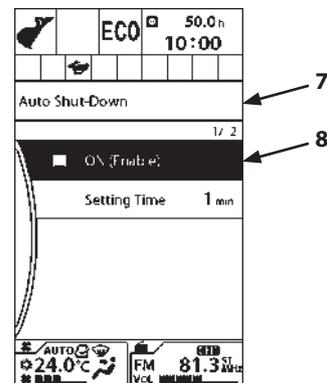
- Press selector knob (2) to display Auto Shut-Down screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (8).
- Press selector knob (2) to set the auto shut-down function ON. Press selector knob (2) again to turn the auto shut-down function OFF.

 **NOTE:** When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.

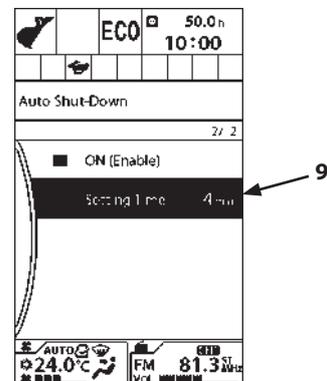


MDAA-01-148EN

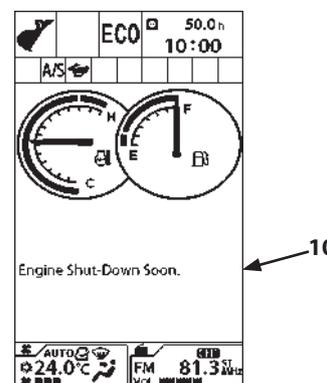
Acting Time Setting

- On the Auto Shut-Down screen, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Time (9) and push selector knob (2).
- Rotate selector knob (2) to adjust Auto Shut-Down acting time.
- Press selector knob (2) to make the change.

 **NOTE:** 30 seconds before the engine stops, the monitor will display "Engine Shut-Down Soon." message (10).



MDAA-01-150EN



MDAA-01-146EN

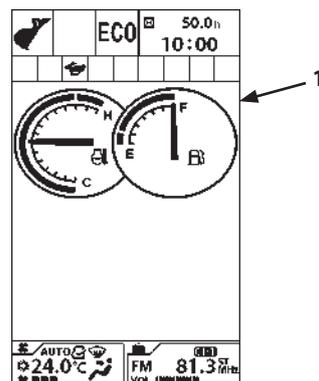
OPERATOR'S STATION

Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited

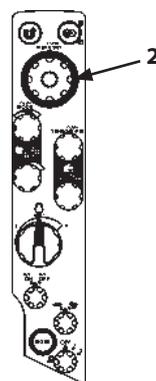
IMPORTANT: The muffler filter regeneration can be inhibited at this screen to prevent auto regeneration while operating the machine in a dusty area or indoors.

Setting Procedure

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

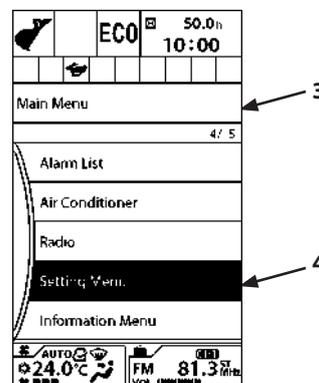


MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



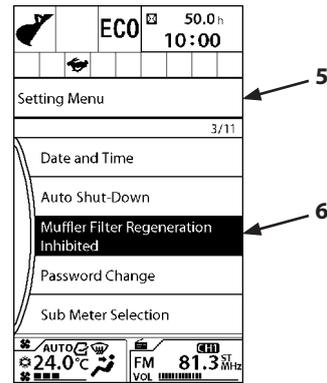
MDEC-01-114EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

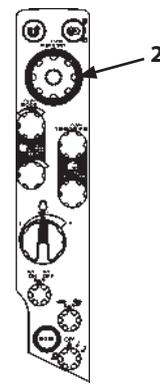
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited (6).
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited screen (7).
6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight  (8), and press selector knob (2) to display Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited screen (9).
7. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (10). Confirmation screen is added.
8. Press selector knob (2) to turn Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited ON. Press selector knob (2) again to turn Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited OFF.
9. When ON is selected, the regeneration inhibited icon will be displayed on the monitor. (Refer to 1-25)

 **NOTE:** When the function is ON, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.

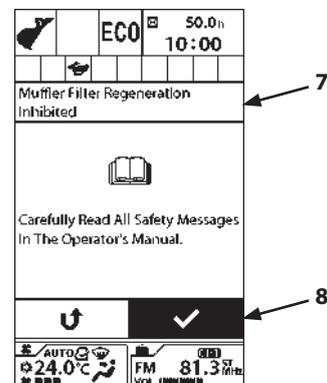
IMPORTANT: When the machine is operated with the muffler filter regeneration inhibited, the muffler filter becomes clogged. When the muffler filter regeneration request is displayed, move the machine to a safe place. Perform the manual regeneration following the specified procedure. Failure to do so may damage the muffler filter. Refer to "Muffler Filter" section for the manual regeneration.



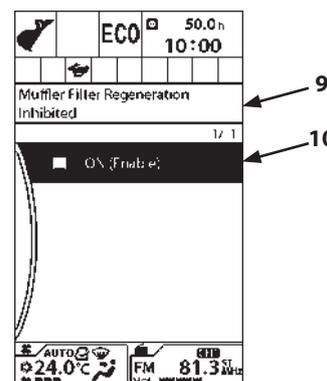
MDEC-01-283EN



MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-325EN

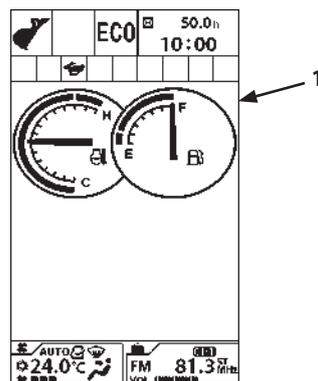


MDAA-01-284EN

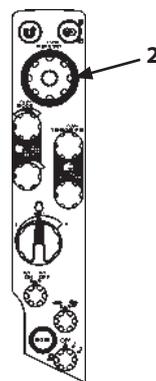
OPERATOR'S STATION

Password Change (Optional)

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

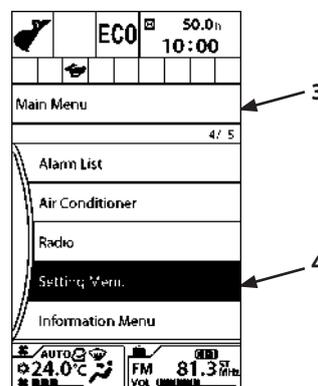


MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040

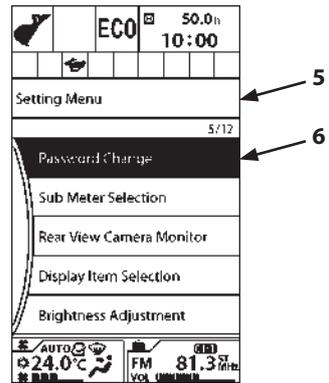
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MDEC-01-114EN

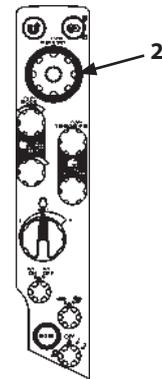
OPERATOR'S STATION

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Password Change (6).

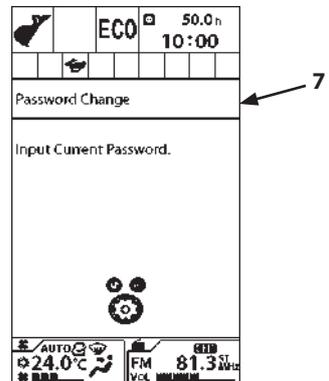


MDAA-01-156EN

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Password Change screen (7).

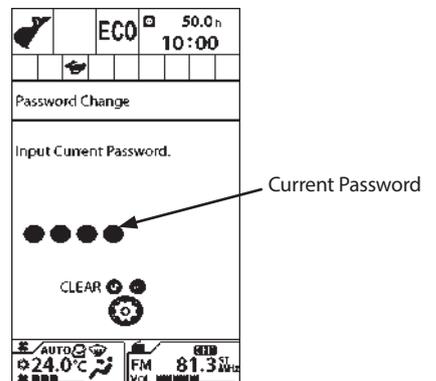


MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-157EN

6. Input current password from the numeric keypad.



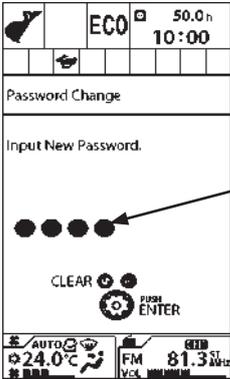
MDAA-01-158EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

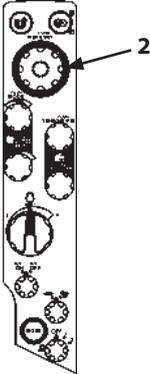
- 7. Input the new password and push selector knob (2). 3 to 8 digits can be input for password.



MDAA-01-159EN



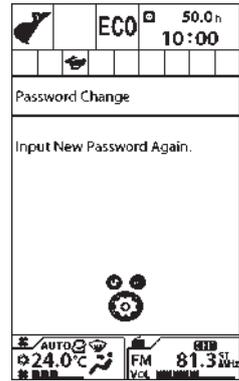
MDAA-01-160EN



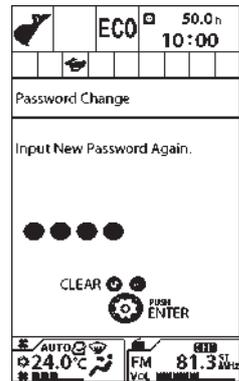
MDAA-01-040

OPERATOR'S STATION

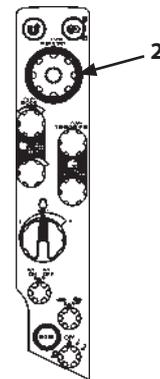
8. Input the new password again to confirm it and push selector knob (2).



MDAA-01-161EN



MDAA-01-162EN



MDAA-01-040

9. The password has changed.



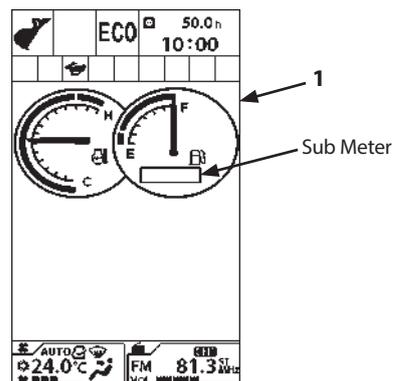
MDAA-01-163EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

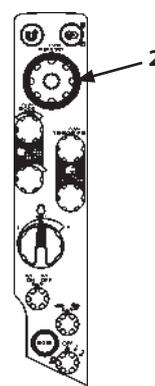
Sub Meter

A sub meter selection menu that can be added to the fuel meter is selected on this screen. OFF, Fuel Consumption Indicator are provided.

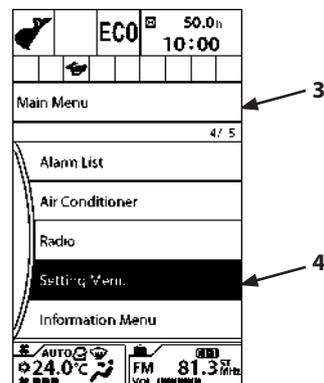
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Sub Meter Selection (6).



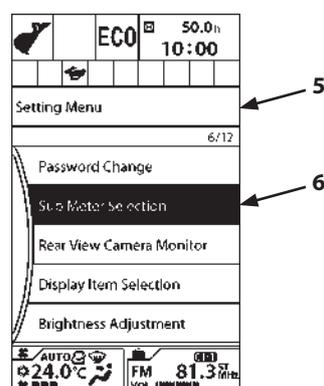
MDAA-01-315EN



MDAA-01-040



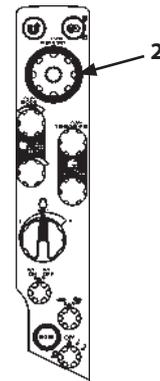
MDEC-01-114EN



MDAA-01-164EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Sub Meter Selection screen (7).

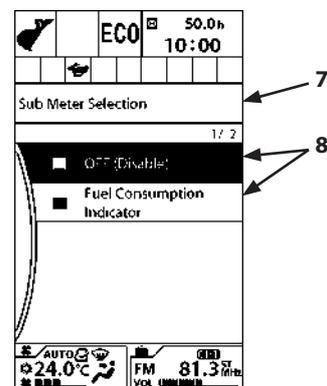


MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired sub meter (8). (Selecting OFF will not display a sub meter.)
7. Press selector knob (2) to enable the changes.

 **NOTE:**

- Only one sub meter can be selected at a time.
- When a display is selected, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When not selected, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.



MDEC-01-165EN

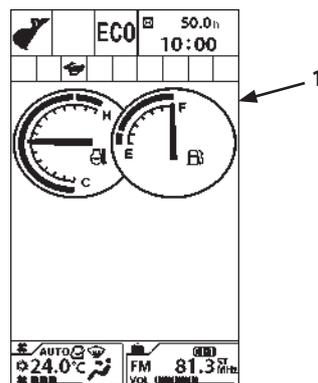
OPERATOR'S STATION

Rear View Camera Monitor

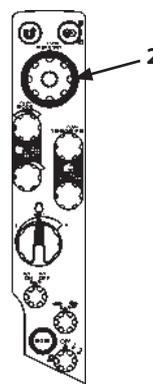
IMPORTANT: The image displayed on the rear view monitor is meant only as an aid. Actual position and distance of people and objects in the rear view monitor will be different. When operating the machine, pay thorough attention to the surrounding situation.

Rear View Camera ON/OFF

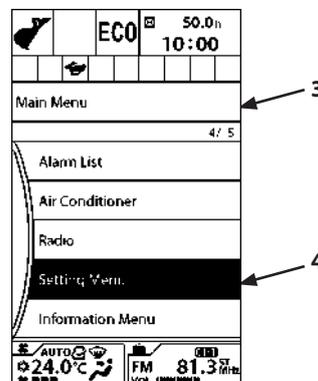
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Rear View Camera Monitor (6).



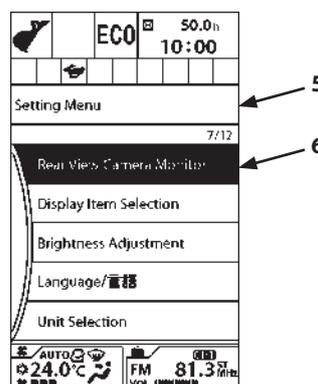
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



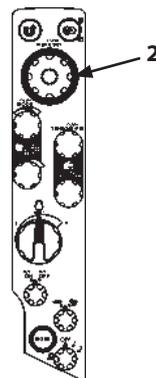
MDEC-01-114EN



MDAA-01-168EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Rear View Camera Monitor screen (7).

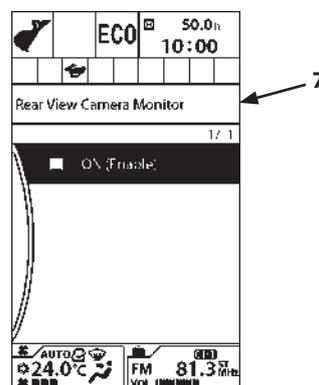


MDAA-01-040

6. Press selector knob (2) to turn the rear view camera monitor ON/OFF.
7. When the rear view camera monitor is ON, rear view image is continuously displayed on the basic screen.

IMPORTANT: In order to obtain a clear image, clean the lens and the monitor display before operating the machine.

 **NOTE:** The monitor and camera lens surface is a resin product. Lightly wipe the surface with a wet clean cloth. Never use an organic solvent.



MDAA-01-169EN

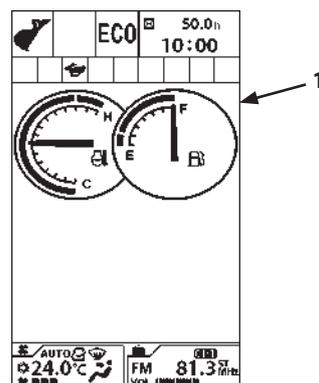
IMPORTANT:

- Never attempt to change the mounting position of the rear view camera.
- Consult your authorized dealer if any abnormality is found on the rear view image.

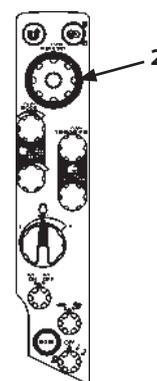
OPERATOR'S STATION

Brightness Adjustment

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

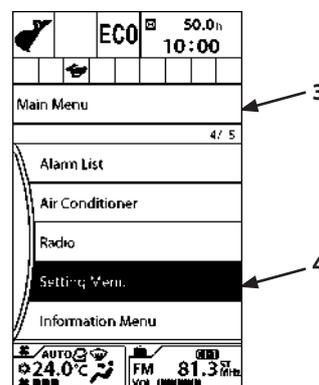


MDAA-01-001EN



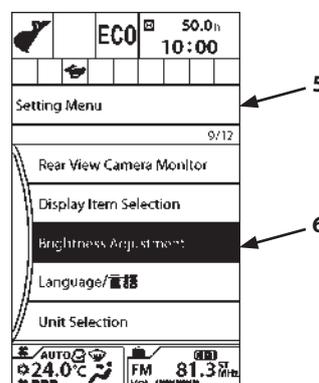
MDAA-01-040

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MDEC-01-114EN

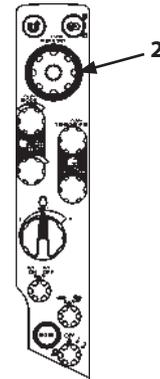
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Brightness Adjustment (6).



MDAA-01-171EN

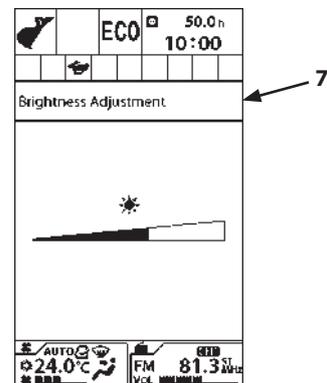
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Brightness Adjustment screen (7).



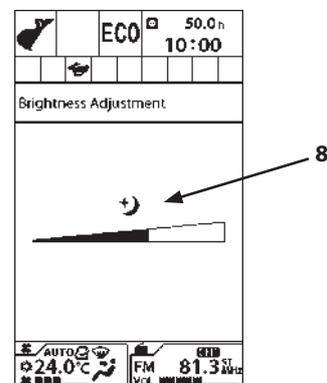
MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) clockwise to make the screen brighter, counterclockwise to make the screen darker.



MDAA-01-172EN

 **NOTE:** When the light is turned ON, the monitor screen changes to night mode and mark (8) is displayed. Brightness can be adjusted for day mode and night mode respectively.



MDAA-01-173EN

 **NOTE:** Even if the light is turned ON during daytime, you can activate the daytime screen by pushing "0" (9) on the numeric keypad.

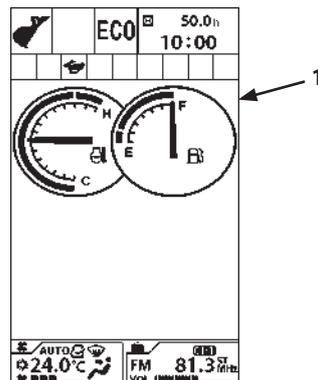


MDAA-01-018

OPERATOR'S STATION

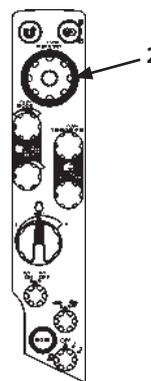
Language Settings

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).



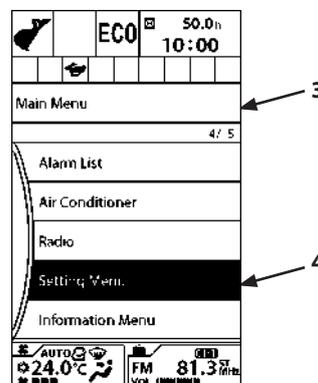
MDAA-01-001EN

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



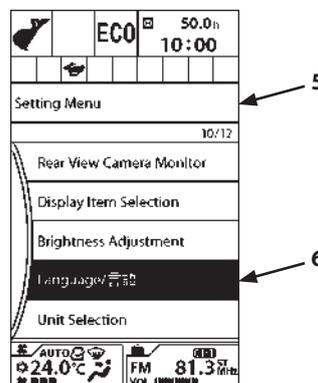
MDAA-01-040

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).



MDEC-01-114EN

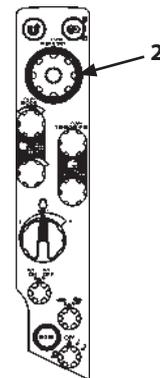
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Language/言語 (6).



MDAA-01-176EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

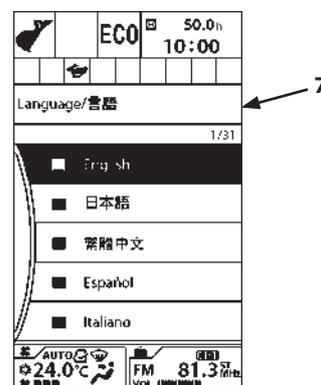
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Language/言語 screen (7).



6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight the desired language. Press selector knob (2) to make the change.

 **NOTE:** When a display is selected, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When not selected, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.

MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-177EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Lists of Display Language

Language	Screen Display
Japanese	日本語
English	English
Spanish	Español
Italian	Italiano
French	Français
German	Deutsch
Dutch	Nederlands
Russian	Русский
Portuguese	Português
Finnish	Suomi
Greek	Ελληνικά
Swedish	Svenska
Norwegian	Norsk
Chinese (Simplified)	简体中文
Chinese (Traditional)	繁體中文
Korean	한국어

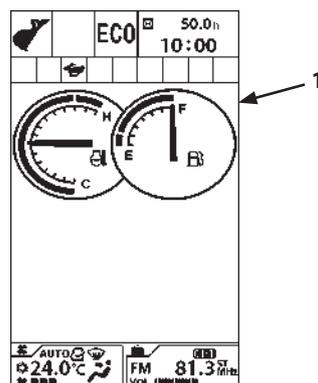
Language	Screen Display
Indonesian	Bahasa Indonesia
Thai	ภาษาไทย
Vietnamese	Tiếng Việt
Myanmarese	မြန်မာစာစဉ်
Arabic	اللغة العربية
Persian	زبان فارسی
Turkish	Türkçe
Danish	Dansk
Estonian	Eesti
Polish	Polski
Icelandic	Íslenska
Croatian	Hrvatski
Slovenian	Slovenščina
Romanian	limba română
Bulgarian	Български език
Lithuanian	Lietuvių kalba

OPERATOR'S STATION

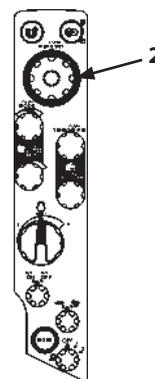
Unit Selection

Unit system displayed on the monitor can be selected in this screen.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

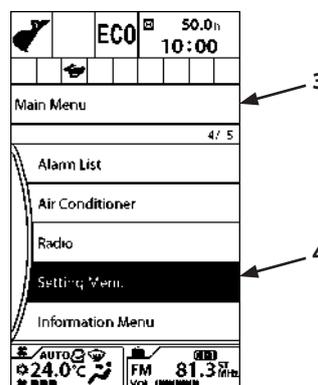


MDAA-01-001EN



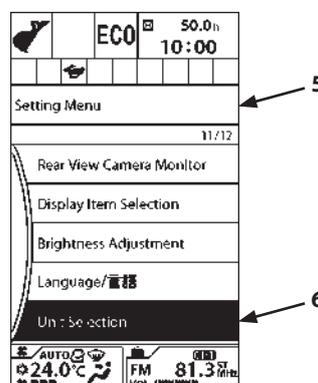
MDAA-01-040

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MDEC-01-114EN

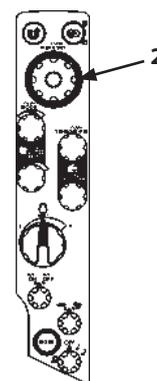
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Unit Selection (6).



MDAA-01-181EN

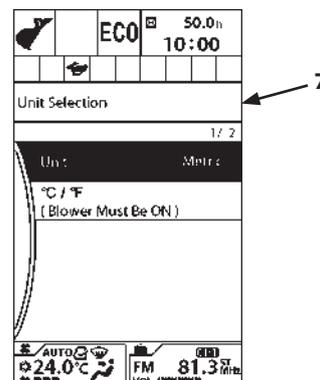
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Unit Selection screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired unit system. Press selector knob (2) to set the unit (Metric or US system).

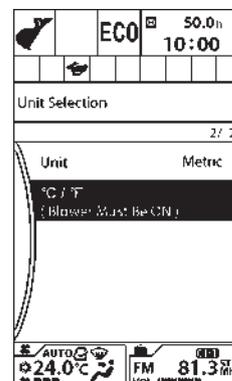


MDAA-01-182EN

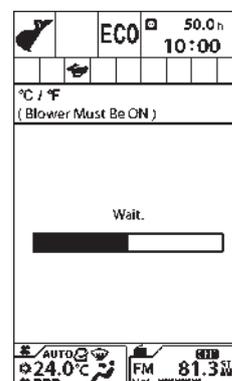
7. Before changing °C and °F, turn the blower of the air conditioner ON.

Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired unit system (°C or °F). Press selector knob (2) to set the unit.

When pressing selector knob (2), "Wait." will be displayed and then the change will be completed.



MDAA-01-183EN



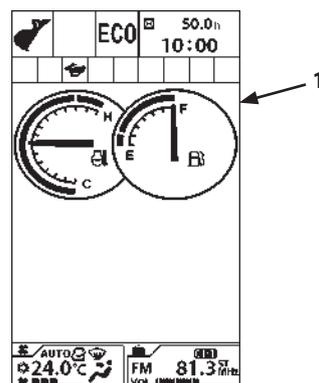
MDAA-01-184EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

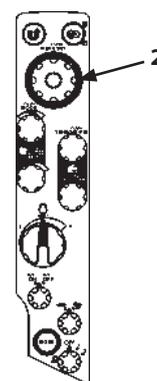
Display Item Selection (Rear View Camera OFF)

The display under the meters can be set to OFF (disable), Logo or Operational information.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

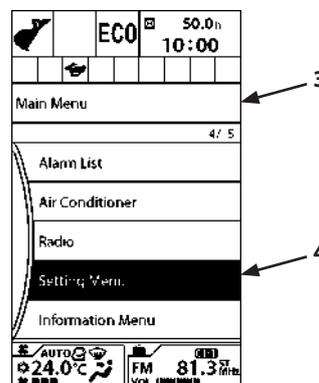


MDAA-01-001EN



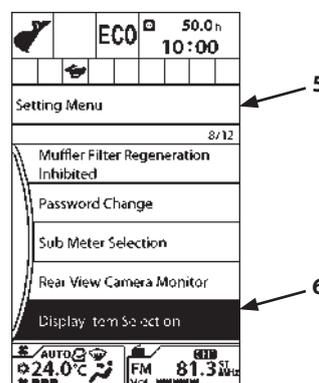
MDAA-01-040

2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MDEC-01-114EN

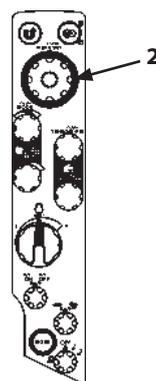
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Display Item Selection (6).



MDAA-01-237EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

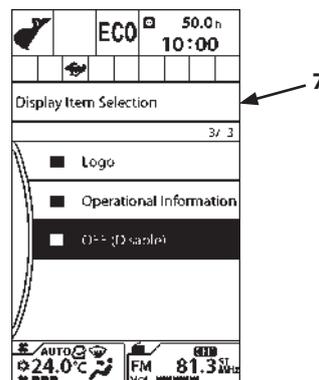
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Display Item Selection screen (7).



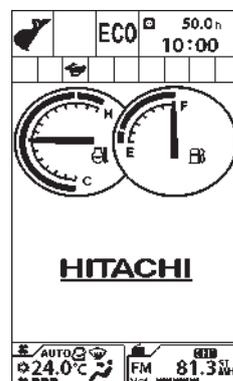
6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight desired display (8). Press selector knob (2) to set the image. (Selecting OFF sets non-display.)

 **NOTE:** When a display is selected, the mark "■" is displayed in green. When not selected, the mark "■" is displayed in gray.

MDAA-01-040

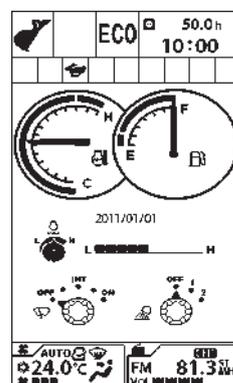


MDAA-01-238EN



Logo

MDAA-01-239EN



Operation Information

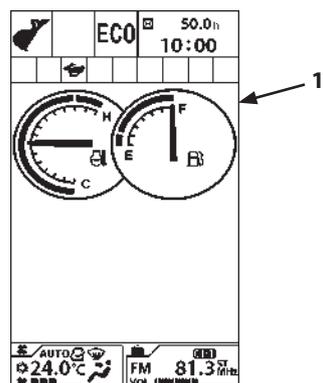
MDAA-01-222EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

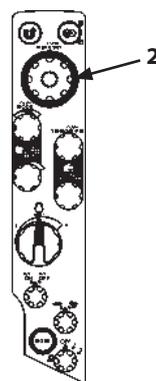
Main Menu Sequence Change

Menu sequence of Air Conditioner, Radio, Work Mode and Mail can be changed in this screen. Frequently used menu can be located on top of the screen.

1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).

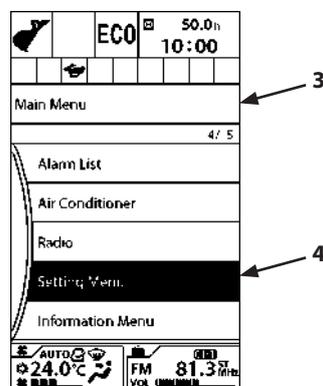


MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040

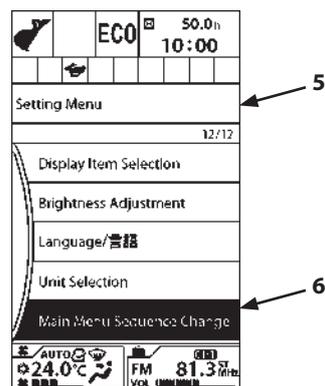
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).



MDEC-01-114EN

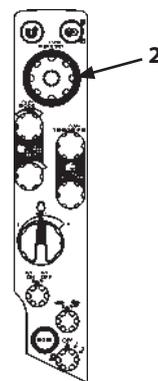
OPERATOR'S STATION

3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Main Menu Sequence Change (6).



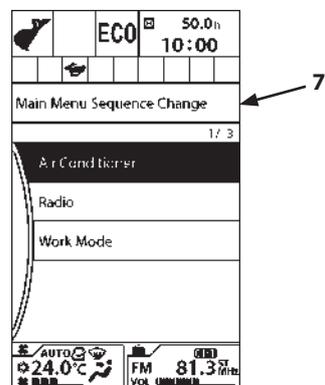
MDAA-01-186EN

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Main Menu Sequence Change screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight a menu to be on the top of the screen. Press selector knob (2) to set the menu to the top of the screen.



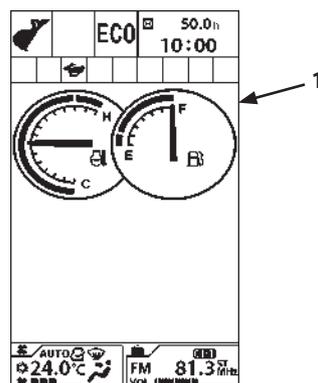
MDAA-01-187EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

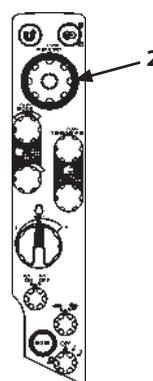
Information Menu

The information menu includes Operation, Maintenance, Troubleshooting and Monitoring.

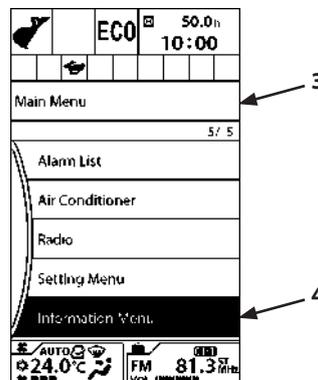
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).



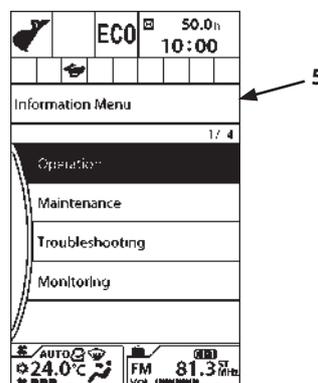
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-191EN-NH

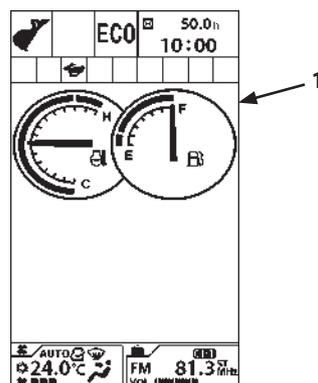
OPERATOR'S STATION

Operation

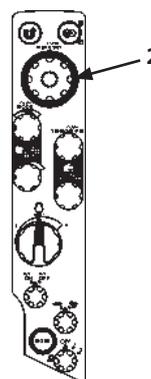
The Operation screen displays Fuel Consumption, Breaker Operation, Attachment Operation, Travel Operation, and Actual Operation menus. The Fuel Consumption screen displays fuel consumption, operating hours, and fuel consumption rate from resetting of the monitoring unit. The Breaker Operation screen displays breaker operating hours, machine operating hours and operating rate from resetting the monitoring unit. The Attachment Operation screen displays total operating hours of front attachment, travel and all operation from resetting the monitoring unit.

Fuel Consumption

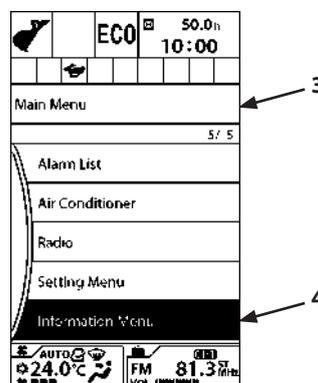
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Operation (6).



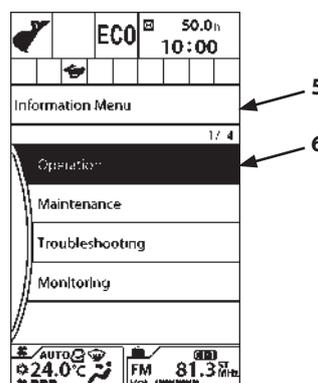
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



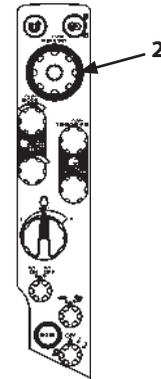
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-191EN-NH

OPERATOR'S STATION

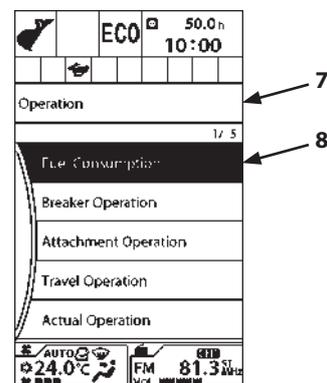
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Operation screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Fuel Consumption (8).

7. Press selector knob (2) to display Fuel Consumption screen (9).



MDAA-01-193EN

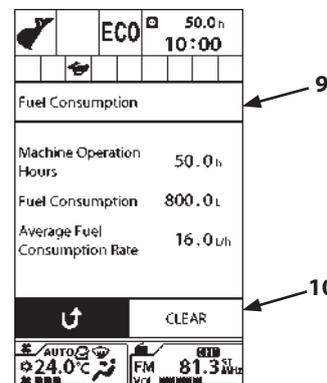
The Machine Operation Hours, Fuel consumption, and Average Fuel Consumption rate can be checked on this screen.

Pushing selector knob (2) returns to the basic screen. To clear the Fuel Consumption and Machine Operation Hours, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight CLEAR (10), and then push selector knob (2).

IMPORTANT: Total fuel consumption and fuel consumption rate depend on the operating environment and the operation method of the machine.

The values shown on the screen are just for reference.

A difference could arise between actual fuel consumption and fuel consumption as displayed on the monitor unit.

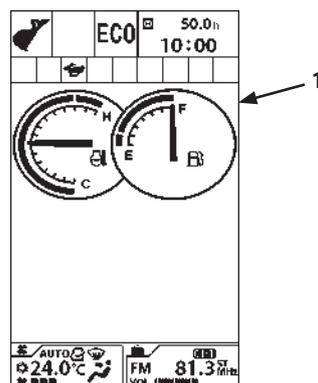


MDAA-01-194EN

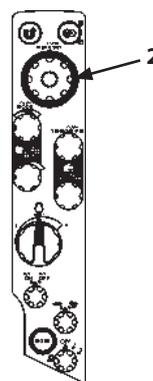
OPERATOR'S STATION

Attachment Operation

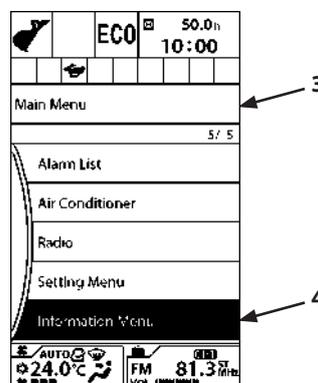
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Operation (6).



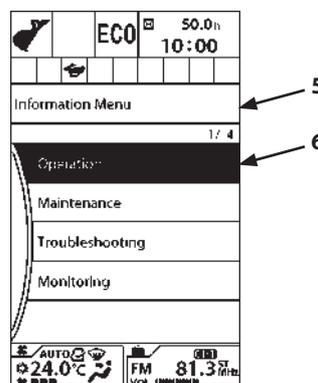
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



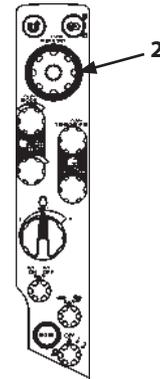
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-191EN-NH

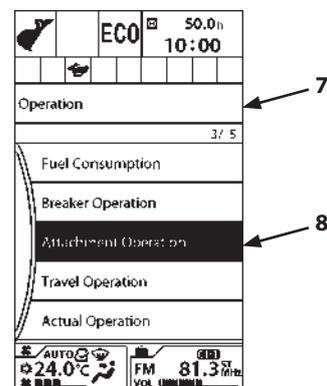
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display operation screen (7).



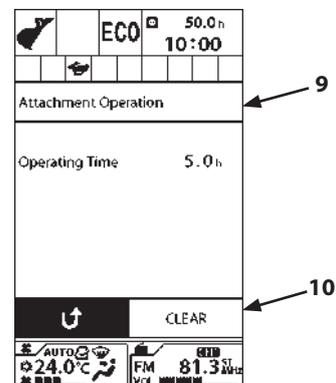
MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Attachment Operation (8).



MDAA-01-199EN

7. Press selector knob (2) to display Attachment Operation screen (9).



MDAA-01-200EN

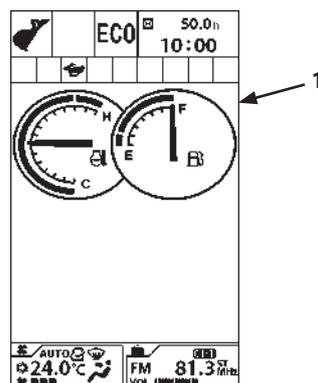
The attachment Operating Time can be checked in this screen.

Push selector knob (2) to return the previous screen. To reset the Operating Time data, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight CLEAR (10), and then push selector knob (2).

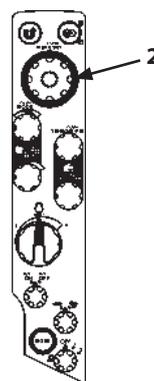
OPERATOR'S STATION

Travel Operation

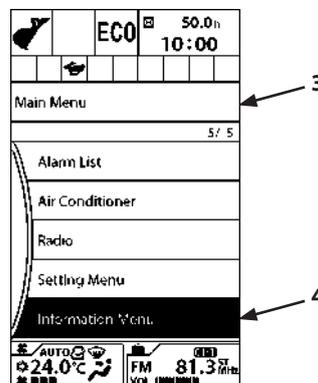
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Operation (6).



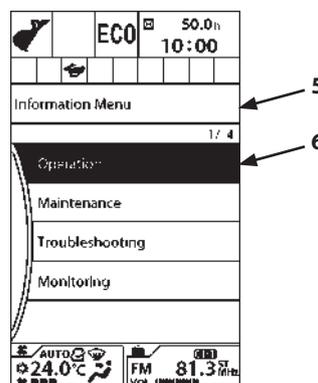
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



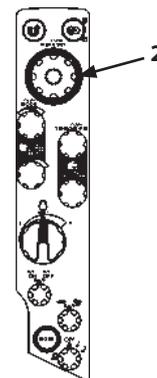
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-191EN-NH

OPERATOR'S STATION

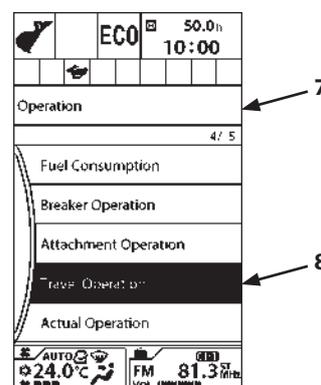
5. Press selector knob (2) to display operation screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

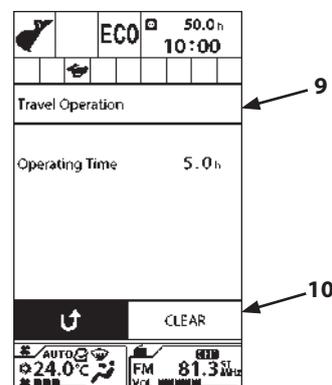
6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Travel Operation (8).

7. Press selector knob (2) to display Travel Operation screen (9).



MDAA-01-202EN

Total Travel Operation Time can be checked in this screen. Push selector knob (2) to return the previous screen. To reset the Operating Time data, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight CLEAR (10), and then push selector knob (2).

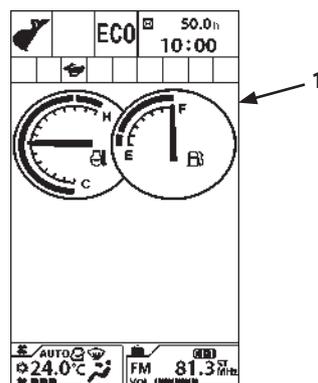


MDAA-01-203EN

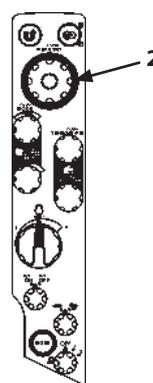
OPERATOR'S STATION

Actual operation

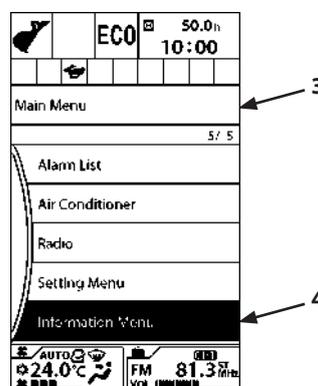
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Operation (6).



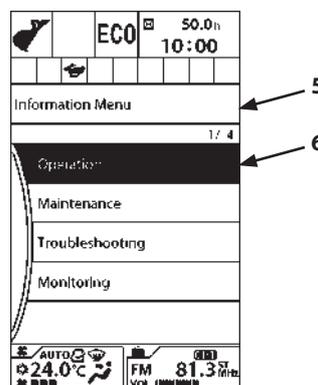
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



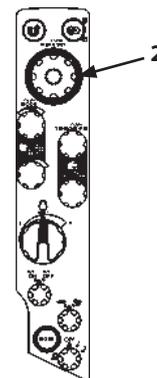
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-191EN-NH

OPERATOR'S STATION

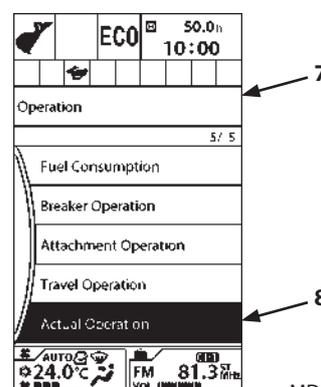
5. Press selector knob (2) to display operation screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Actual Operation (8).

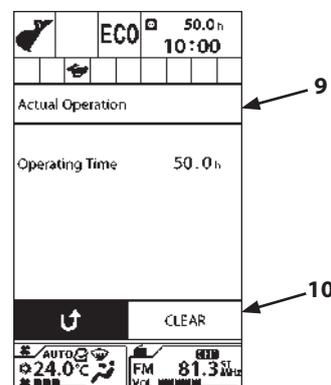
7. Press selector knob (2) to display Actual Operation screen (9).



MDAA-01-205EN

The actual Operating Time can be checked in this screen. Push selector knob (2) to return the previous screen. To reset the Operating Time data, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight CLEAR (10), and then push selector knob (2).

 **NOTE:** The Operating Time includes travel operation hours as well as all other operations.



MDAA-01-206EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Maintenance

The maintenance screen includes maintenance notice, remaining hours until the next maintenance, and maintenance intervals.

Maintenance Items

- Engine Oil
- Engine Oil Filter
- Hydraulic Oil
- Hydraulic Oil Pilot Filter
- Hydraulic Oil Full-Flow Filter
- Travel Device Oil
- Swing Drain Filter*
- Swing Bearing Grease
- Air Cleaner Filter
- Fuel Filter Change
- Air Conditioner Filter
- Muffler Filter
- Water Separator (Optional)
- User Setting 1
- User Setting 2

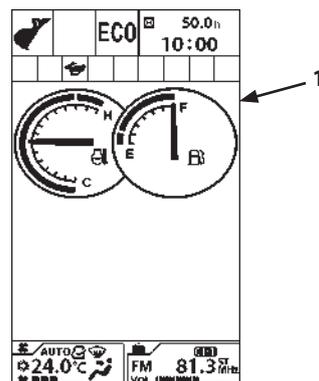
*Serial No.

ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522

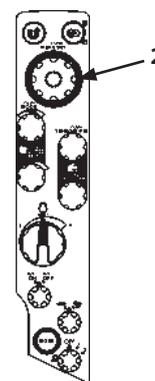
ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111

Maintenance Notice

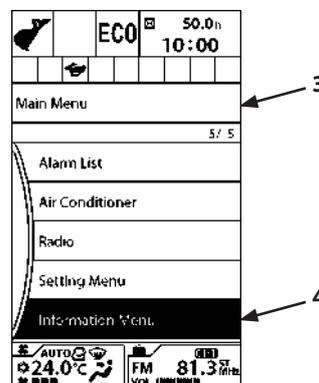
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Maintenance (6).



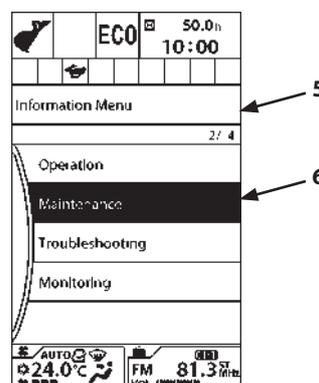
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



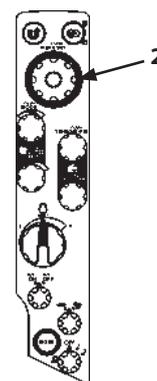
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-223EN-NH

OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Maintenance screen (7).



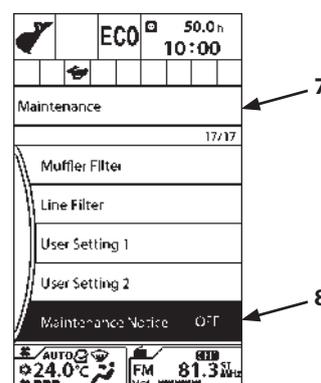
MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Maintenance Notice (8).

7. Press selector knob (2) to turn the Maintenance Notice ON. Press selector knob (2) again to turn the Maintenance Notice OFF.

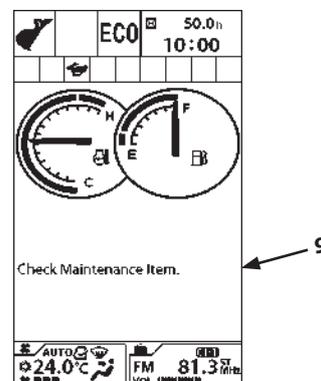
ON : When the required interval is reached, an information message is displayed on the screen.

OFF : No notification message is displayed.

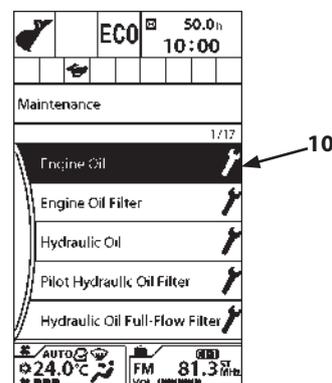


MDAA-01-208EN

NOTE: When the required interval for an item is reached, screen (9) is displayed for 10 seconds when the key is switched ON. Press Return button to delete the notification. When checking the maintenance items from the menu, an item where the set time has been reached are marked with a spanner (10).



MDAA-01-213EN

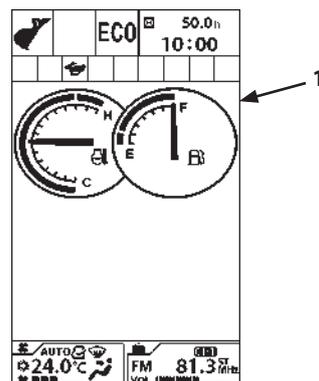


MDAA-01-214EN

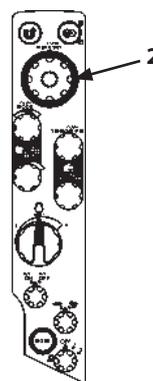
OPERATOR'S STATION

Time Remains and Maintenance Interval

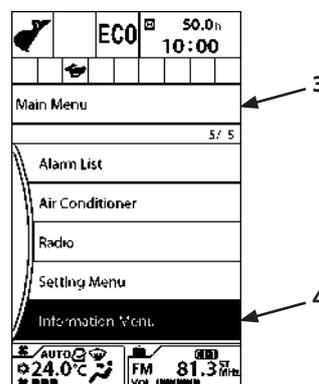
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Maintenance (6).



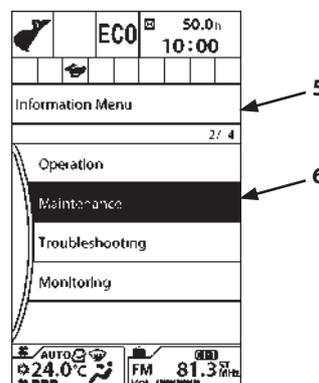
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



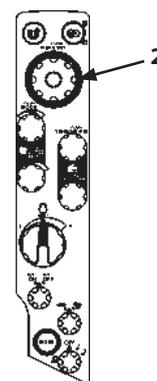
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-223EN-NH

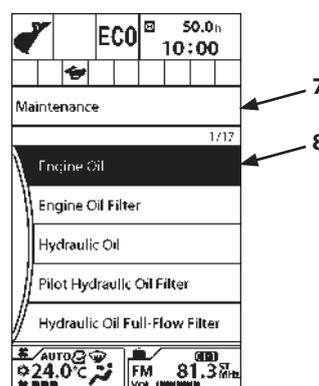
OPERATOR'S STATION

5. Press selector knob (2) to display Maintenance screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

6. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight a maintenance item to be checked (8). (In the right example, Engine Oil is selected.)
7. Press selector knob (2) to display the time remaining for the selected maintenance item.



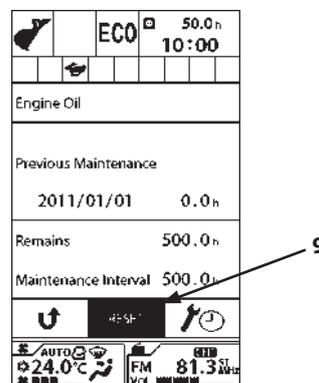
MDAA-01-336EN

Resetting Data

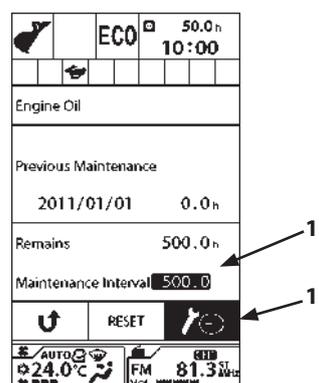
To reset the remaining time data, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight RESET (9), and then push selector knob (2). The value of the remaining hours is reset to that of the change interval. The previous change date/hour is updated with the current date and time.

Maintenance Interval Setting

To change the maintenance interval, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight  (11), and then press selector knob (2). The background color of Maintenance Interval (10) changes, then turn selector knob (2) to adjust the time, and then push selector knob (2) to enable the change.



MDAA-01-210EN



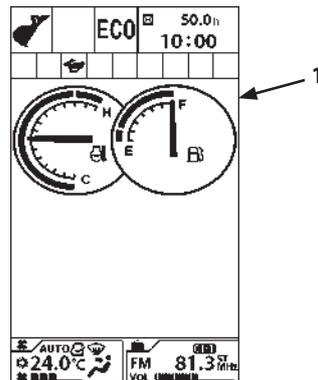
MDAA-01-212EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

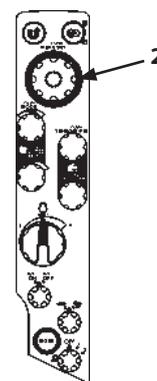
Troubleshooting

A fault code generated by the controller connected to the controller area network is displayed on this screen.

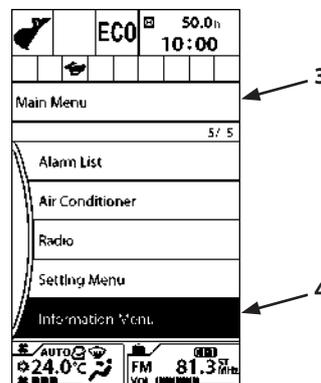
1. Press switch (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate switch (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press switch (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate switch (2) to highlight Troubleshooting (6).



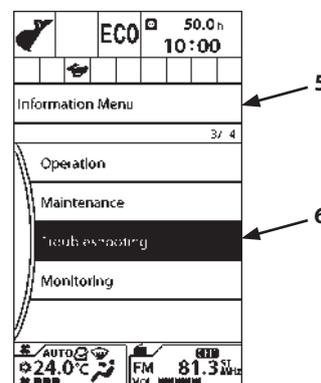
MDAA-01-001



MDAA-01-040



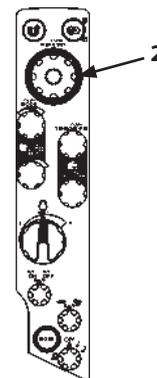
MDEC-01-190EN



MDAA-01-215EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

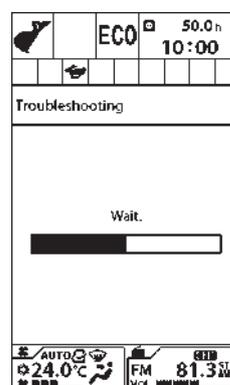
5. Press switch (2) to start troubleshooting. After displaying "Wait." message, the screen displays controller troubleshooting (7).



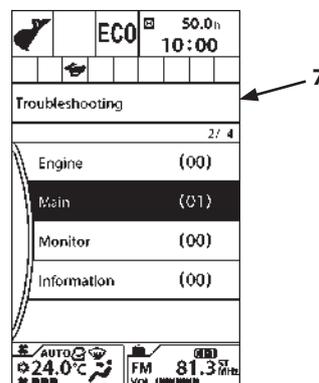
MDAA-01-040

6. Currently generated fault codes are displayed at the right side of each item. Rotate switch (2) to highlight an item displaying the failure codes.
7. Press switch (2) to display currently generated fault code (8).
Up to 20 fault codes can be displayed.

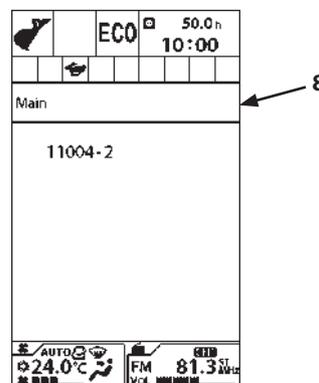
IMPORTANT: Send the troubleshooting result to your nearest HITACHI sales representative as soon as possible.



MDAA-01-216EN



MDAA-01-218EN



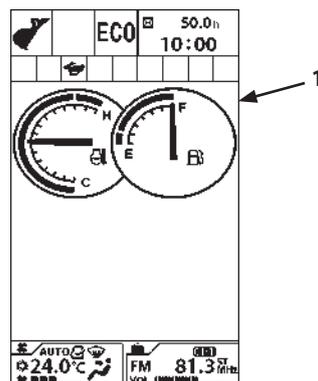
MDAA-01-219EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

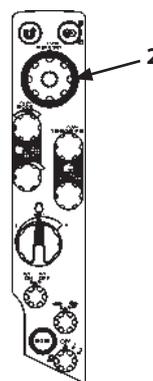
Monitoring

Engine speed and PM (particle matter) accumulation in the muffler filter can be checked in this screen.

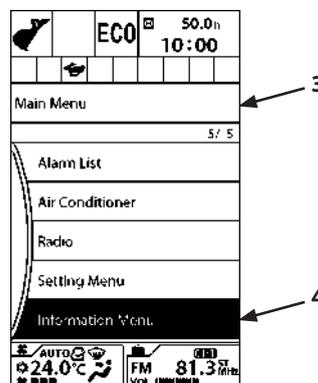
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Information Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Information Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Monitoring (6).



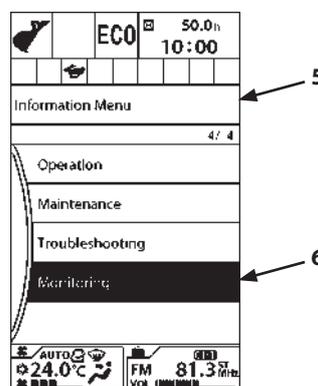
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



MDEC-01-190EN



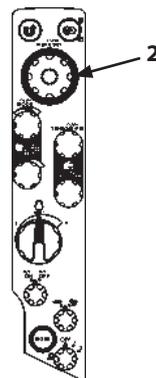
MDAA-01-220EN-NH

OPERATOR'S STATION

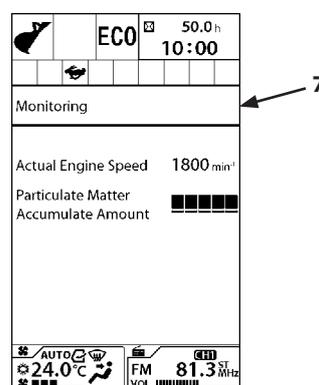
5. Press selector knob (2) to display Monitoring screen (7).

 NOTE:

- When the "PM Accumulation" bar reaches the right end, auto-regeneration takes place. However, auto-regeneration may not be performed depending on the machine condition.
- The PM Accumulation is not displayed during regeneration.



MDAA-01-040

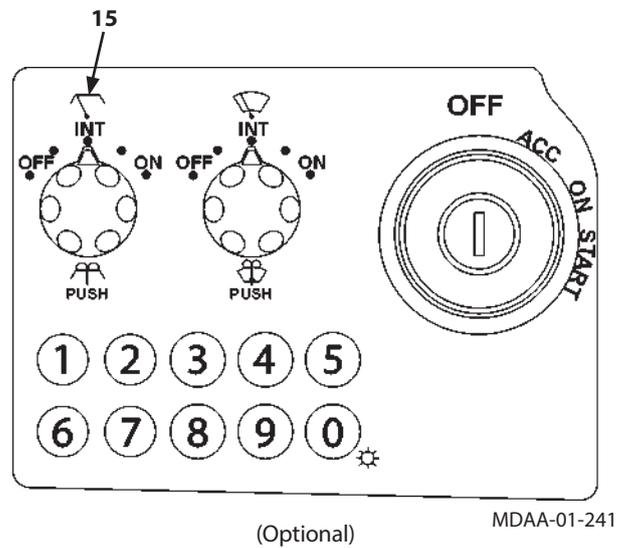
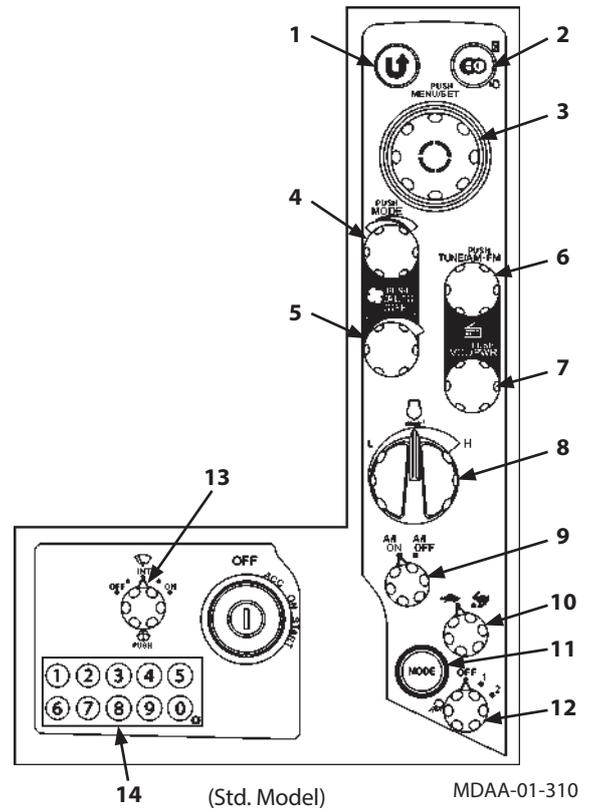


MDAA-01-221EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Switch Panel

- 1- Return to Previous Screen
- 2- Return to Basic Screen
- 3- Selector Knob
- 4- Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch
- 5- AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch
- 6- AM/FM Selector/Tuning Switch
- 7- Power Switch/Volume Control Knob
- 8- Engine Control Dial
- 9- Auto-Idle Switch
- 10- Travel Mode Switch
- 11- Power Mode Switch
- 12- Work Light Switch
- 13- Wiper/Washer Switch
- 14- Numeric Keypad
- 15- Overhead Window Wiper/Washer Switch (ZX75US-5N) (Optional)



OPERATOR'S STATION

Return to Previous Screen (Monitor)

Push this switch to return to the previous screen.



MDAA-01-010

Return to Basic Screen (Monitor)

Allows any screen to return to the basic screen.



MDAA-01-011

Select/Confirm Switch (Monitor)

Push : Push this switch while the basic screen is displayed, the menu screen opens.

Push this switch after the menu screen, the action is confirmed.

Rotate : Cursor moves.



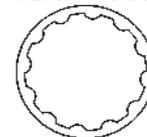
MDAA-01-012

Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch (Air Conditioner)

Push : Air vent is selected.

Rotate : Setting the temperature.

TEMP/MODE

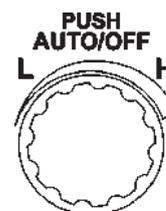


MDAA-01-013

AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch (Air Conditioner)

Push : Push this switch while the air conditioner OFF, it turns AUTO. Push this switch while operating the air conditioner, it turns OFF.

Rotate : Adjusting the blower speed.



MDAA-01-015

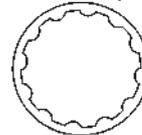
OPERATOR'S STATION

AM/FM Selector/Tuning Switch (Radio)

Push : AM/FM is selected.

Rotate : Adjusting radio frequency.

PUSH
TUNE/AM,FM



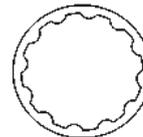
MDAA-01-014

Power Switch/Volume Control Knob (Radio)

Push : Push: Turns power ON/OFF.

Rotate : Adjusting the volume.

PUSH
VOL/PWR



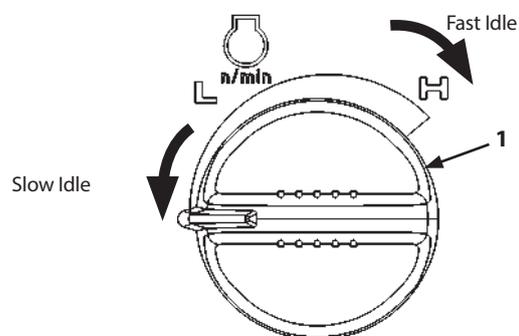
MDAA-01-016

Engine Control Dial

Use engine control dial (1) to adjust engine speed.

The fully clockwise position : Fast Idle

Counterclockwise : Slow Idle



M1P1-01-068

OPERATOR'S STATION

Auto-Idle Switch

The auto-idle switch (2) sets the engine speed control mode to either Auto-Idle ON or OFF.

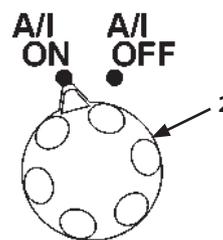
- Auto-Idle Speed

When auto-idle selector (2) is turned to ON position, the engine speed decreases to the idle after approximately 4 seconds at the state in which the work lever is turned to neutral.

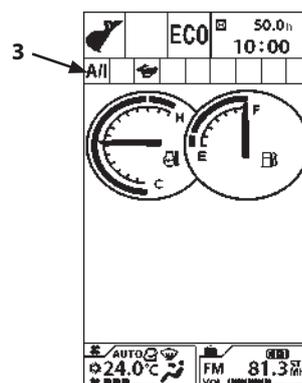
This function saves fuel consumption.

When the auto-idle mode is selected, auto-idle indicator (3) on the monitor panel lights.

 **NOTE:** Auto-idle control may not work completely until the end of the warm-up.



MDAA-01-017



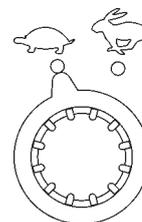
MDAA-01-314EN

Travel Mode Switch

Two travel modes, FAST and SLOW, are selected by turning the travel mode switch to either position.

 Mark (Fast Speed Mode)

 Mark (Slow Speed Mode)



MDCD-01-028

OPERATOR'S STATION

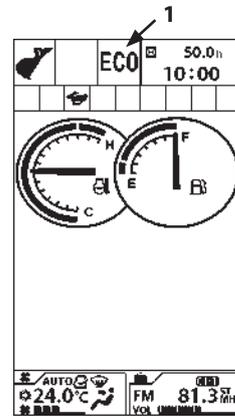
Power Mode Switch

Two engine speed modes, ECO and PWR modes are selected by operating the power mode switch.

- ECO (Economy) Mode
Operate the machine in this mode when performing normal work.
ECO is displayed on Power Mode Display (1).



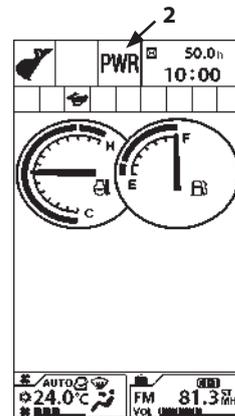
MDAA-01-274



MDAA-01-001EN

- PWR (Power) Mode
Use PWR (Power) mode when extra horsepower is needed.
PWR is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).

NOTE: ECO mode is set automatically when starting the engine. Set PWR mode if necessary.

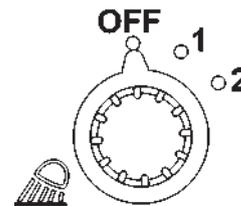


MDAA-01-353

Work Light Switch

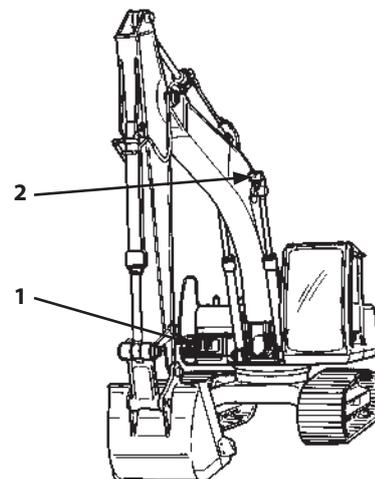
Work light switch has the following positions.

- 1 Position : Work light (1) on the base machine will light. Also, the switch panel illumination will light.
- 2 Position : Work light (2) mounted on the boom and work light (1) on the right side of the machine will light. At the same time, the switch panel illumination will light. The monitor changes to night mode.
- OFF : Work lights (1), (2), and the switch panel illumination will turn off.



MDCD-01-029

NOTE: When the key switch is turned OFF while the work light switch is in 2-position, the light turns ON for 60 seconds.



M157-01-146

OPERATOR'S STATION

Wiper/Washer Switch

The wiper and the window washer are operated using the wiper/washer switch.

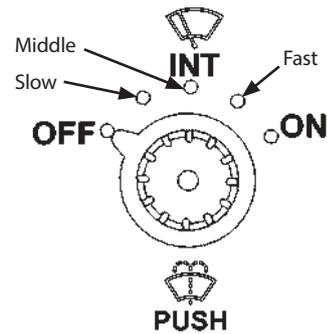
- **Wiper**
Turn the wiper/washer switch to the specified position to operate the wiper.

OFF	The wiper stops and is retracted.
INT Position	The wiper operates intermittently at the interval selected by the switch position as described below. INT has three positions of operating speed as shown below.
INT (Slow):	The wiper operates at 8-second interval.
INT (Mid):	The wiper operates at 6-second interval.
INT (Fast):	The wiper operates at 3-second interval.
ON	The wiper operates continuously.

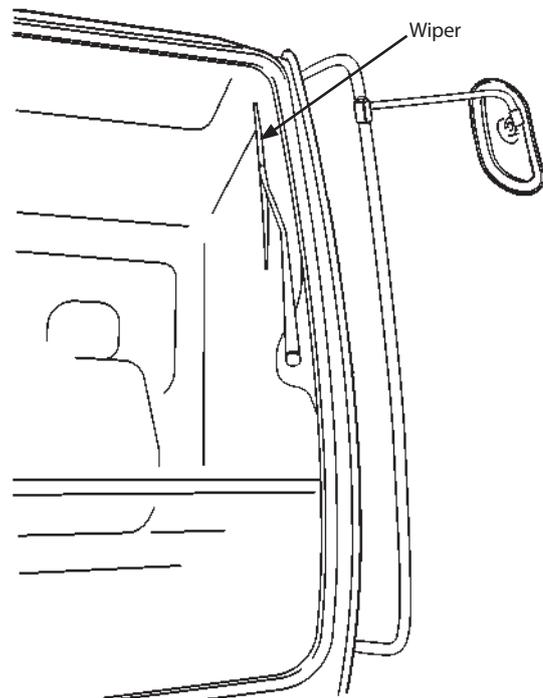
 **NOTE:** When the front window (upper) is opened, the wiper and washer will not operate. If the front window is opened while operating the wiper, the wiper stops.

- **Washer**
Press and hold the wiper/washer switch to squirt washer fluid onto the front window. When the wiper/washer switch is pressed for more than 2 seconds, the wiper operates until the switch is released. When the wiper/washer switch is released, the wiper automatically retracts.
While operating the wiper in the INT mode, when the wiper/washer switch is pressed, the wiper operation mode is changed to the continuous operation mode.

 **NOTE:** The wiper motor protection control stops wiper operation to prevent it from becoming immovable when it operates long period of time under high load. When the wiper stops, do not change the arm position and wait several minutes until the wiper starts operation again.



MBFM-01-005

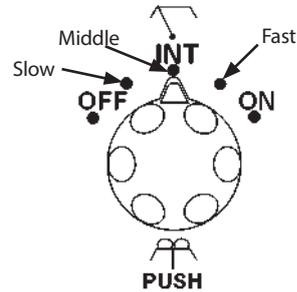


M1U1-01-018

OPERATOR'S STATION

Overhead Window Wiper and Washer Switch (ZX75US-5N) (Optional)

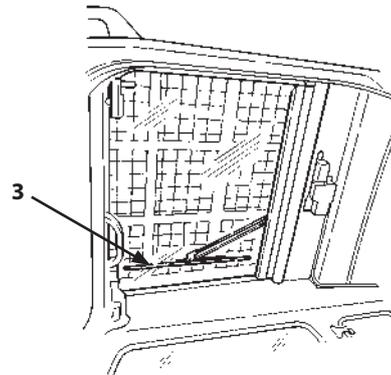
- **Wiper**
Turn the wiper/washer switch to the specified position to operate wiper (3).



MDAA-01-275

- OFF The wiper stops and is retracted.
- INT Position The wiper operates intermittently at the interval selected by the switch position as described below. INT has three positions of operating speed as shown below.
 - INT (Slow): The wiper operates at 8-second interval.
 - INT (Mid): The wiper operates at 6-second interval.
 - INT (Fast): The wiper operates at 3-second interval.
- ON The wiper operates continuously.

- **Washer**
Press and hold the wiper/washer switch to squirt washer fluid onto the front window. When the wiper/washer switch is pressed for more than 2 seconds, the wiper operates until the switch is released. When the wiper/washer switch is released, the wiper automatically retracts. While operating the wiper in the INT mode, when the wiper/washer switch is pressed, the wiper operation mode is changed to the continuous operation mode.



M157-01-081

Numeric Keypad

Used for inputting password.
Press the numeric keypad of 1 to 8 while the radio is ON, the radio station will switch to memorized channel of 1 to 8. When the light is turned ON, the monitor changes to night mode screen. Even if the light is turned ON, you can activate the daytime screen by pushing "0" on the numeric keypad.



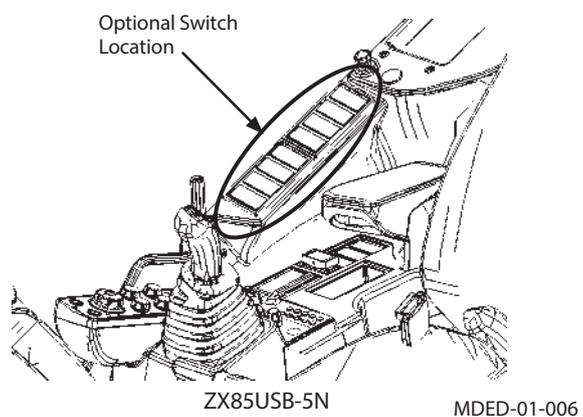
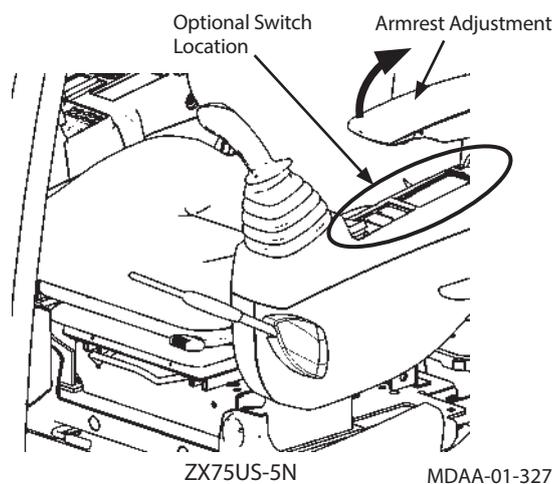
MDAA-01-018

OPERATOR'S STATION

Switch Panel (for Optional Equipment)

 **NOTE:** The optional switch locations differ depending on the kinds of optional devices are equipped. Before using the switches, make sure what kinds of optional devices are equipped. Raise the armrest when operating the optional switch. All available optional devices are shown below.

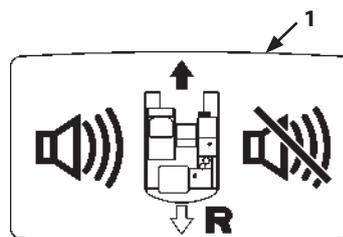
- Travel Alarm Deactivation
- Swing Alarm Deactivation
- Rear Work Light
- Overload Alarm
- Seat Heat
- Rotating Lamp
- Electrical Control



OPERATOR'S STATION

Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional)

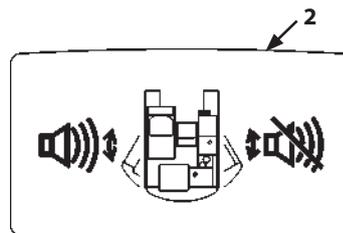
The travel alarm buzzer sounds during travel operation. When pushing the  mark of travel alarm deactivation switch (1), the travel alarm buzzer function is deactivated.



M1U1-01-035

Swing Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional)

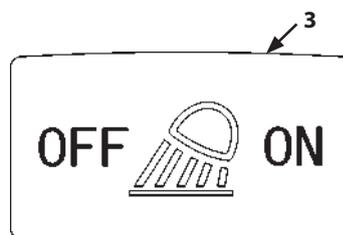
The swing alarm system sounds the buzzer and turns the beacon light ON during swing operation. When pushing the  mark of swing alarm deactivation switch (2), the swing alarm buzzer function is deactivated.



M1U1-01-036

Rear Work Light Switch (Optional)

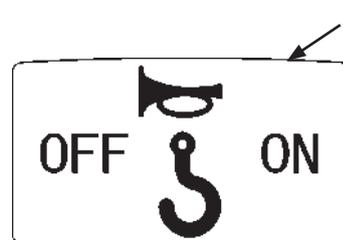
When rear work light switch (3) is turned ON, the rear work light at the rear of the cab roof comes ON.



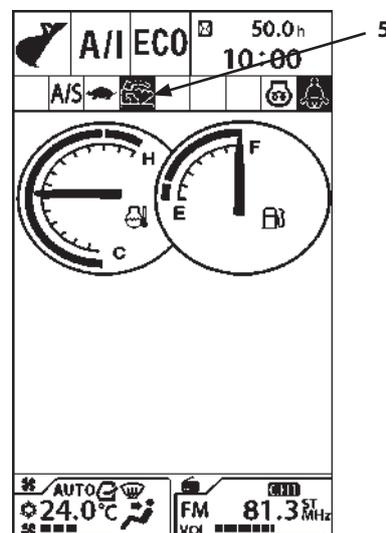
M1P1-01-070

Overload Alarm Switch (Optional)

During lifting load work with overload alarm switch (4) ON, if overloading is detected, the buzzer sounds and overload alarm indicator (5) on the multi-monitor comes ON. Turn overload alarm switch (4) OFF to deactivate the overload alarm system function.



M1U1-01-010



MDED-01-505

OPERATOR'S STATION

Seat Heater Switch

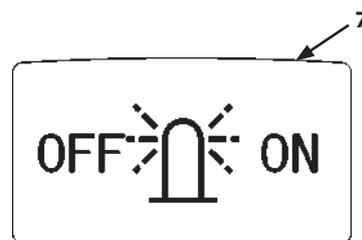
When seat heater switch (6) is turned ON, the seat surface is heated so that the seat section becomes warm. When the temperature of the seat section is raised to the specified temperature, heating is automatically stopped.



M1U1-01-011

Rotating Lamp Switch (Optional)

When rotating lamp switch (7) is turned ON, the rotating lamp provided at the rear on the cab roof comes ON.



M1U1-01-012

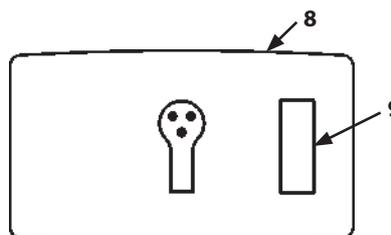
Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional)

The specification of the electrical control main switch (8) (optional) varies depending on the year of manufacturing. When using the AUX function lever, check whether the year of manufacturing is fitted with type A or type B.

Type A

Year of Manufacturing: To Oct. 2017

Turn the pilot control shut-off lever to the UNLOCK position. The electrical control (attachment switch) system becomes operable by pushing electrical control main switch (8). It is turned OFF by pressing electrical control main switch (8) again. It is also turned OFF when the key switch is turned OFF or the pilot control shut-off lever is turned to LOCK position.



MDAA-01-311

Type B

Year of Manufacturing: From Nov. 2017

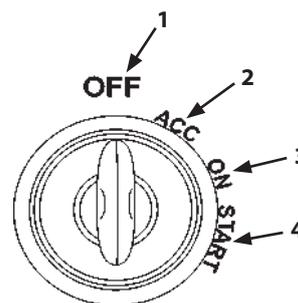
By placing the pilot control shut-off lever in the lock release position, and pressing electrical control main switch (8), indicator (9) lights, allowing use of the electrical control (attachment switch). Pressing electrical control main switch (8) one more time, turns indicator (9) to the OFF position. Also by turning the key switch to the OFF position changes the indicator OFF.

CAUTION: When there is no need to use the electrical control (attachment switch) system, turn OFF electrical control main switch (8) to avoid misoperation.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Key Switch

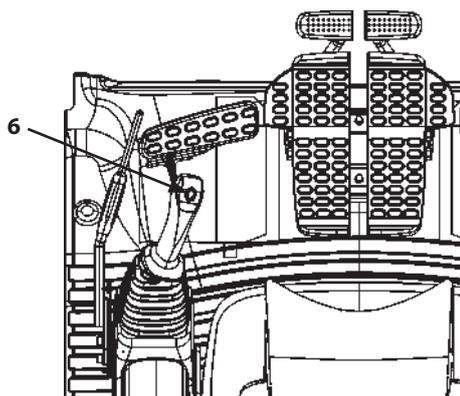
- 1- OFF (Engine Off)
- 2- ACC (Horn, Radio etc.)
- 3- ON (Engine ON)
- 4- START (Engine Start)



MDCD-01-030

Horn Switch

Horn switch (6) is provided on the top of the left control lever. The horn continuously sounds as long as the switch is pressed.



MDAA-01-293

OPERATOR'S STATION

Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional)

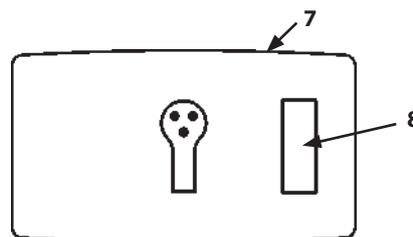
The specification of the electrical control main switch (7) (optional) varies depending on the year of manufacturing. When using the AUX function lever, check whether the year of manufacturing is fitted with type A or type B.

Type A

Year of Manufacturing: To Oct. 2017

- Attachment Switch (Assist Operation) (Main Operation)
This switch (7) is mainly used for optional devices and attachments with a rotary or a tilt function. The attachment becomes operable when electrical control main switch (7) is pushed and main switch indicator (8) is lit.

IMPORTANT: The attachment switch is operable only when indicator (8) of electrical control main switch (7) is lit. Indicator (8) will not light unless the pilot control shut-off lever is in the UNLOCK position. Indicator (8) turns OFF and the attachment switch becomes inoperable when the pilot control shut-off lever is placed in the LOCK position while indicator (8) is lit. To operate the attachment switch, place the pilot control shut-off lever in the UNLOCK position, and then push electrical control main switch (7) to turn indicator (8) light ON.



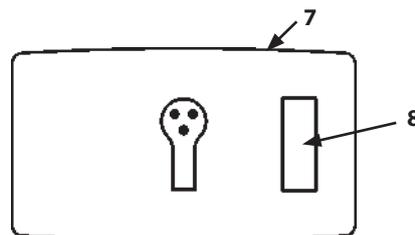
MDAA-01-311

OPERATOR'S STATION

Type B

Year of Manufacturing: From Nov. 2017

- Attachment Switch (Assist Operation) (Main Operation)
This switch (7) is mainly used for optional devices and attachments with a rotary or a tilt function. By placing the pilot control shut-off lever in the lock release position, and pressing electrical control main switch (7), indicator (8) will light. When indicator (8) is lit, operation of the attachment is possible.

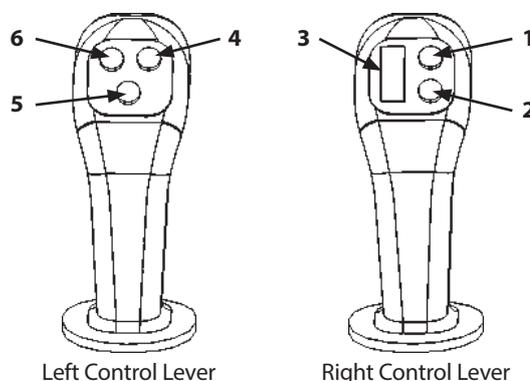


MDAA-01-311

IMPORTANT: The attachment switch is operable only when indicator (8) of electrical control main switch (7) is lit. Indicator (8) will not light unless the pilot control shut-off lever is in the UNLOCK position.

AUX Function Lever 1

1. Auxiliary
2. Auxiliary
3. Attachment Switch (Main Operation)
4. Auxiliary
5. Horn Switch
6. Auxiliary



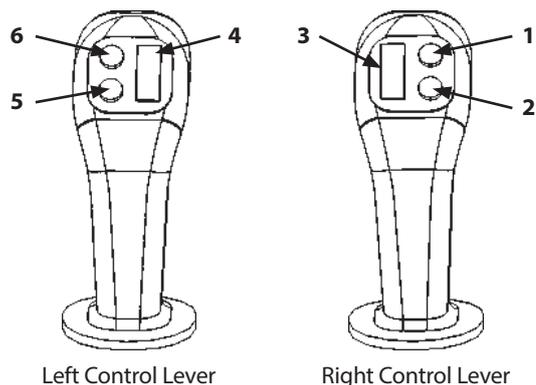
MDAA-01-337

MCGB-01-030

OPERATOR'S STATION

AUX Function Lever 2

1. Auxiliary
2. Power Boost Switch
3. Attachment Switch (Assist Operation)
4. Attachment Switch (Main Operation)
5. Horn Switch
6. Auxiliary



Left Control Lever

Right Control Lever

MCGB-01-029

MCGB-01-030

CAUTION:

- **These switches are provided for operating attachments of this machine. HITACHI does not bear responsibility on any human injury, malfunction and/or physical loss or damage incurred by unauthorized application or use of unauthorized attachments, optional parts or modified switch, which will void Hitachi Warranty Policy.**
- **Before using this switch, thoroughly read the operation manual of the corresponding attachment and check the operation of each function in a safe area.**
- **Before operating an attachment with this switch, confirm the requirements on safe and proper mounting and operation of the attachment with its manufacturer or distributor and observe them.**

OPERATOR'S STATION

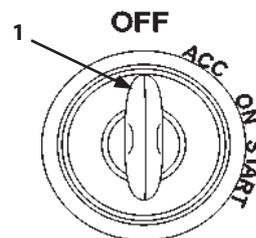
Cigar Lighter

Using Cigar Lighter

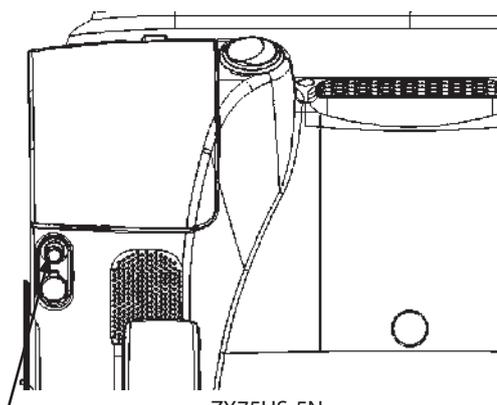
IMPORTANT: In case the cigar lighter does not pop out automatically 30 seconds after pushing the cigar lighter in, pull out the cigar lighter manually. Then, consult the your nearest Hitachi dealer.

1. Turn key switch (1) to the ACC or ON position.
2. Press and release the lighter knob.
3. The cigar lighter knob will return to the original position when the lighter becomes usable. Pull the cigar lighter out to use.
4. After using the cigar lighter, insert the cigar lighter into the panel until the knob is seated in the original position.

CAUTION: Do not power anything other than a genuine Hitachi Construction Machinery electrical device from the cigar lighter port.



MDCD-01-030

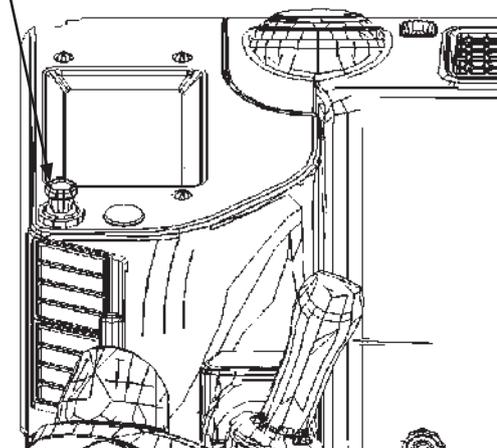


Cigar Lighter

ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-006

Cigar Lighter



ZX85USB-5N

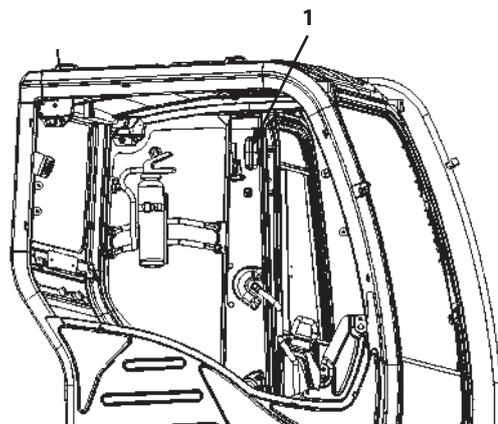
MDED-01-008

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Light Switch

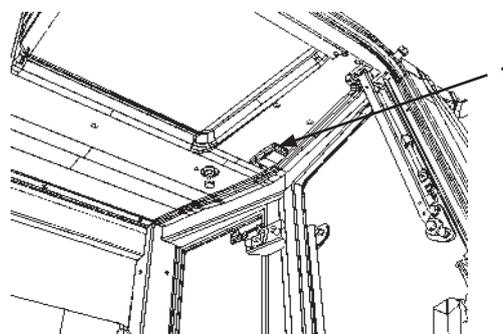
Push switch (1) on the cab light to turn the cab light ON.

- ON : The cab light comes and stays ON.
(The light does not turn ON while the key OFF.)
- OFF : The light goes OFF.
- DOOR : The room lamp lights on in conjunction with the
(ZX75US- opening of cab door.
5N) The lamp automatically goes off after 30 seconds.
(The light turns ON while the key switch is OFF.)



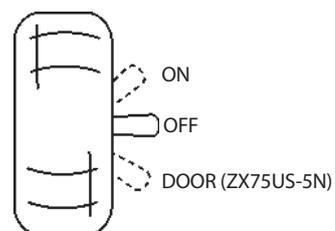
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-007



ZX85USB-5N

M1P1-01-033



MCGB-01-023

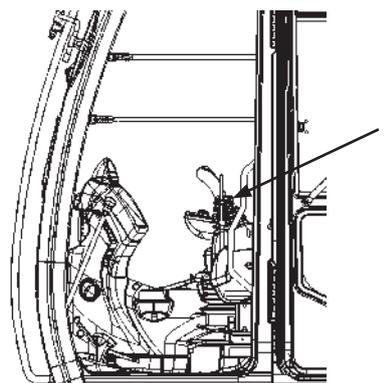
OPERATOR'S STATION

Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever

Pilot control shut-off lever (1) functions to prevent the machine from being mistakenly operated when the operator is getting on or off the machine.

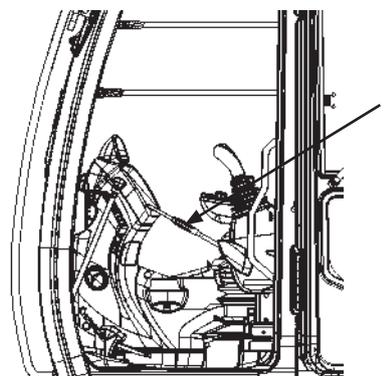
WARNING:

- Always pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) into the full LOCK position. Unless front control lever lock (1) is fully moved to the LOCK position, the front control lever is not locked, possibly creating a hazardous situation.
- When leaving the machine, always stop the engine. Then, pull the pilot control shut-off lever up to the LOCK position.
- Always pull the pilot control lever up to the LOCK position before transporting the machine and leaving the machine.
- Confirm that the pilot control shut-off lever is in the LOCK position before starting the engine. The engine will not start in other than the LOCK position.



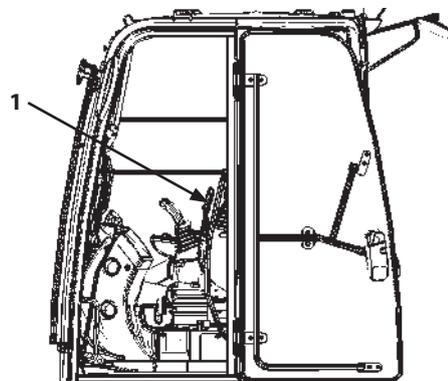
LOCK position
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-008



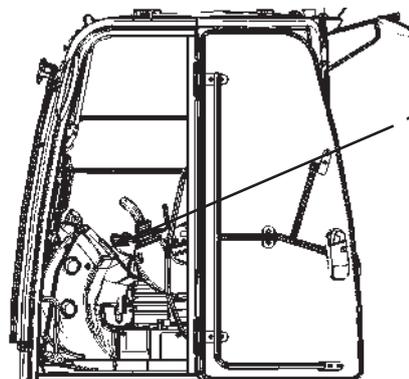
UNLOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-009



LOCK position
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-010



UNLOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

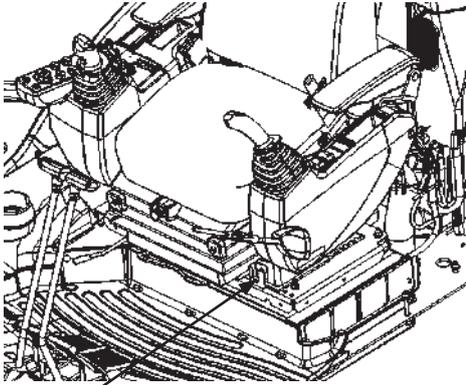
MDED-01-011

OPERATOR'S STATION

Engine Stop Switch

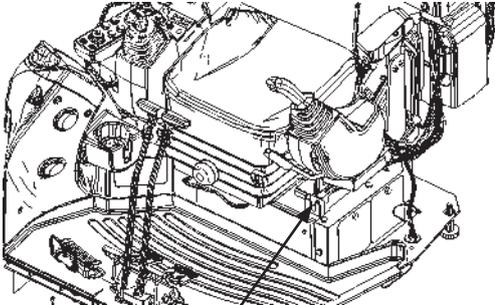
In case the engine does not stop even if the key switch is turned OFF due to failure of the machine, move switch (2) located at the front-left side of the seat stand downward to stop the engine.

After operating switch (2), be sure to return the switch back to the upward position.



2
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-004



2
ZX85USB-5N

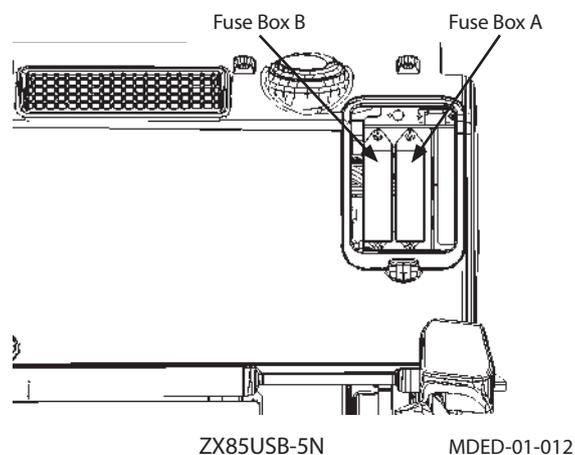
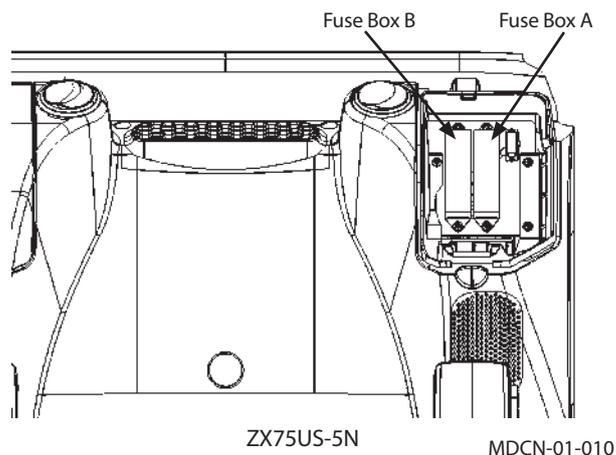
MDED-01-005

OPERATOR'S STATION

Fuse Box

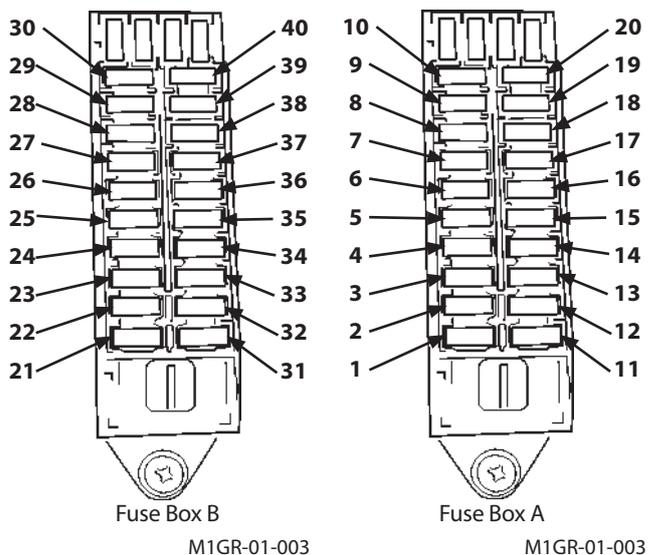
Fuse Box A

10- CONTROLLER 5 A	20- OPTION3 (BATT) 5 A
9- BACKUP 10 A	19- HORN 10 A
8- SPARE	18- IDLE STOP 5 A
7- START 5 A	17- FUEL PUMP 5 A
6- OPTION2 (ALT) 20 A	16- POWER ON 5 A
5- OPTION1 (ALT) 5 A	15- AUX. 10 A
4- SOLENOID 20 A	14- MONITOR 5 A
3- HEATER 20 A	13- LIGHTER 10 A
2- WIPER 10 A	12- RADIO 5 A
1- LAMP 20 A	11- DC-DC 20 A



Fuse Box B

30- SPARE	40- SPARE
29- SPARE	39- SPARE
28- SPARE	38- SPARE
27- AUX.3 5 A	37- SPARE
26- QUICK HITCH 5 A	36- SPARE
25- IMOBI. 5 A	35- SPARE
24- 12V UNIT 10 A	34- AUX.2 10 A
23- CAB LAMP REAR 10 A	33- WARNING LAMP 10 A
22- CAB LAMP FRONT 10 A	32- CAB LAMP FRONT+2 10 A
21- SEAT HEATER 10 A	31- SEAT COMPR. 10 A



OPERATOR'S STATION

Auto Air Conditioner

Features

- Full Auto-Temperature Control:
Automatically controls the cab temperature to maintain the temperature set by the temperature control switch regardless of outside air temperature and insolation.
- Max. Cooling and Heating:
Maximum cooling or heating can be obtained by rotating the temperature control switch clockwise (32 °C (89.6 °F)) or counterclockwise (18 °C (64.4 °F)) respectively.
- Preheating:
During preheating the cab in winter with the foot vent selected, the air volume is reduced to Low until the coolant temperature rises to prevent cool air from entering the cab.

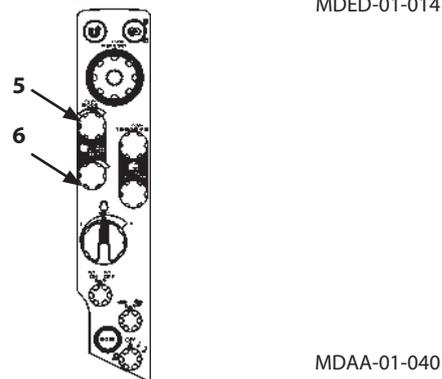
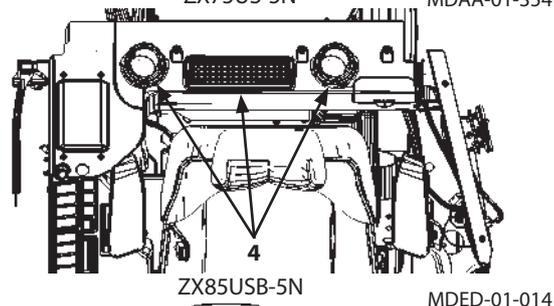
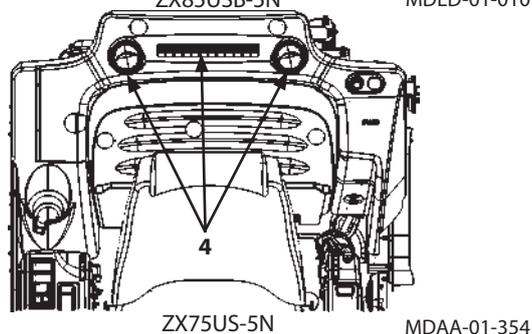
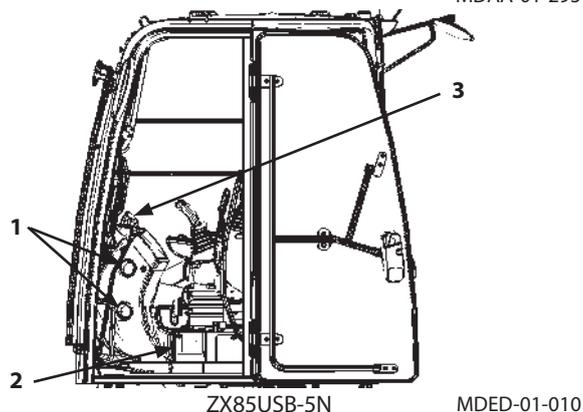
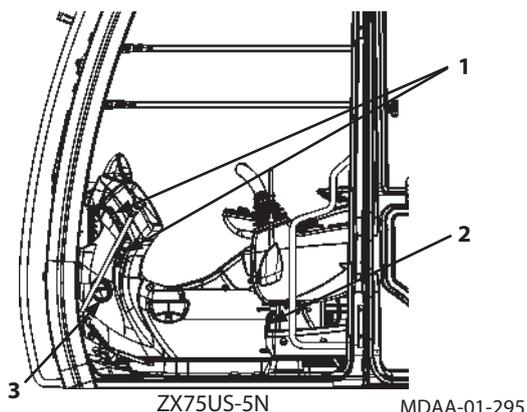
 **NOTE:** *Even in the summer season, the high idle speed may be higher than the normal speed due to the above control.*

OPERATOR'S STATION

Components Name

- 1- Front Vent
- 2- Foot Vent
- 3- Defroster Vent
- 4- Rear Vent
- 5- Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch
- 6- AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch

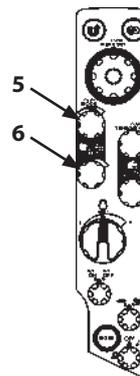
 **NOTE:** Air flow direction can be changed by controlling the louvers at all air vents except for foot vents (2). In addition, the louvers on front vent (1) and defroster vent (3) can be completely opened and closed by hand.



OPERATOR'S STATION

Controller Part Name and Function

- Mode Switch (5)
Selects the air vent. The selected air vent is indicated on monitor (7).
-  Air flows out of front vent and the defroster vents.
(Including defroster vent)
-  Air flows out of the front, rear and the defroster vents.
(Including defroster vent)
-  Air flows out of the front, rear, foot and the defroster vents.
(Including defroster vent)
-  Foot Vent Mode

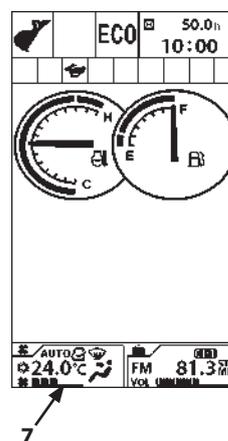


MDAA-01-040

Each time mode switch (5) is pressed, the vent location can be changed in four stages as illustrated below.



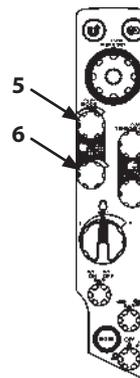
- When switch (6) is selected in AUTO:
The air vent location is automatically selected.
- Temperature Control Switch (5):
Sets temperature in the cab.
Temperature in the cab can be set from 18.0 to 32.0 °C (64.4 to 89.6 °F) by rotating temperature control switch (5).
Temperature can be set by 0.5 °C (32.9 °F) increments.
The set-temperature is displayed on monitor (7).



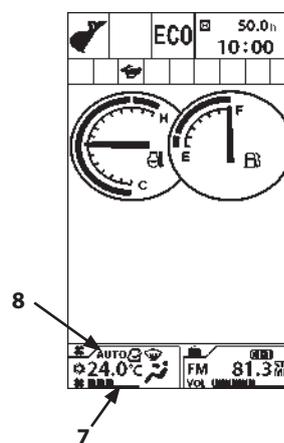
MDAA-01-001EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

- Blower Switch (6)
 - When the AUTO indicator (8) is ON, the blower speed is automatically controlled.
 - When AUTO indicator (8) is OFF, the blower speed is controlled in 6 steps. Rotate blower switch (6) clockwise to increase blower speed. Rotate blower switch (6) counterclockwise to decrease blower speed. The monitor (7) indicates the corresponding blower fan speed.
- AUTO/OFF Switch (6)
 - Push AUTO/OFF Switch (6) while the air conditioner OFF, it turns AUTO. Press AUTO/OFF switch (6) while operating the air conditioner, it stops operation.



MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-001EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Heater Operation

1. AUTO switch (6):

According to signals sent from various sensors, the air conditioner amplifier automatically selects the air flow-in vents, air suction ports, and air flow-in temperature at the vent, and controls the blower speed.

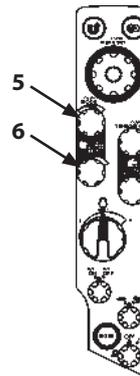
2. Temperature Control Switch (5):

Adjust temperature control switch (5) so that "25.0" is indicated on the monitor. Control air temperature inside cab using this switch as necessary.

3. As Necessary:

- Operate Mode switch (5) to manually select the air vent.
- Operate blower switch (6) to manually control the blower speed.
- Operate the air conditioner setting screen on the monitor to maintain the air vent in the fresh air mode or circulation mode.

Usually the cab heater turns the dehumidifier function OFF, however, it turns ON by switching the A/C to ON at the air conditioner setting screen.



MDAA-01-040

OPERATOR'S STATION

Cooling Operation

1. AUTO switch (6):

Press AUTO switch (6) to set the air conditioner AUTO mode. According to signals sent from various sensors, the air conditioner amplifier automatically selects the air flow-in vents, air suction ports, and air flow-in temperature at the vent, and controls the blower speed.

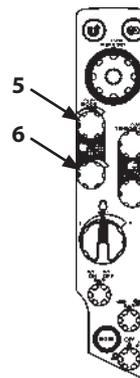
2. Temperature Control Switch (5):

Adjust temperature control switch (5) so that "25.0" is indicated on the monitor. Control air temperature inside the cab using this switch as necessary.

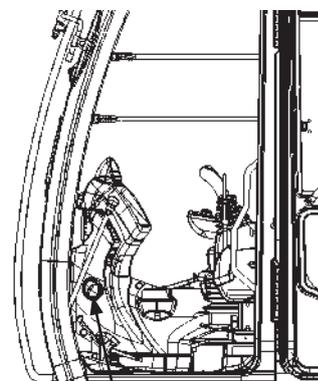
3. As Necessary:

- Operate Mode switch (5) to manually select the air vent.
- Operate blower switch (6) to manually control the blower speed.
- Operate the air conditioner setting screen on the monitor to maintain the air vent in the fresh air mode or circulation mode.

In case the front window (lower) becomes clouded, manually close the defroster vent (3). (It can be closed manually.)

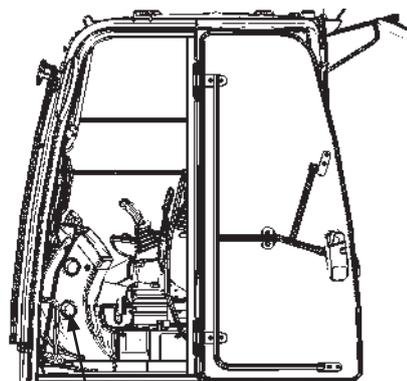


MDAA-01-040



3
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-008



3
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-010

OPERATOR'S STATION

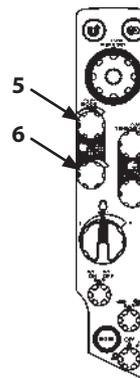
Defroster Operation

1. Press AUTO Switch (6) to blow out temperature-controlled air. During cold weather season when starting the engine, the engine coolant temperature and air temperature in the cab are low. The Heater Start-Operation Control System controls the blow rate to the minimum (LO) in order to restricts cool air from flowing into the cab.
2. Adjust temperature control switch (5) so that "25.0" is indicated on the monitor. Set the fresh air circulation mode from air conditioner setting screen on the monitor.
3. Select the front vents  or the front and rear vents  using mode switch (5).

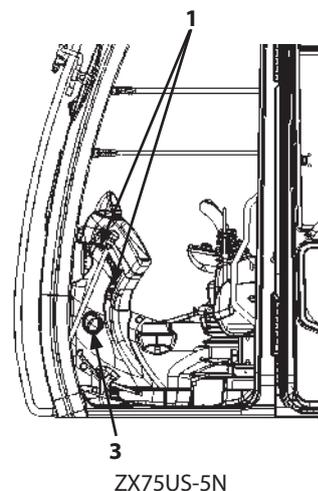
Control air flow direction by adjusting the louvers at the front vent (1) and the defroster vent (3).

Control air temperature in the cab by using temperature control switch (5).

If the windowpanes become clouded in rainy season or wanted to eliminate moisture, turn A/C to ON at the air conditioner screen on the monitor.



MCAA-01-040



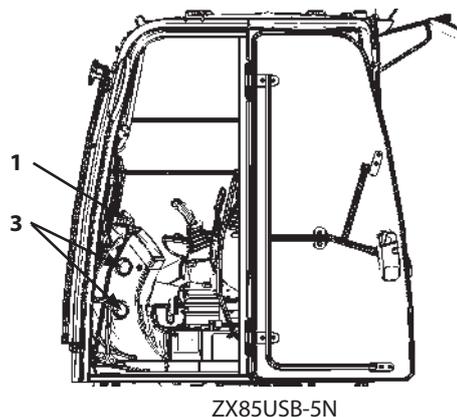
MDCN-01-008

Cool Head/Warm Foot Operation

Cool and warm air is simultaneously supplied to the head vents and foot vents respectively.

1. Press blower switch (6) to adjust the blower speed.
2. Press MODE switch (5) to display the front and rear vent mark  on the monitor.
Turn A/C ON from the air conditioner setting screen on the monitor.

Control air temperature inside the cab by using temperature control switch (5).



MDED-01-010

OPERATOR'S STATION

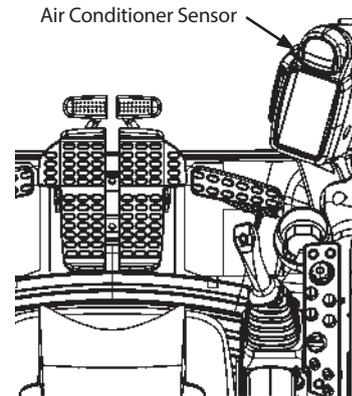
Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage

For Rapid Cooling

Temperature in the cab may rise over 80 °C (176 °F) when the machine is exposed to sun light in the summer. In this case, ventilate air in the cab first by opening the windows for rapid cooling.

After starting the engine, press AUTO switch (6). Set temperature to "18.0" on the monitor by using temperature control switch (5). Turn circulation mode ON from air conditioner setting screen on the monitor.

Close the window when the cab cools down to the ambient temperature.



MDAA-01-292

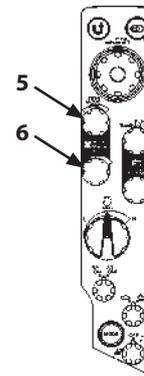
When Windows Become Clouded

If the insides of the windows become clouded during rainy weather or on humid days, operate the air conditioner to aid in keeping the windows clear.

When the atmosphere is very damp, and if the air conditioner has run excessively, the outside of the windows may become clouded. If this happens, turn off the air conditioner to adjust the temperature in the cab.

Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance

To protect each part of the compressor from a lack of lubricant, operate the air conditioner at least once a month for several minutes with the engine running at a slow speed during off-season.



MDCD-01-026

IMPORTANT:

- **Do not suddenly increase the engine speed. Failure to do so may damage the compressor.**
- **Refer to the item "Check Air Conditioner Filter" in the Maintenance Section for maintenance of the air conditioner filters.**
- **Always clean the auto air conditioner sensor for effective air conditioner performance. Avoid placing any obstructions around the sensor.**

OPERATOR'S STATION

AM/FM Radio Operation

CAUTION: Refrain from listening to the radio in the cab while operating the machine

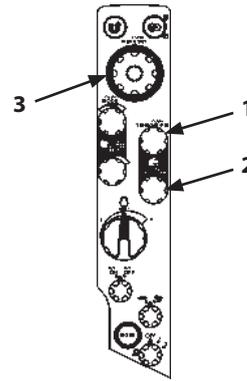
Controls on the Radio

1- AM/FM Selector/Tuning Switch

"FM" and "AM" are switched over alternately each time the switch is pressed. Rotate the tuning knob clockwise to increase frequency, counterclockwise to decrease frequency.

2- Power Switch/Volume Control Knob

Push: Turns power ON/OFF. Turn the volume control knob clockwise to increase the sound volume. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease the sound volume.



MDAA-01-040

Tuning Procedure

• Manual Tuning Procedure

Rotate tuning switch (1) until the desired station is reached.

• Automatic Search Function

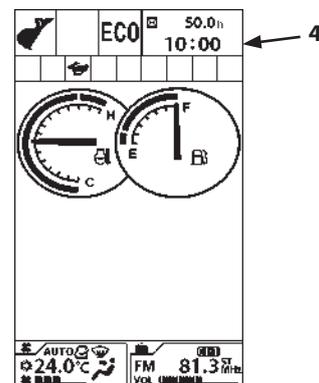
1. Press selector knob (3) while displaying basic screen (4) to display main menu screen (5).

2. Rotate selector knob (3) to highlight Radio (6).

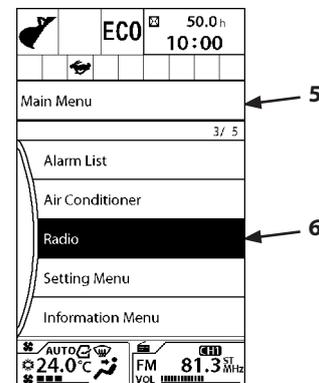
Press selector knob (3) to display the radio screen.

Rotate selector knob (3) to highlight seek (8). Push selector knob (3) to go to the next higher frequency station. Press selector knob (3).

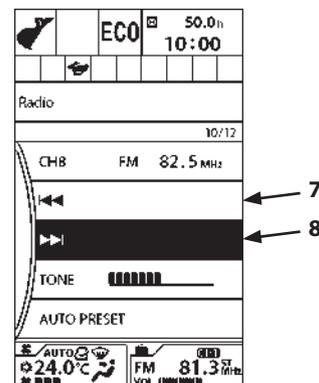
Rotate selector knob (3) to highlight seek (7). Push selector knob (3) to go to the next lower frequency station. Press selector knob (3).



MDAA-01-001EN



MDEC-01-092EN



MDAA-01-095EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

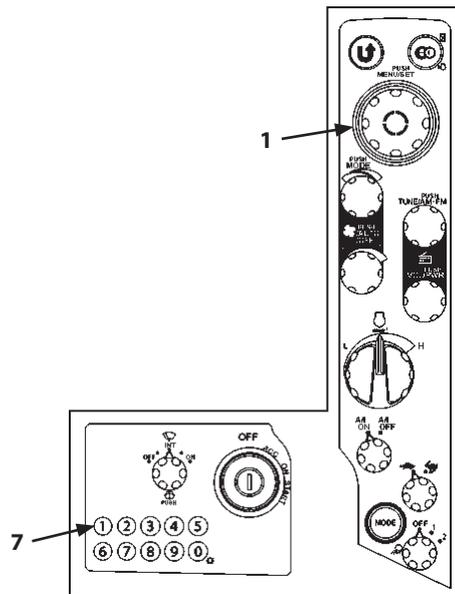
Station Presetting Procedure

Setting from Monitor

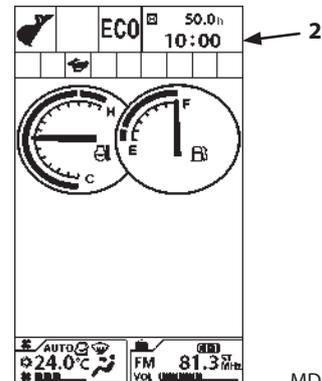
1. Select the desired station. Refer to the "Tuning Procedure" in the previous section.
2. Press selector knob (1) while displaying basic screen (2) to display main menu screen (3). Rotate selector knob (1) to highlight radio (4).
3. Press selector knob (1) to display Radio screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (1) to highlight a CH to preset a station. (CH1 to CH8)
5. Press and hold selector knob (1) for more than 1 second. The current station is preset to the selected CH.

Setting from numeric keypad

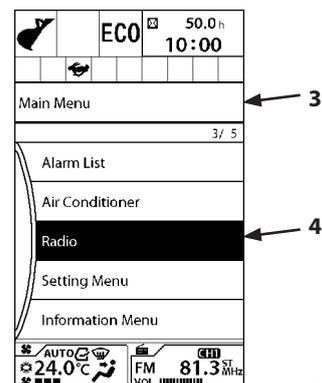
1. Select the desired station. Refer to the "Tuning Procedure" in the previous section.
2. Press and hold one numeric keypad (1 to 8) for more than 1 second. The current station is preset to the selected number of CH.



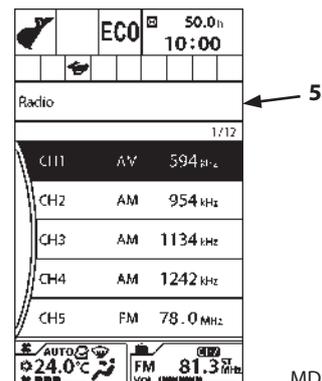
MDAA-01-310



MDAA-01-001EN



MDEC-01-092EN



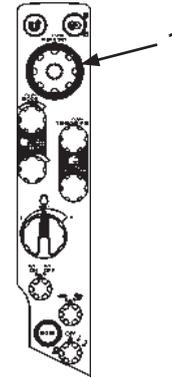
MDAA-01-093EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

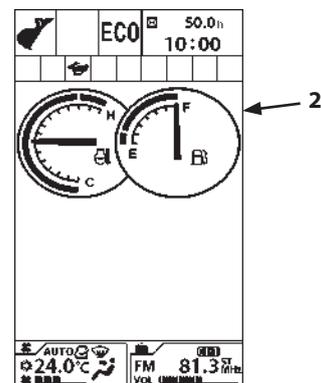
Station Auto-Presetting Procedure

Receivable stations can be automatically sought and preset to the memory.

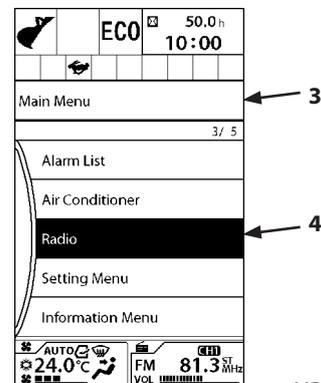
1. Press selector knob (1) while displaying basic screen (2) to display main menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (1) to highlight Radio (4).
Press selector knob (1) to display Radio screen (5).
3. Rotate selector knob (1) to highlight AUTO PRESET (6).
4. Press selector knob (1) to start AUTO PRESET process.
The AUTO PRESET scans reception frequency, allocate sought stations to CH1 to CH8 from sensitive station. AM will be preset to CH1 to 4, FM will be preset to CH5 to 8.
Operating the radio during scan stops the AUTO PRESET.



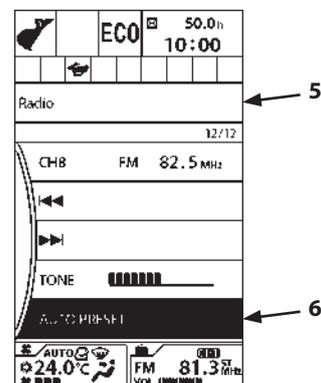
MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-001EN



MDEC-01-092EN

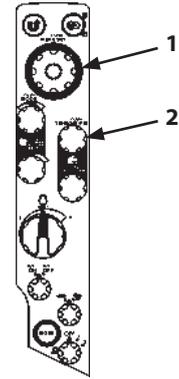


MDAA-01-099EN

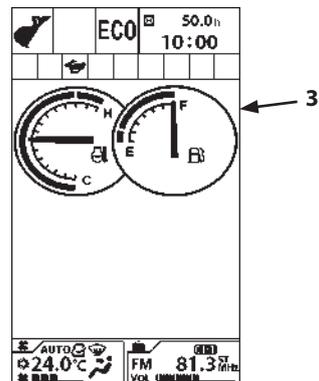
OPERATOR'S STATION

TONE Control

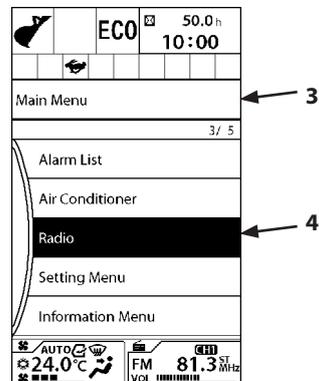
1. Press selector knob (1) while displaying basic screen (3) to display main menu screen (4).
2. Rotate selector knob (1) to highlight Radio (5).
Press selector knob (1) to display Radio screen (6).
3. Rotate selector knob (1) to highlight TONE (7).
4. Press selector knob (1) to adjust TONE control. Rotate selector knob (1) clockwise to boost treble. Rotate selector knob (1) counterclockwise to boost bass. Press selector knob (1) to enable the changes.



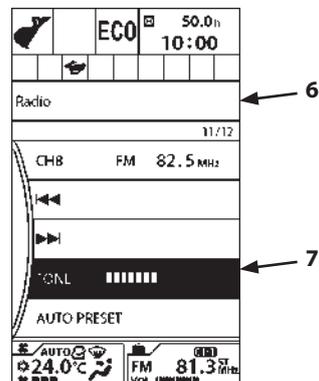
MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-001EN



MDEC-01-092EN



MDAA-01-096EN

OPERATOR'S STATION

Audio Input (Optional)

IMPORTANT: This function is available only to a machine equipped with an audio input (optional). Use this function with proper sound volume.

Audio Input Selection

Attach the audio input (optional) device and push AM/FM Switch/Tuning Switch (1) to display AM and FM screen as well as AUX input screen (3).

Connecting audio device

By removing AUX IN Cap (4), the audio input terminal appears.

Connect your audio device to the audio input terminal of the machine with your audio cable.

IMPORTANT: Use $\Phi 3.5$ mm stereo plug for the connection of audio input terminal.

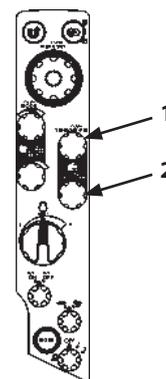
IMPORTANT: Put AUX IN cap (4) when the audio input is not in use.

Volume Control of audio device

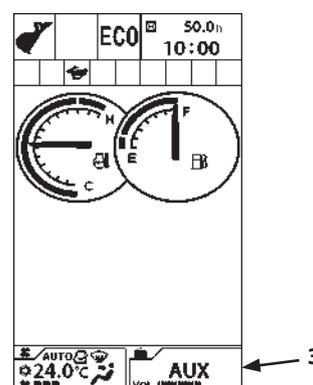
Turn the volume down to the minimum beforehand, and then turn volume control knob (2) clockwise to adjust the volume.

IMPORTANT: If volume control knob (2) has been set to the maximum, you will hear an overwhelming sound; so set the volume control knob to the minimum first and then turn it clockwise to increase it. Adjust the volume knob on the audio device if the sound is too low even volume control knob (2) is set at top.

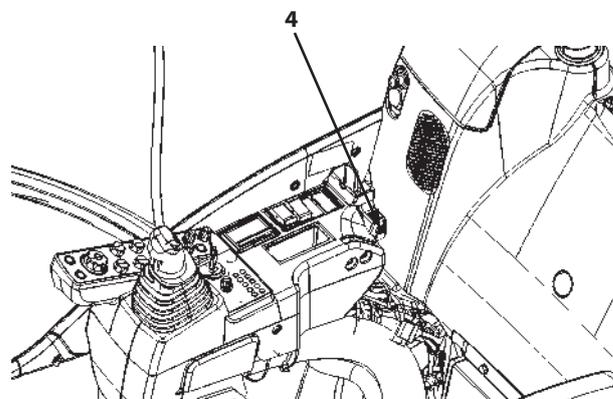
IMPORTANT: Operate your audio device to play or stop the sound.



MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-340



MDCN-01-011

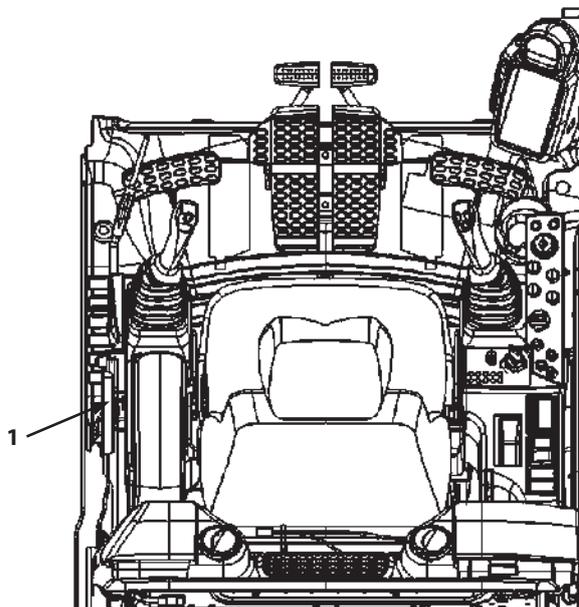
OPERATOR'S STATION

Cab Door Release Lever

CAUTION:

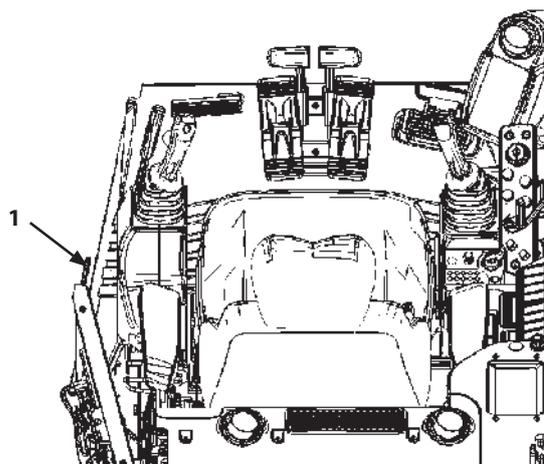
- Open the cab door all the way until it securely locks in the latch on the side of the cab.
- Do not unlock the cab door when the machine is parked on a slope or while the wind is blowing hard. The cab door may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.
- When opening or closing the cab door, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the cab door.

To unlock the door, push down on lever (1).



ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-002



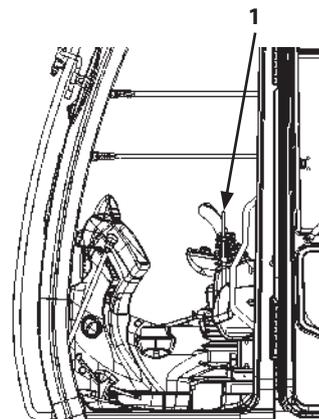
MDED-01-003

OPERATOR'S STATION

Opening/Closing and Removing Cab Inside Window

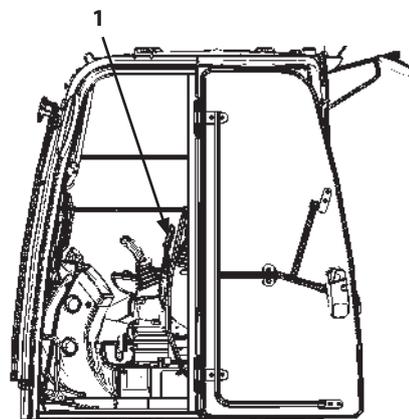
⚠ WARNING:

- Open, close or remove the upper-front cab window, overhead window, cab door window or lower-front window only after lowering the front attachment to the ground and pulling up pilot control shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever or pedal is touched with a part of the body by mistake, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.
- Park the machine on a level and solid ground and stop the engine before opening and closing the upper front window.
- To open the upper front window, hold the window by hands, hold it until the window is locked.
- When closing the window, it may accidentally fall by its own weight. Hold the window by hands until it is completely closed. Since the window stops before it completely closes, do not operate the machine at the position with the window being stopped. The window is not locked at that position, having the possibility of suddenly dropping.



ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-008



ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-010

OPERATOR'S STATION

Opening Upper Front Window

ZX75US-5N

Opening Upper Front Window

1. Press lock release lever (1) at the upper center to release the upper front window lock.
2. Holding lock release lever (1) at the upper center and lower handle (4) on the upper front window as illustrated, pull the upper front window up and back until auto locks (3) at both sides of the upper front window securely catch into the strikers on the ceiling.
3. After confirming that the window securely catches into auto locks (3), slide lock pin (2) into the left bracket boss hole to lock the window in position.

 **NOTE:** When the upper front window is opened, the wiper and washer are inoperable.

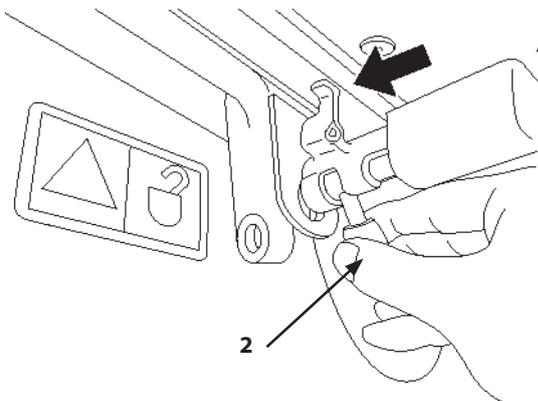
CAUTION:

- **Slowly close the upper front window so as not to catch your fingers.**
- **Always secure lock pin (2) in the lock position after the upper front window is opened.**
- **Always pull pilot control shut-off lever (5) to the LOCK position before opening or closing the upper front window.**

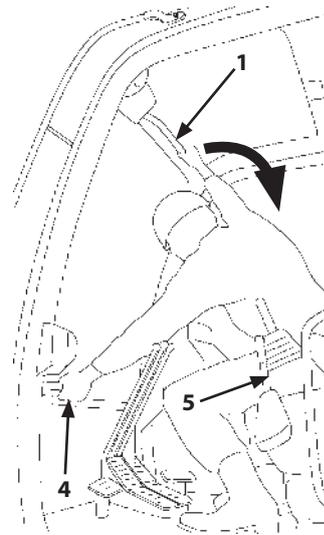
4. To close the upper front window, hold lock release lever (1) at the upper center and lower handle (4) on the upper front window as illustrated, and follow the steps 1 to 3 in the reverse order. The window stops before it completely closes, so close the front window by pushing release lever (1) upward.

Push lock release lever (1) downward to release auto lock (3).

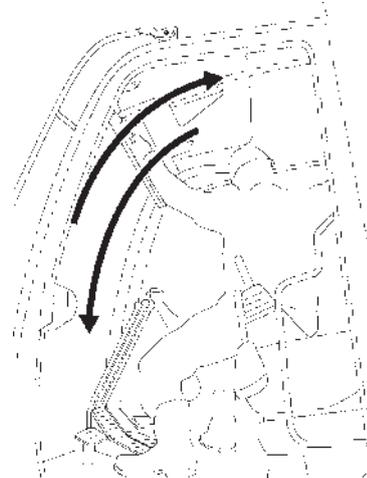
 **NOTE:** Unless the upper front window is securely closed, the wiper and washer will not operate.



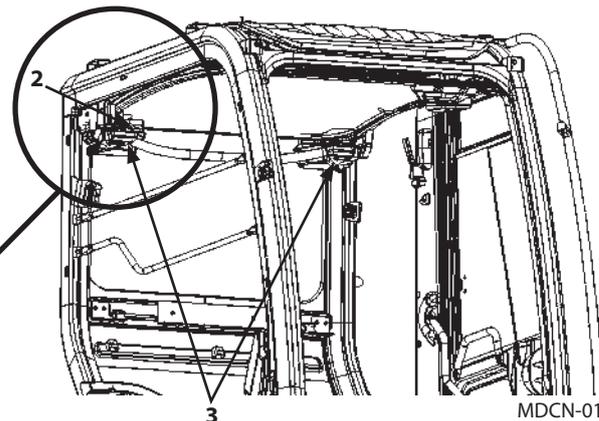
MDAA-01-360



MDAA-01-358



MDAA-01-359



MDCN-01-014

OPERATOR'S STATION

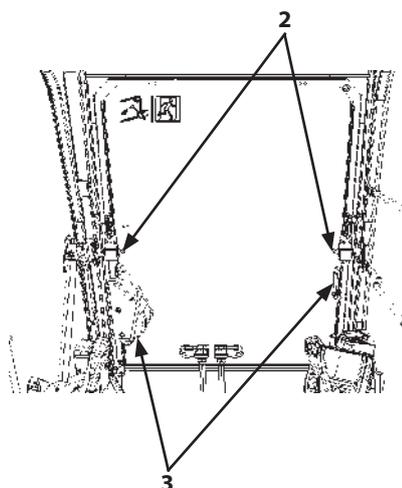
ZX85USB-5N

1. Press lock release levers (2) at the both right and left to release the upper front window lock.
2. Hold the right and left handles (3) on the upper front window and move the upper front window up and back until lock release levers (2) are locked again.
3. After confirming that lock release levers (2) are securely locked, set lever (4) of the cab rear upper side under the front window.

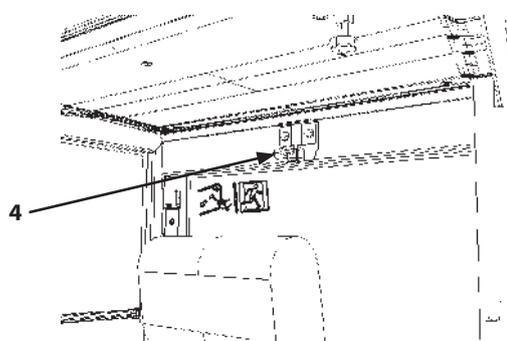
 **NOTE:** When the upper front window is opened, the wiper is operable.

CAUTION:

- When opening the upper front window, slide and set lever (4) under the front window anytime.
 - Slowly close the upper front window so that not to catch your fingers.
4. To close the upper front window, by following the steps 1 to 3 in the reverse order. Hold right and left handles (3) on the upper front window and move the upper front window downward until lock release levers (2) are securely locked.

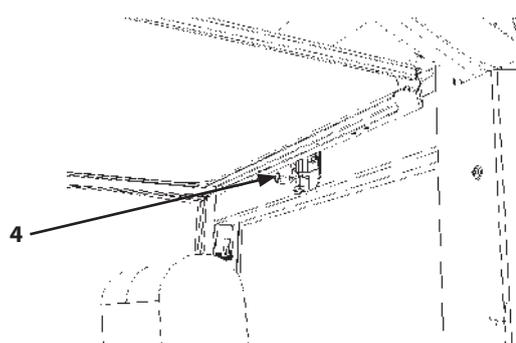


M1P1-01-037



UNLOCK Position

M1P1-01-039



LOCK Position

M1P1-01-038

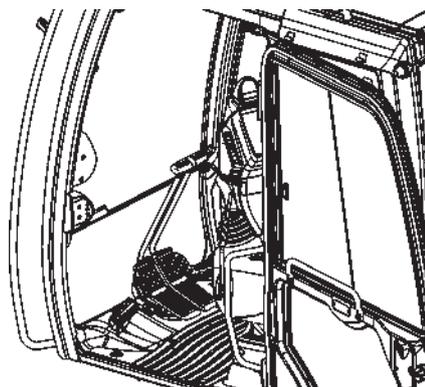
OPERATOR'S STATION

Removing and Storing Lower Front Window

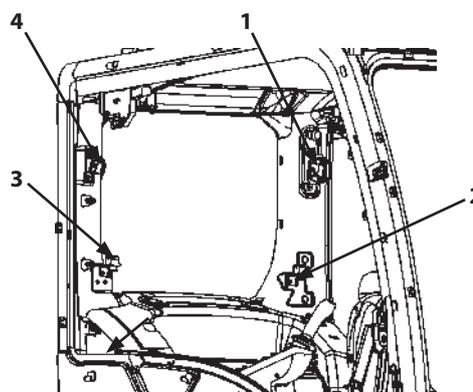
CAUTION: Take care not to pinch your fingers when handling the lower front window.

ZX75US-5N

1. Open the upper front window beforehand when removing the lower front window.
2. While pulling the lower front window inward, raise it to remove.
3. Store the removed windowpane in the storing position. After inserting the windowpane into rubbers (2 and 3), slide it sideways securely into rubber (4). Then, push fastener (1) to lock.



MDAA-01-298

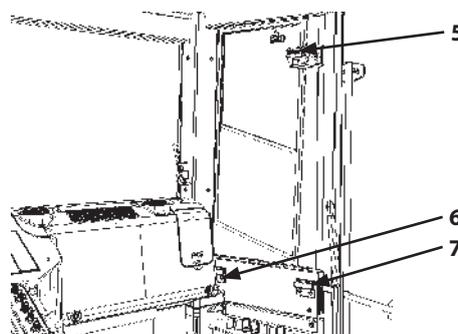


ZX75US-5N

MDAA-01-299

ZX85USB-5N

1. Open the upper front window beforehand when removing the lower front window.
2. Move the lower front window upward and remove it.
3. Store the removed windowpane in the storing position at the rear. After inserting the windowpane into brackets (6 and 7), push it onto (5) and secure it.



ZX85USB-5N

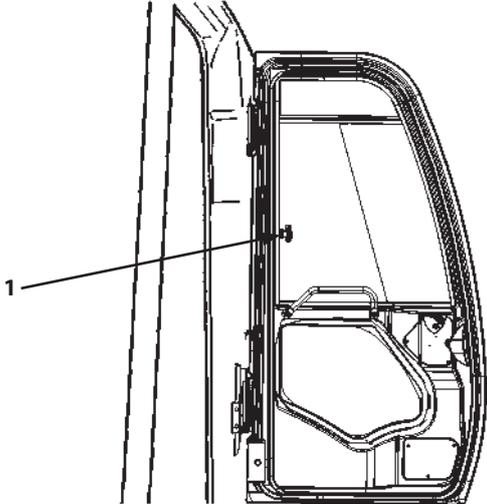
M1P1-01-040

OPERATOR'S STATION

Opening Side Windows

ZX75US-5N

Hold handle (1) and slide rear pane to open the side window.

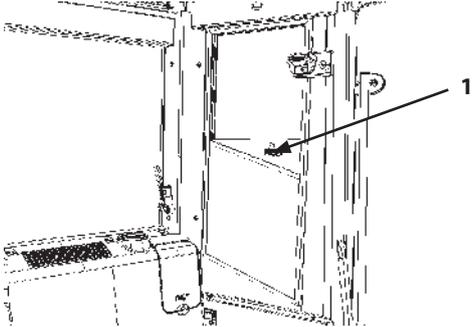


ZX75US-5N

M1U4-01-007

ZX85USB-5N

Open or close the rear left window by holding handle (1) and sliding the windowpane of the rear left window upward and downward.



ZX85USB-5N

M1P1-01-041

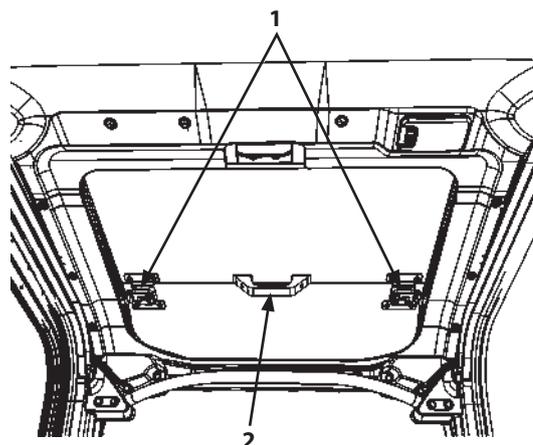
OPERATOR'S STATION

Opening/Closing Overhead Window (Clear Hatch: If Equipped)

Move lock levers (1) toward center of window. Hold handle (2) and lift window until it rises upright. With the window positioned upright, it will be secured in position by dampers (3).

Hold handle (2) and pull window down until "click" sound is heard from left and right locks (1).

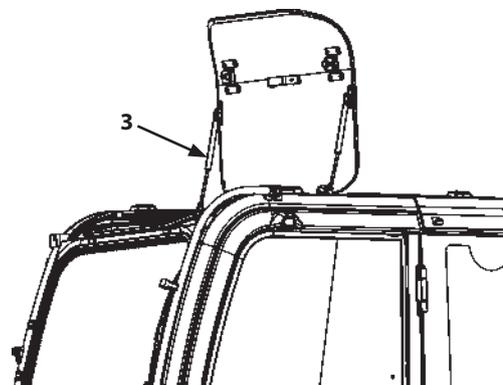
Note that the overhead window can be used as an emergency exit.



MDAA-01-302

IMPORTANT:

- **Replace the clear hatch with a new one every 5 years even if undamaged. In case it was remarkably damaged or has received severe shock loads, replace it even if it has been not in use for 5 years.**
- **When cleaning the clear hatch, use a neutral detergent. If acidic or alkaline detergent is used, the clear hatch may become discolored or crack.**
- **Keep organic solvent away from the clear hatch. Failure to do so may cause the clear hatch to become discolored or crack.**



MDAA-01-303

OPERATOR'S STATION

Emergency Exit

ZX75US-5N

Escape from the cab in emergency in the following methods:

CAUTION: The danger of downfall is always present when escaping from the cab in emergency, possibly resulting in serious personal injury. Escape from the cab as safely as possible, depending on the posture of machine and the outside situation.

1. Open the cab door. Escape through the door.
2. If the cab door should be difficult to open or use, open the upper front window. Escape through the window.

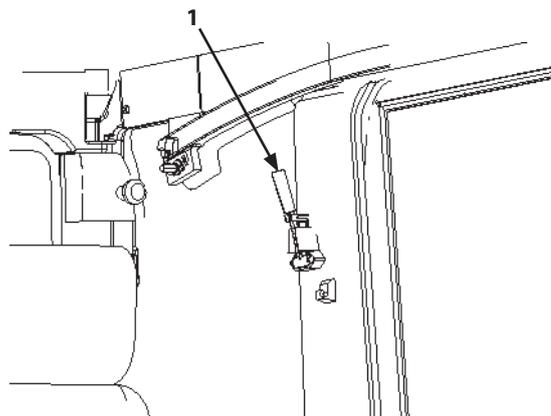
NOTE: Emergency exit decals (2) are affixed to the front and rear windows. See page "OPENING UPPER FRONT WINDOW" for the opening method of the upper front window.

CAUTION: If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, the glass can be broken. However if decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, the glass cannot be broken with emergency evacuation hammer (1). Take care not to be injured with pieces of broken glass.

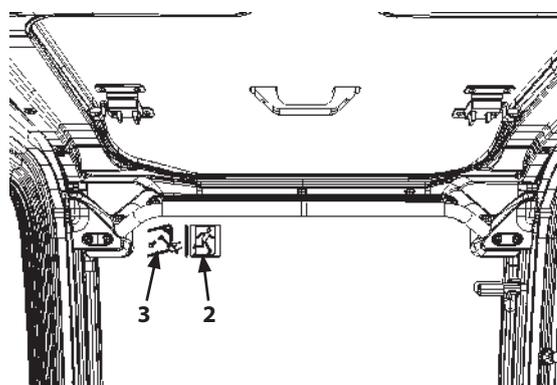
3. If upper front window should be difficult to open, check the decal (3) affixed to the window glass.

If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, break the front window glass using the emergency evacuation tool (1) installed the cab left side. Then escape through the broken window.

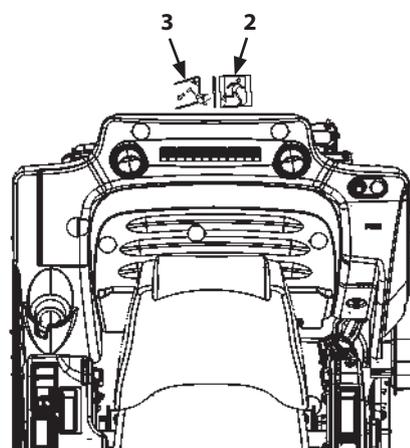
4. If decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, or if the front window is not available for escaping, break the rear window glass using the emergency evacuation tool (1). Then escape through the broken window.
5. If neither of front and rear windows is available for emergency exit, open the overhead window to escape from the cab.



MDAA-01-321



M1U4-01-012



MDAA-01-322

OPERATOR'S STATION

ZX85USB-5N

Escape from the cab in emergency in the following methods:

⚠ WARNING: The danger of downfall is always present when escaping from the cab in emergency, possibly resulting in serious personal injury. Escape from the cab as safely as possible, depending on the posture of machine and the outside situation.

1. Open the cab door. Escape through the door.
2. If the cab door should be difficult to open or use, open the upper front window. Escape through the window.

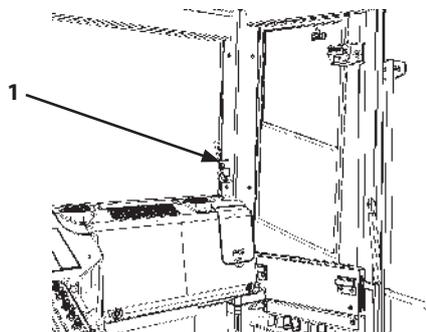
✎ NOTE:

- Emergency exit decals (2) are affixed to the front and rear windows
- See page "OPENING UPPER FRONT WINDOWS" for the opening method of the front windows.

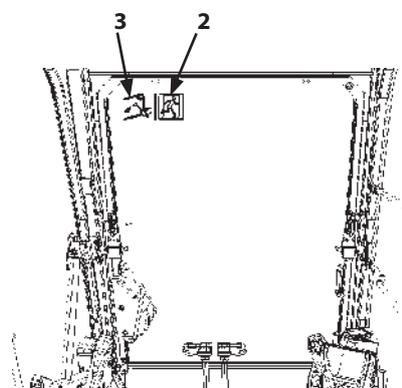
⚠ WARNING:

- If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, the glass can be broken. However if decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, the glass cannot be broken.
- Take care not be injured with pieces of broken glass.

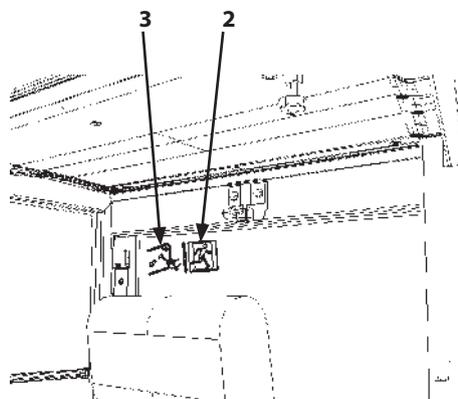
3. If upper front window should be difficult to open, check the decal (3) affixed to the window glass. If decal (3) is affixed to the front window glass, break the front window glass using emergency evacuation tool (1) installed the cab left side. Then escape through the broken window.
4. If decal (3) is not affixed to the front window glass, or if the front window is not available for escaping, break the rear window glass using emergency evacuation tool (1). Then escape through the broken window.
5. If neither of front and rear windows are available for emergency exit, open the overhead window to escape from the cab.



M1P1-01-040



M1P1-01-037



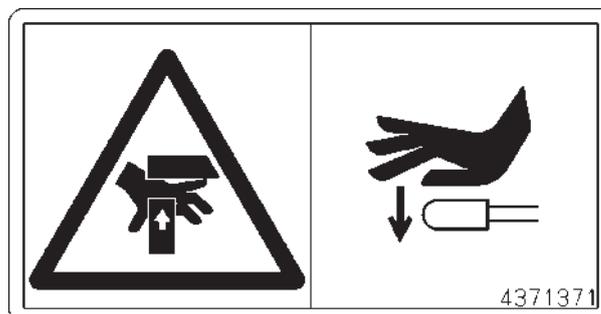
M1P1-01-039

OPERATOR'S STATION

Adjusting Operator's Seat

⚠ WARNING: Adjust the seat only after lowering the front attachment on the ground and pulling up the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever or pedal is touched with a part of the body by mistake, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION: Avoid possible injury while operating height/tilt lever (1). When pushing down lever (1), do not grab it. Fingers may be pinched between lever (1) and the seat stand. Be sure to push on the upper face of lever (1) by your palm.



SS4371371-3

Seat Height and Angle Adjustment

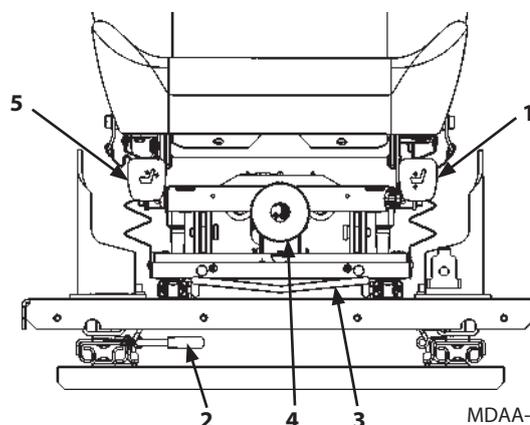
Seat height adjustment range is 60 mm (2.4 in) with steps every 15 mm (0.6 in) (5 positions in total).

Push down lever (1): to adjust front part of the seat.

Pull up lever (1): to adjust rear part of the seat.

Console and Seat Fore-aft Adjustment

Operate console and seat slide lever (2) to adjust the seat and both right and left consoles to desired distance from the travel pedals and levers. Seat and console fore-aft adjustment range is 160 mm (6.3 in) with steps every 20 mm (0.8 in).



Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment

Operate seat slide lever (3) to adjust the seat to desired distance from the travel pedals and levers. Seat fore-aft adjustment range is 200 mm (7.9 in) with steps every 10 mm (0.4 in).

Suspension Adjustment

Rotate knob (4) to adjust the suspension.

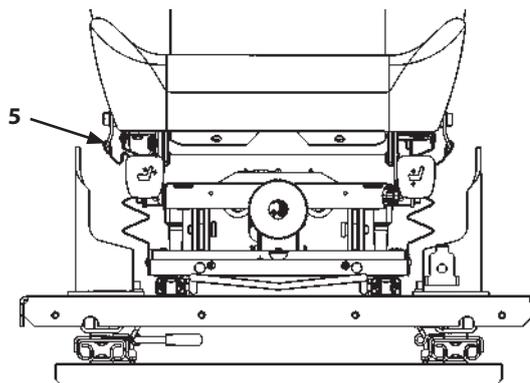
Rotate knob (4) clockwise (+ direction) to increase suspension stiffness.

Rotate knob (4) counterclockwise (- direction) to decrease suspension stiffness.

OPERATOR'S STATION

Backrest Adjustment

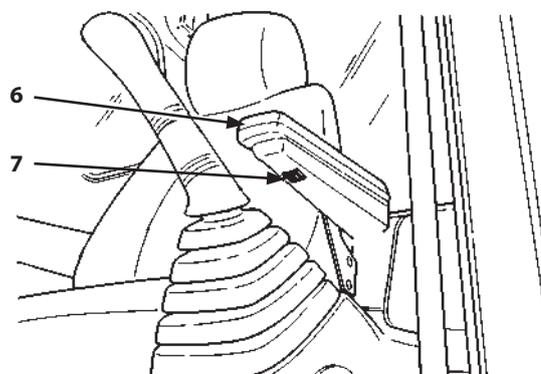
Pull up lever (5) to release backrest lock. Move backrest to the desired position and release lever (5).



MDAA-01-331

Armrest Adjustment

Armrest (6) can be pulled upright by hand 90°. Pull the armrest upright by hand to get on and off the machine easily. The angle of armrest (6) can be adjusted to the desired position by turning adjusting dial (7) located on the bottom of armrest (6).



M1G6-01-017

OPERATOR'S STATION

Adjusting Operator's Seat (Optional)

⚠ WARNING: Adjust the seat only after lowering the front attachment on the ground and pulling up the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Failure to do so may allow the machine to move unexpectedly if a control lever or pedal is touched with a part of the body by mistake, possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

Adjusting Seat Height

IMPORTANT: The seat is an air suspension type.

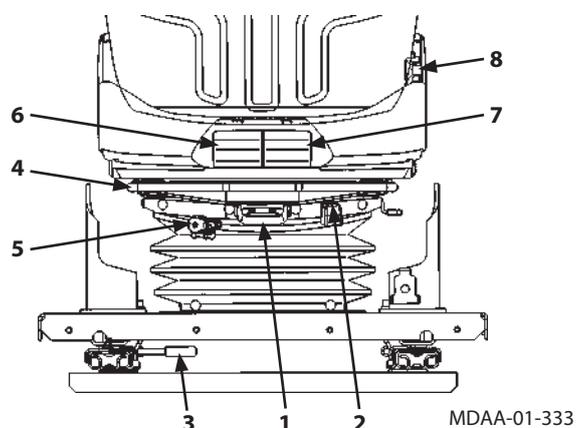
Pull lever (1) upward to fill air and raise the seat. Push lever (1) downward to release air and lower the seat. When the seat is properly adjusted for your weight, indicator (2) is in the green zone.

Console and Seat Fore-aft Adjustment

Operate console and seat slide lever (3) to adjust the seat and both right and left consoles to desired distance from the travel pedals and levers. Seat and console fore-aft adjustment range is 160 mm (6.3 in) with steps every 20 mm (0.8 in).

Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment

Operate seat slide lever (4) to adjust the seat to desired distance from the travel pedals and levers. Seat fore-aft adjustment range is 190 mm (7.5 in) with steps every 10 mm (0.4 in).



MDAA-01-333

OPERATOR'S STATION

Suspension Adjustment

Rotate knob (5) to adjust the suspension.

Rotate knob (5) clockwise to decrease suspension stiffness.

Rotate knob (5) counterclockwise to increase suspension stiffness.

Fore-Aft Position Adjustment of Seat Surface

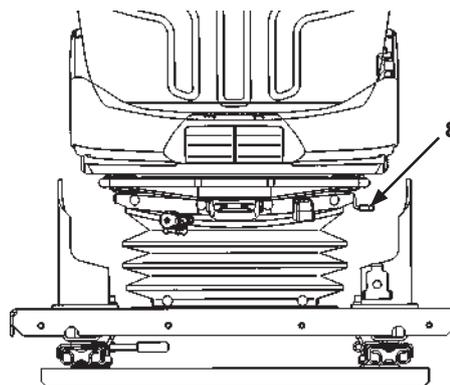
Pull lever (6) upward to adjust the seat angle. Seat and console fore-aft adjustment range is 60 mm (2.4 in) with steps every 15 mm (0.6 in).

Angle Adjustment of Seat Surface

Pull lever (7) upward to adjust the seat angle. Height of the seat end is adjustable in 4 steps.

Backrest Adjustment

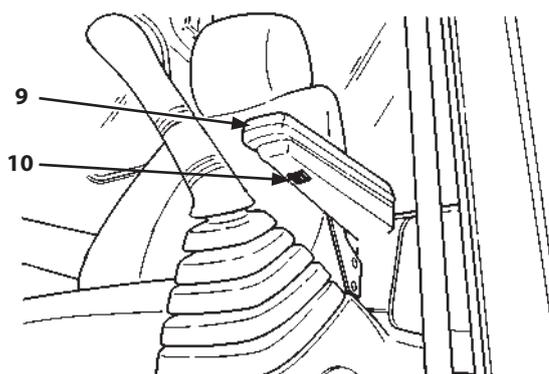
Pull up lever (8) to release backrest lock. Move backrest to the desired position. Move backrest to the desired position and release lever (8).



MDAA-01-333

Armrest Adjustment

Armrest (9) can be pulled upright by hand 90°. Pull the armrest upright by hand to get on and off the machine easily. The angle of armrest (9) can be adjusted to the desired position by turning adjusting dial (10) located on the bottom of armrest (9).



M1G6-01-017

OPERATOR'S STATION

Console Height Adjustment

Adjust the console height to the operator's comfort and/or work conditions.

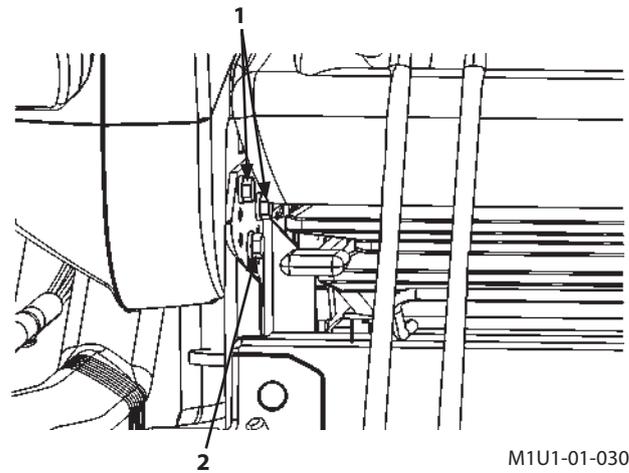
Adjusting console height can be achieved using three positions provided vertically at 20 mm intervals.

⚠ CAUTION: Before loosening the console, support the console. Otherwise, the console may suddenly drop, possibly causing personal injury.

Adjusting Procedures

1. Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine.
2. Move the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
3. Remove left and right console holding bolts (1). Loosen bolts (2) to adjust the console height.
4. After adjusting, tighten bolts (1) and (2).

Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m)



M1U1-01-030

OPERATOR'S STATION

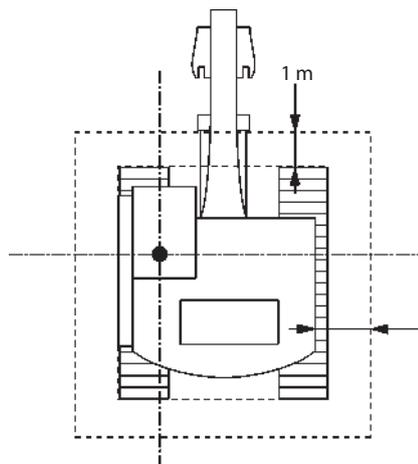
Installation and Adjustment of Mirrors

⚠ WARNING: Adjust the mirrors before operating the machine. Improper adjustment of the mirrors provides poor visibility, which may cause serious human injury or death.

IMPORTANT: The image displayed on the rear view monitor is meant only as an aid. When operating the machine, pay thorough attention to the surrounding situation.

Adjust the mirrors so that persons standing within 1 m from the machine (or object with height of 1.5 m and 30 cm in diameter) can be recognized from the operator's seat.

IMPORTANT: If a modification that may restrict operator's visibility is made, determine the operator's visual field again.



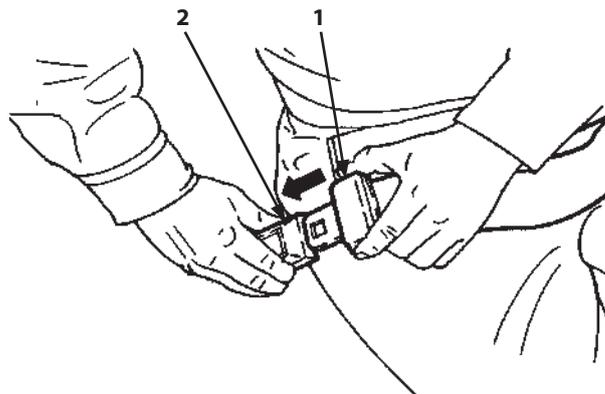
MDAA-01-334

OPERATOR'S STATION

Seat Belt

WARNING:

- Be sure to use seat belt (1) when operating the machine.
- Before operating the machine, be sure to examine seat belt (1) and attaching hardware for any failure. If any damage and/or wear are found, replace the part concerned.
- Replace seat belt (1) every 3 years regardless of appearance.

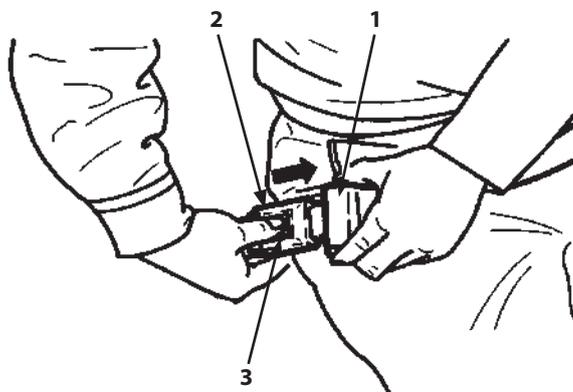


M1U1-01-031

Seat Belt

1. Confirm that seat belt (1) is not twisted. Securely insert the end of seat belt (1) into buckle (2). Lightly pull on the belt to confirm that the buckle latches securely.
2. Push button (3) on buckle (2) to unfasten seat belt (1).

Replace the seat belt if it is damaged or worn, or if the seat belt has external damage such as an accident.



M1U1-01-032

BREAK-IN

Breaking in New Machine

IMPORTANT: Operating a new machine at full load without first breaking in can cause scratches and/or seizures, consequently affecting the service life of the machine. Thoroughly perform break-in operation.

The service life and performance of the machine can be greatly affected by operation and maintenance of the machine during the initial stage of operation. Perform break-in operation with the engine output less than 80% of the maximum output for the first 50 hours.

OPERATING THE ENGINE

Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting

Perform the required daily check before starting the engine.

- Refer to "Maintenance" section for detailed information.

Engine

- Level and contamination of engine oil and coolant
- Starting easiness, exhaust gas color, and noise
- Oil and water leaks, damage to hoses and pipe lines
- Clogging and damage to radiator and oil cooler
- Looseness and missing of mounting bolts and nuts

Upperstructure

- Fuel level, leaks and contamination of fuel in tank
- Hydraulic oil level, leaks and contamination of hydraulic oil tank
- Movement, play and operating force of all control levers
- Operation of all hydraulic components, oil leaks and damage to pipe lines and hoses
- Deformation, break and abnormal noise of upper structure
- Looseness and missing of mounting bolts and nuts
- Washer fluid

Undercarriage

- Sag, wear and break of crawler
- Oil leaks and wear on upper/lower rollers and front idlers
- Oil leaks from travel devices
- Looseness and missing of mounting bolts and nuts

Working Device

- Check cylinders, pipe lines and hoses for oil leaks and damages.
- Wear and damage of the bucket
- Check bucket teeth for looseness, wear and missing
- Lubrication state of the working device
- Check for pin anti-extraction pins, stoppers, rings and bolts for damage
- Looseness and missing of mounting bolts and nuts

Others

- Operation of instruments, switches, lights and buzzer/horn
- Function of parking brake
- Deformation and break of head guard
- Abnormal outside appearance of machine
- Wear and damage of the seat belt

OPERATING THE ENGINE

Before Starting Engine

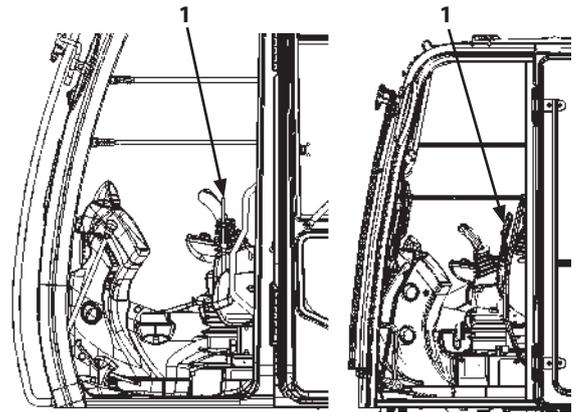
1. Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Confirm that all control levers are placed in neutral.
3. Insert key (2) to the key switch. Turn it to ON position. Push and hold switch (3) with the engine stopped.

IMPORTANT: Always check the machine on a firm, level surface. Never attempt to start the engine while checking the machine.

If engine oil level (4) (green) is displayed, the status is normal.

4. Adjust the seat to allow full pedal and control levers stroke with operator's back against the backrest. Fasten the seat belt.

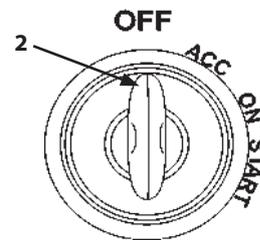
 **NOTE:** The monitor surface is a resin product. When the surface becomes dusty, lightly wipe the surface with a wet cloth. Never use an organic solvent.



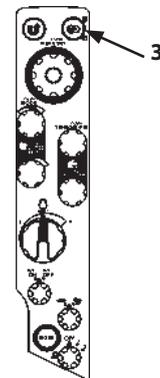
LOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

LOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

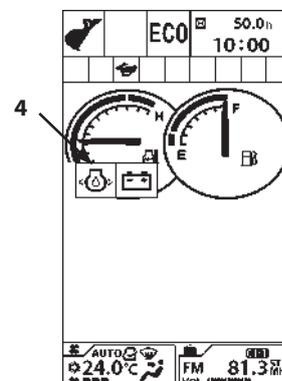
MDED-03-001



MDCD-01-030



MDAA-01-040



MDAA-01-041

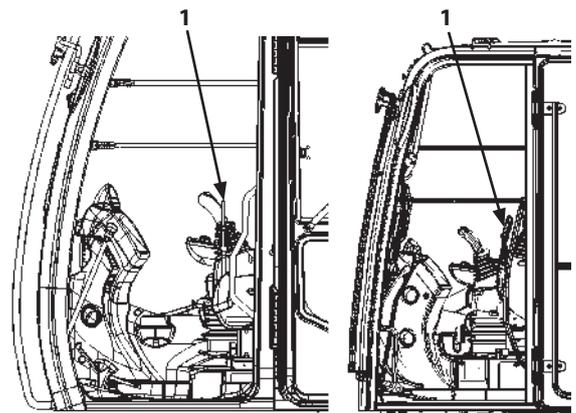
OPERATING THE ENGINE

Starting the Engine

Starting the Engine in Ordinary Temperature

1. Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Turn engine control dial (3) to the slow idle position.
3. Sound horn to alert bystanders
4. Insert key switch (2). Turn it to ON position.
5. "Wait-screen (nothing is displayed)" is displayed on the monitor for 2 seconds. Regardless of pilot control shut-off lever (1) position, the starter can not be cranked during this moment.
6. When the password input screen is displayed on the monitor, input the password. Unless the numeric keypad function (ignition block system) is activated, this screen is not displayed.

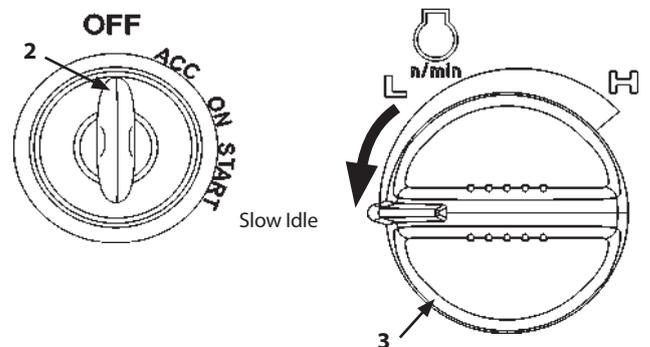
IMPORTANT: When required to activate the numeric keypad function (ignition block system), consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.



LOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

LOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

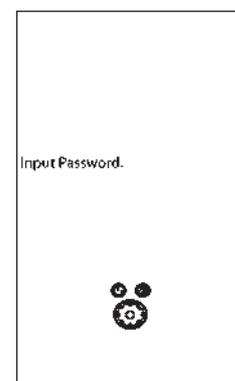
MDED-03-001



Slow Idle

MDCD-01-030

M1P1-01-068



Password Input Screen

MDAА-01-085EN

OPERATING THE ENGINE

NOTE: When the key switch is turned ON, the maintenance notification (4) for the item whose maintenance interval has expired displays for ten seconds. Press Return switch (5) or turn the pilot shut-off lever to UNLOCK position while the rear view camera is enable to delete the notification.

7. The basic screen will be displayed on the monitor. Check that the preheat indicator (6) is OFF at this time.
8. Turn the key switch to START position to rotate the starter. The engine will start.

IMPORTANT: Never operate the starter for more than 10 seconds at a time. If engine fails to start, return key switch to OFF. Wait for more than 30 seconds, then try again. Failure to do so may cause damage to the starter and/or discharging the batteries.

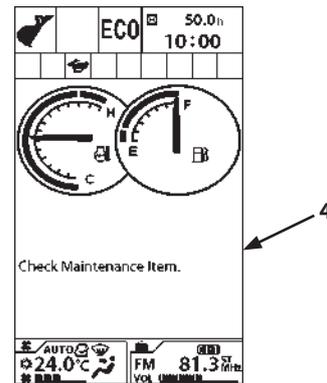
9. Release the key switch immediately after the engine has started. The key switch will automatically return to ON position.

NOTE: The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed for about 3 to 6 seconds right after the engine starts. When the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low, the time will be longer. The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed even if the engine control dial is not set in the slow idle position.

NOTE: The warm-up system automatically operates after keeping slow idle speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if the engine control dial is set in the slow idle position.

WARNING: Do not attempt to operate the machine for six seconds after starting the engine. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of work device may suddenly increase, which may cause serious accident.

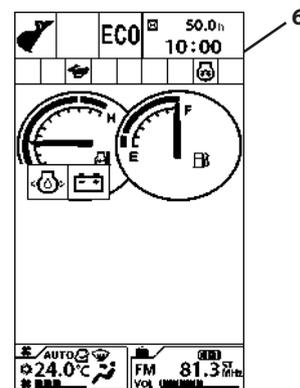
NOTE: White smoke may occur for several minutes after the engine start, this is not a malfunction.



MDAA-01-213EN



MDAA-01-040



Basic Screen

MDEC-01-042

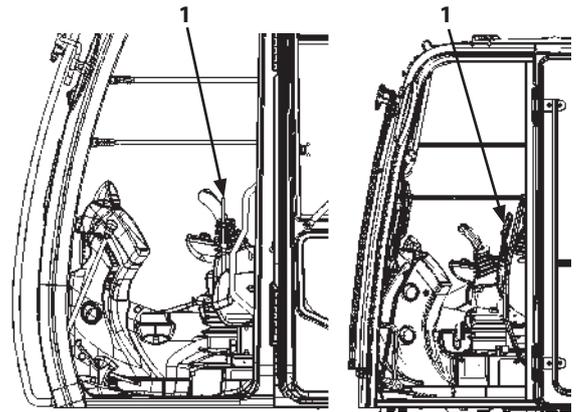
OPERATING THE ENGINE

Starting in Cold Weather

Preheating

1. Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the LOCK position.
2. Turn engine control dial (3) to the slow idle position.
3. Sound the horn to alert bystanders.
4. Insert key switch (2). Turn it to ON position.
5. "Wait-screen (nothing is displayed)" is displayed on the monitor for 2 seconds. Regardless of pilot control shut-off lever (1) position, the starter can not be cranked during this moment.
6. When the password input screen is displayed on the monitor, input the password. Unless the numeric keypad function (ignition block system) is activated, this screen is not displayed.

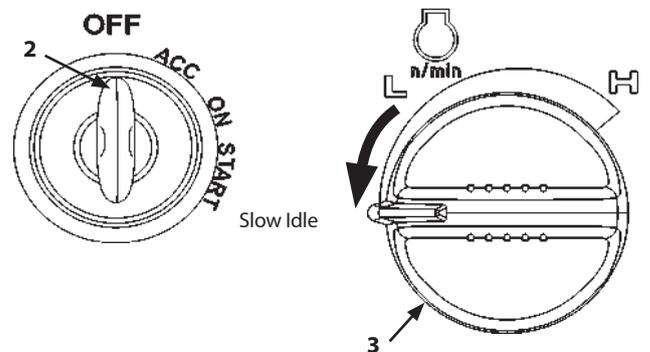
IMPORTANT: When required to activate the numeric keypad function (ignition block system), consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.



LOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

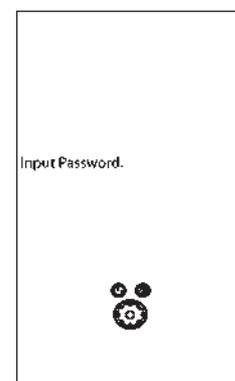
LOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-03-001



MDCD-01-030

M1P1-01-068



Password Input Screen

MDAA-01-085EN

OPERATING THE ENGINE

NOTE: When the key switch is turned ON, the maintenance notification (4) for the item whose maintenance interval has expired displays for ten seconds. Press Return switch (5) or turn the pilot shut-off lever to UNLOCK position while the rear view camera is enable to delete the notification.

- The basic screen will be displayed on the monitor.
The machine will automatically check if preheating is required or not. When preheating is required, preheat indicator (6) is lit for automatically.

NOTE: In case, preheat indicator (6) does not come ON, preheating is not required. Follow the "Starting the Engine in Ordinary Temperature" section.

- As soon as preheat indicator (6) goes OFF, turn the key switch to START position to rotate the starter.

IMPORTANT: Never operate the starter for more than 10 seconds at a time. If engine fails to start, return key switch to OFF. Wait for more than 30 seconds, then try again. Failure to do so may cause damage to the starter and/or discharging the batteries.

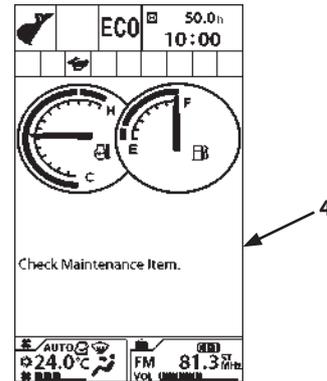
- Release the key switch immediately after the engine has started. The key switch will automatically return to ON position.

NOTE: The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed for about 3 to 6 seconds right after the engine starts. When the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low, the time will be longer. The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed even if the engine control dial is not set in the slow idle position.

NOTE: The warm-up system automatically operates after keeping slow idle speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if the engine control dial is set in the slow idle position.

WARNING: Do not attempt to operate the machine for six seconds after starting the engine. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of work device may suddenly increase, which may cause serious accident.

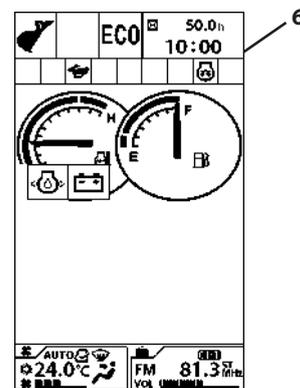
NOTE: White smoke may occur for several minutes after the engine start, this is not a malfunction.



MDAA-01-213EN



MDAA-01-040



Basic Screen

MDEC-01-042

OPERATING THE ENGINE

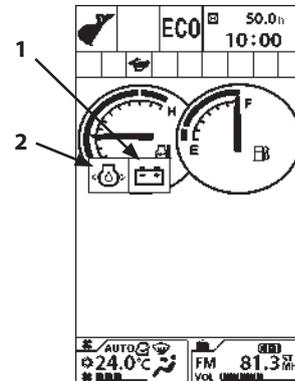
Check Instruments After Starting Engine

Checking instruments through monitor functions

After starting the engine, check the following points through the monitor functions.

1. Check that alternator alarm indicator (1) is OFF. In case alternator alarm indicator (1) stays ON, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the alternator and battery system for any abnormality.
2. Check that low engine oil pressure indicator (2) is OFF and the alarm buzzer does not sound.

In case low engine oil pressure indicator (2) stays ON and the buzzer sounds, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the engine oil pressure system and the oil level.



MDAA-01-041

IMPORTANT: In case any abnormality is found on the monitor unit, immediately stop the engine. Inspect the cause of the trouble.

Check engine noise and exhaust gas color:

Check that the engine noise and exhaust gas color is normal.

 **NOTE:** Check the exhaust gas color as follows. (After warm-up operation, run the engine with no loads.)

Clear : Normal (Perfect combustion)

Black : Abnormal (Imperfect combustion, abnormal muffler filter, abnormal fuel system)

White : Abnormal (Oil is leaking into the combustion chamber, abnormal muffler filter, abnormal fuel system)

 **NOTE:** White smoke may occur for several minutes after the engine start, this is not a malfunction.

OPERATING THE ENGINE

Using Booster Batteries

WARNING:

- An explosive gas is produced while batteries are in use or being charged. Keep open flames and sparks away from the battery area. Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
- Park the machine and a machine with the booster batteries on a dry or concrete surface, not on steel plates. If the machine is parked on steel plates, dangerous sparks may be unexpectedly created on the machine.
- Never connect a positive terminal to a negative terminal, as a dangerous short circuit will occur.



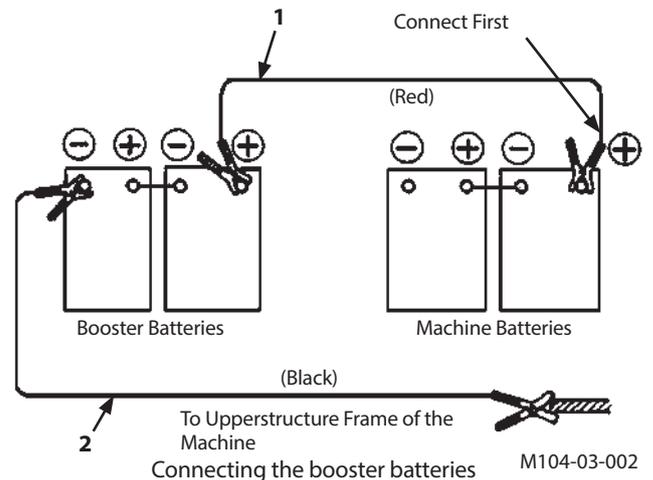
SA-032

IMPORTANT: The machine electrical system is a 24 volt negative (-) ground. Use only 24 volt booster batteries with sufficient capacity to start this machine.

When the machine batteries are exhausted, start the engine using booster batteries as shown below.

Connecting the booster batteries

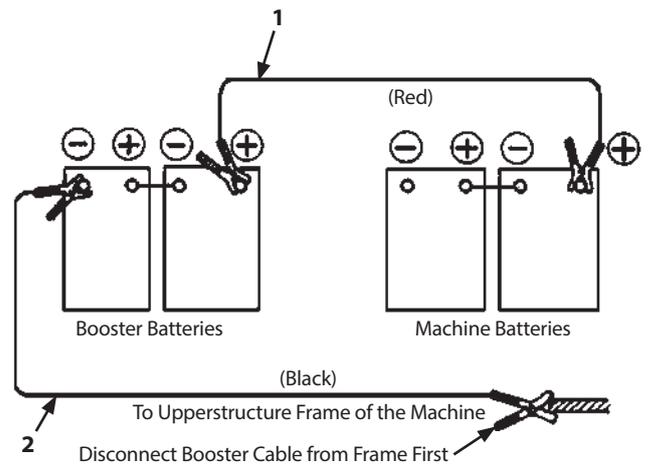
1. Stop the engine of the machine on which booster batteries are mounted.
2. Connect one end of red cable (1) to the positive (+) terminal of the machine batteries, and the other end to the positive (+) terminal of the booster batteries.
3. Connect one end of black cable (2) to the negative (-) terminal of the booster batteries, and then connect the other end to the frame of this machine. In the last connection to frame, sparks may fly. Be sure to connect the cable end as far away from the machine batteries as possible.
4. After securely connecting the booster cables, start the engine of the machine on which booster batteries are mounted. Run the engine at a middle speed.
5. Start the engine of this machine.
6. After the engine starts, disconnect booster cables (2) and (1), following the procedure below.



OPERATING THE ENGINE

Disconnecting the booster cables

1. Disconnect black booster negative (-) cable (2) from the machine frame first.
2. Disconnect the other end of black booster negative (-) cable (2) from the booster batteries.
3. Disconnect red booster positive (+) cable (1) from the booster batteries.
4. Disconnect red booster positive (+) cable (1) from the machine batteries.



Disconnecting the booster cables

M104-03-002

OPERATING THE ENGINE

Stopping the Engine

Engine Stop Procedure

1. Except for special cases, before stopping the engine, lower the bucket to the ground.
2. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (3) to LOCK position.
3. Turn engine control dial (1) to the slow idle position and run the engine for 5 minutes to cool the engine.

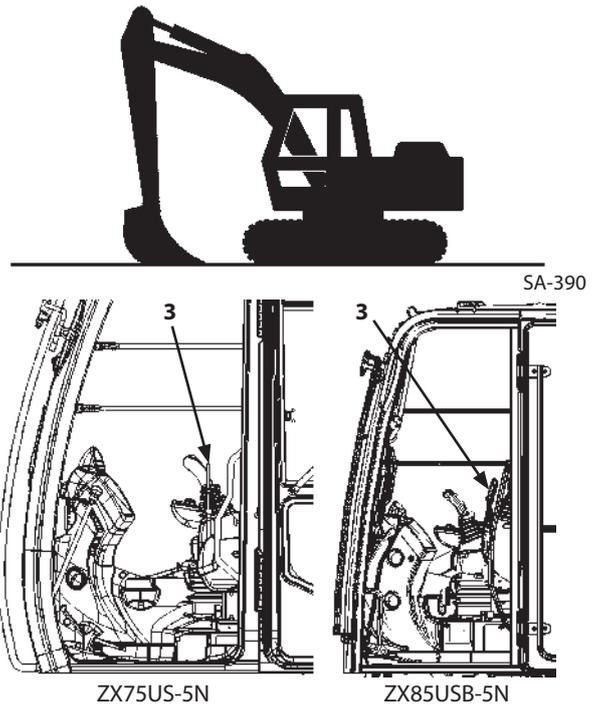
IMPORTANT: If the engine equipped with a turbocharger is stopped without first performing the cool down operation, the lubricant on the turbocharger bearing surfaces may desiccate due to the intense heat present inside the turbocharger, possibly causing damage to the turbocharger.

4. Turn key switch (2) OFF to stop the engine.

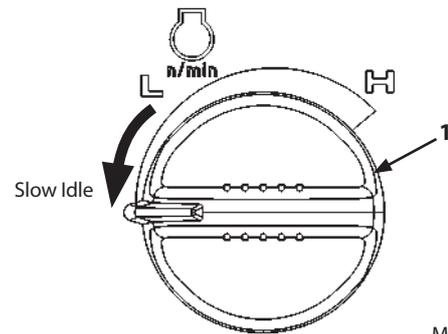
If the engine does not stop, even if the key switch is turned to the OFF position. (Emergency Stop)

In case the engine does not stop even if key switch (2) is turned OFF due to failure of the machine, move engine stop switch (4) downward to stop the engine. The engine will stop. Return engine stop switch (4) to its original position (upward).

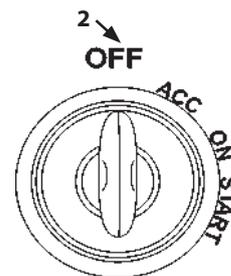
CAUTION: Do not use engine stop switch (4) unless absolutely necessary. When the machine stops due to the machine failure, do not start the machine until repair is completed.



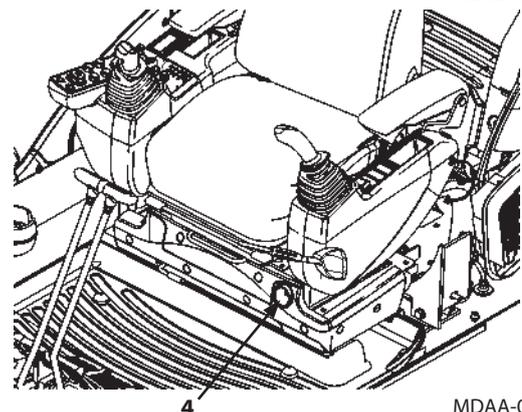
MDED-03-001



M1P1-01-068



MDCD-01-030



MDAA-01-290

DRIVING THE MACHINE

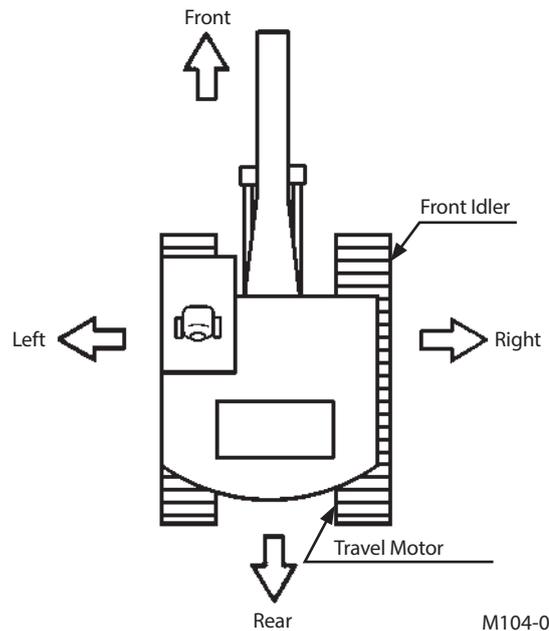
Travel Levers and Pedals

Travel operation can be performed with either the levers or pedals.

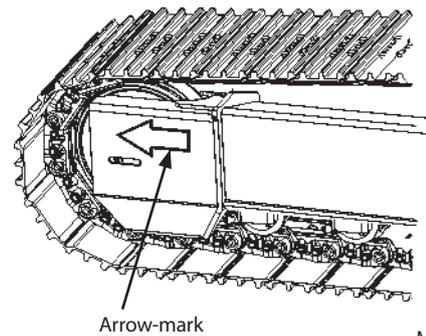
WARNING: In the standard travel position, the front idlers are positioned at the front of the machine and the travel motors at the rear. If the travel motors are positioned at the front of the machine, the control actions of the travel pedals will be reversed. Be sure to confirm the position of the travel motors before traveling.

NOTE:

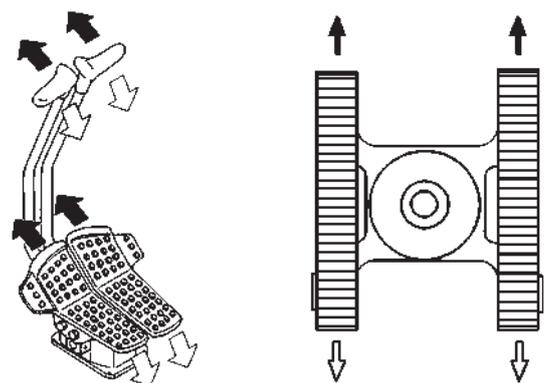
- An arrow-mark seal is stuck on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the machine front direction.
- Travel lever dampers are provided for smooth control. In extremely cold weather (lower than $-20\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($-68\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$)), the travel lever (or pedal) will become heavy to operate. This is caused by increase in oil viscosity which is not abnormal.
- Forward/Reverse Travel
Move both levers (or pedals) forward together to travel forward.
Pull the levers (or pedals) back together to travel in reverse. The travel speed can be controlled by adjusting the lever (or pedal) operating stroke.
- Ascending/Descending Slopes
The machine gradeability is 35 ° (70 %). Slowly operate the travel levers (or pedals) when descending a slope. When the travel levers are placed in neutral, the travel brakes are automatically applied to stop the machine.



M104-01-038



M178-03-001



Forward and Reverse

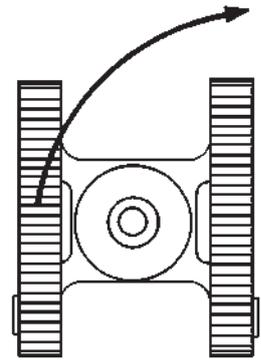
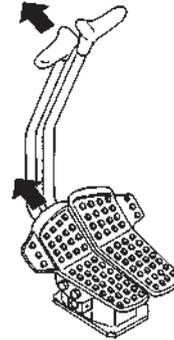
M104-04-009

M104-04-003

DRIVING THE MACHINE

- Pivot Turn

Steer the machine by driving only one side crawler.
Operate either of the travel levers (or pedals).



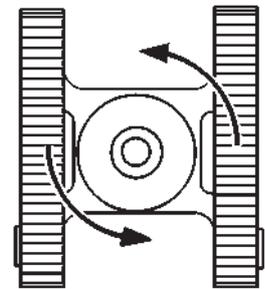
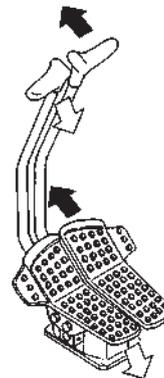
Pivot Turn

M104-04-010
M104-04-005

- Spin Turn

Steer the machine in a position by driving both side crawlers in opposite directions each other. Push one lever (or pedal) forward and pull the other back at the same time.

⚠ WARNING: During pivot or spin turn machine operations, the base machine may shake. When turning the machine in a tight area, slowly operate the machine while taking care not to allow the machine to come in contact with the surrounding objects.



Spin Turn

M104-04-011
M104-04-007

DRIVING THE MACHINE

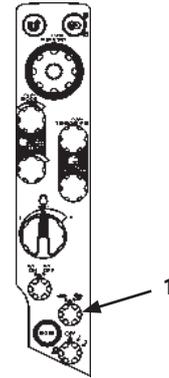
Travel Mode Switch

⚠ WARNING: Tipping-over accidents can cause serious personal injury. Do not change travel mode switch (1) while traveling; especially, changing to fast mode (2) when descending slopes will create a very dangerous situation. Always stop the machine before changing the travel speed mode.

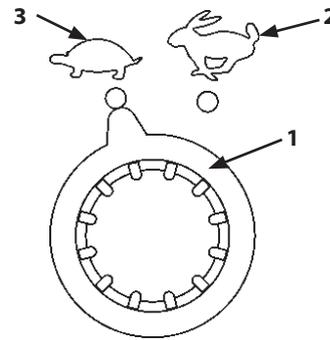
Turn travel mode switch (1) on the switch panel to the specified position to select the travel mode (Fast/Slow).

- Fast Mode: Turn travel mode switch (1) to  mark (2) position.
- Slow Mode: Turn travel mode switch (1) to  mark (3) position.

-  Mark (Fast Speed Mode)
-  Mark (Slow Speed Mode)



MDAA-01-040



MDCD-01-028

DRIVING THE MACHINE

Travel Alarm (Optional)

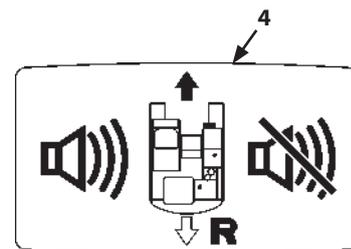
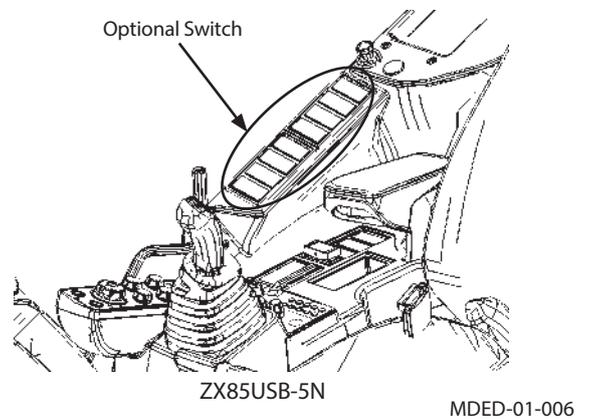
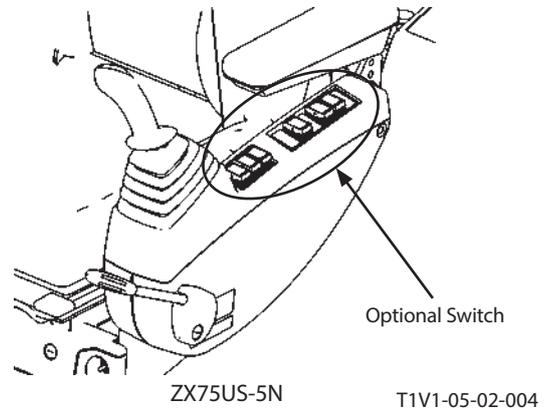
During travel operation, the travel alarm sounds to warn the people near the machine that the machine is traveling.

Deactivating Travel Alarm

More than 12 seconds after starting to travel the machine, raise the armrest and push travel alarm deactivation switch (4) to stop the travel alarm. (Within 12 seconds, the travel alarm deactivation switch is inoperable.)

Once the machine stops traveling and when restarting to travel, the travel alarm will sound again. If desired to stop the alarm, operate travel alarm deactivation switch (4) once more.

 **NOTE:** The optional switch locations differ depending on what kinds of optional devices are equipped. Before using the switches, make sure what kinds of optional devices are equipped.



DRIVING THE MACHINE

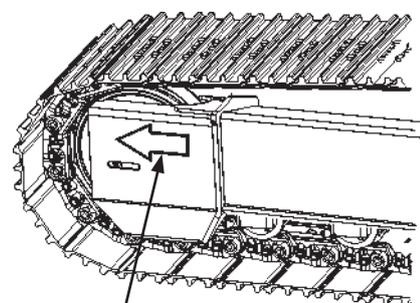
Traveling

CAUTION: Use a signal person when moving, swinging or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the machine.

- Before moving machine, determine which way to move travel pedals/levers for the direction you want to go. An arrow-mark seal is stuck on the inside surface of the side frame to indicate the machine front direction.
- Select a travel route that is as flat as possible. Steer the machine as straight as possible, making small gradual changes in direction.
- Before traveling on them, check the strengths of bridges and road shoulders, and reinforce if necessary.
- Use wood plates in order not to damage the road surface. Be careful of steering when operating on asphalt roads in summer.
- When crossing train tracks, use wood plates in order not to damage them.
- Do not make contact with electric wires or bridges.
- When crossing a river, measure the depth of the river using the bucket, and cross slowly. Do not cross the river when the depth of the river is deeper than the upper edge of the upper roller.
- When traveling on rough terrain, reduce engine speed. Select slow travel speed. Slower speed will reduce possible damage to the machine.
- Avoid operations that may damage the track and undercarriage components.
- During freezing weather, always clean snow and ice from track shoes before loading and unloading machine, to prevent the machine from slipping.



M104-05-008



M178-03-001



SA-011

DRIVING THE MACHINE

Traveling on Soft Ground

Avoid traveling on soft ground as much as possible. If traveling on a soft ground is unavoidable, carefully operate the machine while observing the following points.

- Drive the machine as far as the machine can move by own propelling power. Towing the machine may become necessary. Do not drive the machine to a deeper location than towing machine is possible.
- In case it becomes impossible for the machine to travel by own propelling power, lower the bucket to the ground. While supporting the machine weight with the boom and the arm, slowly pull the arm to evacuate the machine. Operate the boom, arm, and travel levers simultaneously at this time to prevent the machine from being loaded abnormally.
- If the track frame bottom comes in contact with the ground, or if mud and/or grabbles are tightly packed into the undercarriage, the machine may become impossible to travel. Raise one side track above the ground with the boom and arm extended, remove mud and/or grabbles from the track. Then, evacuate the machine. Rotate the raised track in forward or reverse directions alternately to remove the packed rocks and/or mud from the track.
- Tow the machine with other machine if the machine becomes stuck in soft ground and impossible to evacuate by own propelling power. Refer to the descriptions for Towing Machine for the correct usage of wire ropes.



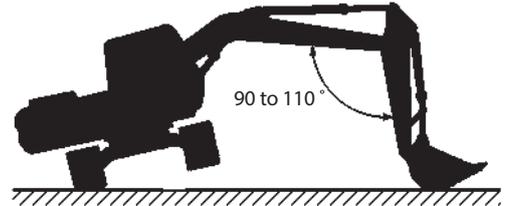
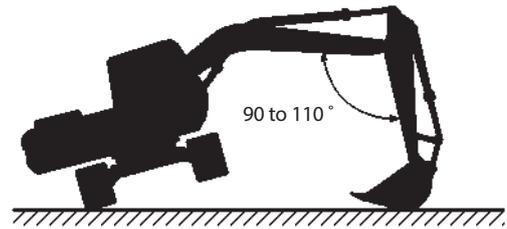
M104-05-012

DRIVING THE MACHINE

Raise One Track Using Boom and Arm

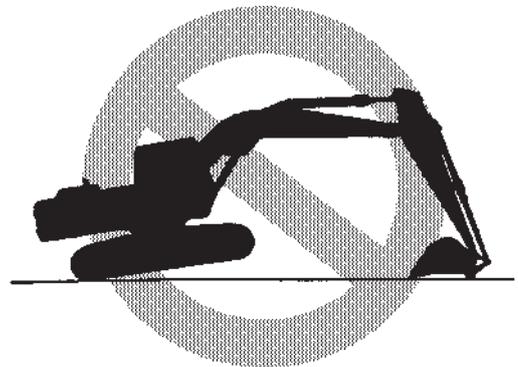
WARNING: Operate the machine carefully. The machine may slide. Keep the angle between boom and arm 90 to 110 ° and position the bucket's round side on the ground.

1. Swing the upperstructure 90 °.
2. Position the boom and the arm so that the angle between them becomes to 90 to 110 °. Push the ground with the round bucket bottom to raise track off ground.
3. Place blocks under machine frame to support the machine.



M104-05-013

IMPORTANT: When the machine is modified as a face shovel by installing the hoe bucket in reverse, avoid raising the machine above the ground using the front attachment with the bucket cylinder fully extended. Excessive loads will be applied to the pins around the bucket and the bucket cylinder, resulting in breakage of the pins.



MZX5-04-003

DRIVING THE MACHINE

Towing Machine

CAUTION: Cables, straps, or ropes can break causing serious injury. Do not tow machine with damaged chains, frayed cables, slings, straps, or wire ropes. Always wear gloves when handling cable, straps or wire ropes.

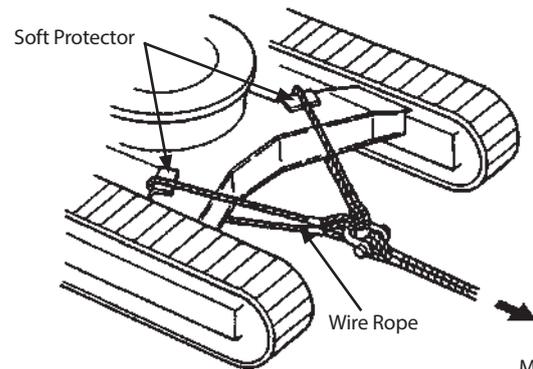
When your machine becomes stuck but the engine is still operational, attach wire ropes to the machine as illustrated at right, and slowly tow your machine to firm ground using another machine.

Be sure to attach the wire ropes around the track frames of both machines as illustrated.

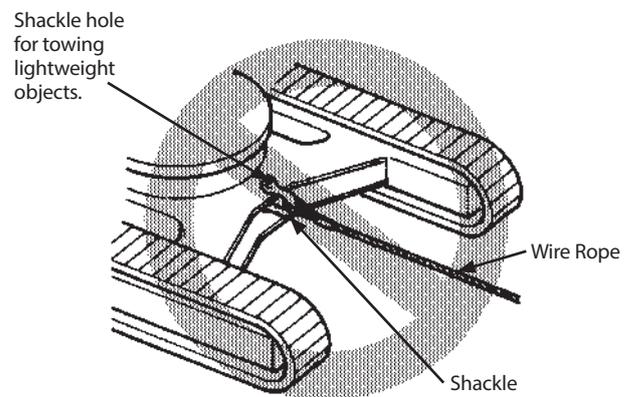
To prevent the wire ropes from being damaged, place some protective material between the track frame and the wire ropes.

IMPORTANT:

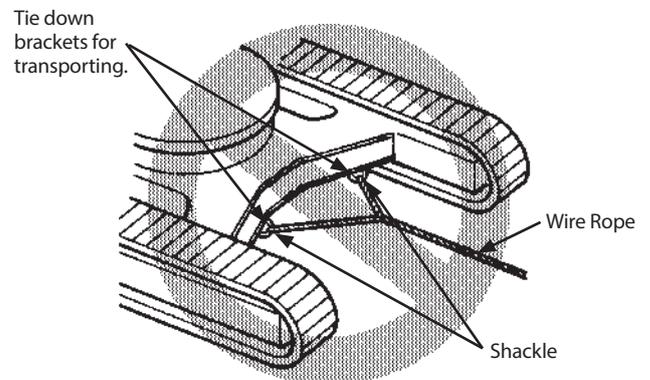
- A center shackle hole on the track frame is provided to pull only lightweight objects. The shackle holes on the bottom of the track frame are used to secure the machine for transportation.
- Do not use the shackle holes on the track frame for towing the machine.
- Refer to page 5-21 "Shackle Hole Usage" for using the center shackle hole appropriately.



M104-05-010



MZX5-04-004



MZX5-04-005

DRIVING THE MACHINE

Operating in Water or Mud

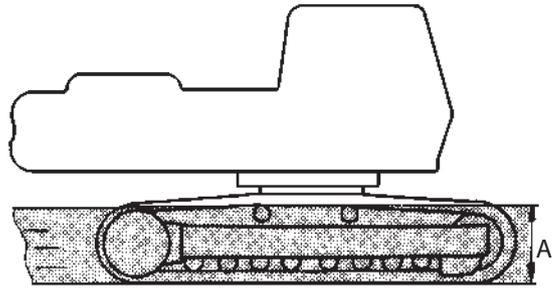
The machine can be operated in water up to the upper edge of the upper rollers only if worksite footing has sufficient strength to prevent the machine from sinking past the upper edge of the upper roller, and only if the water is flowing slowly.

When operating in such conditions, check the machine's position often. Reposition the machine if necessary.

Avoid submerging the swing bearing, swing gears and center joint.

IMPORTANT: If the swing bearing, swing gears and center joint are submerged in water or mud by mistake, premature wearing on parts such as the swing bearing may result. Grease must be changed or overhauling will be required immediately. Stop operating the machine as soon as possible, and contact your authorized dealer.

Lubricate swing bearing. (See Maintenance Guide, 500 hours)



M104-05-009

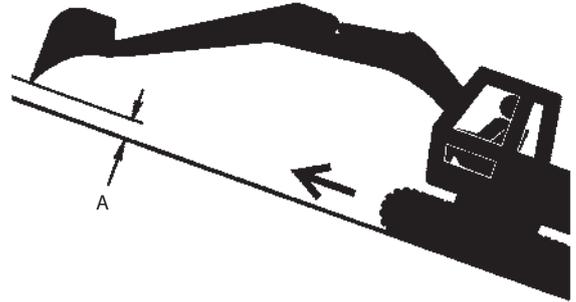
Model	A
ZX75US-5N, 85USB-5N	560 mm (22 in)

DRIVING THE MACHINE

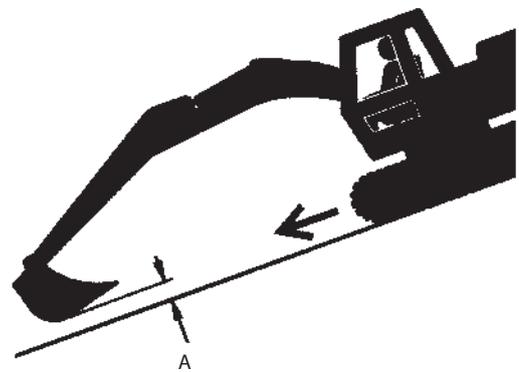
Precautions for Traveling on Slopes

CAUTION: Avoid possible injury from traveling on slopes. Tipping over or skidding down of the machine may result. Thoroughly read and understand precautions below and be sure to travel at slow speed on slopes. Never attempt to travel on slopes with the bucket loaded or any load suspended by the bucket.

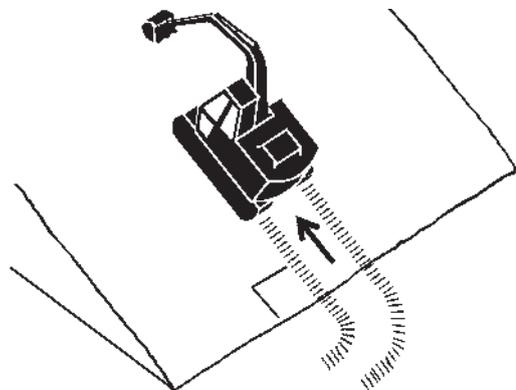
- Never attempt to ascend or descend 35 degrees or steeper slopes.
- Be sure to fasten the seat belt.
- Keep the bucket pointed in the direction of travel, approximately 200 to 300 mm (8 to 12 in) (A) above the ground. If the machine starts to skid or becomes unstable, lower the bucket immediately.
- Driving across the face of a slope or steering on a slope may cause the machine to skid or turnover. If the direction must be changed, move the machine to level ground, then, change the direction to ensure safe operation.
- Avoid swinging the upperstructure on slopes. Never attempt to swing the upperstructure downhill. The machine may tip over. If swinging uphill is unavoidable, carefully operate the upperstructure and boom at slow speed.
- If the engine stalls on a slope, immediately lower the bucket to the ground. Return the control levers to neutral. Then, restart the engine.
- Be sure to thoroughly warm up the machine before ascending steep slopes. If hydraulic oil has not warmed up sufficiently, sufficient performance may not be obtained.



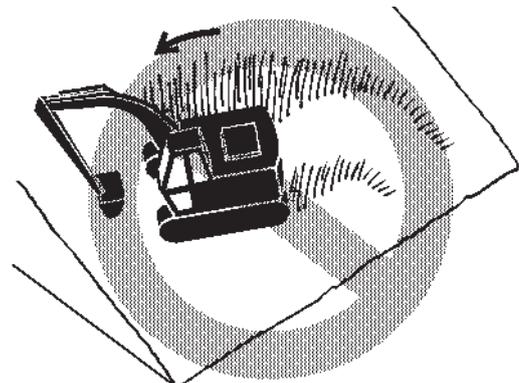
SA-657



SA-658



SA-441



MZX5-04-002

DRIVING THE MACHINE

Parking the Machine on Slopes

⚠ WARNING: Avoid parking and/or stopping machine on slopes. The machine may tip over, possibly resulting in personal injury.

If parking the machine on a slope is unavoidable:

- Thrust the bucket teeth into the ground.
- Return the control levers to neutral and pull pilot control shut-off lever (2) to the LOCK position.
- Block both tracks.



M104-05-014

Parking the Machine

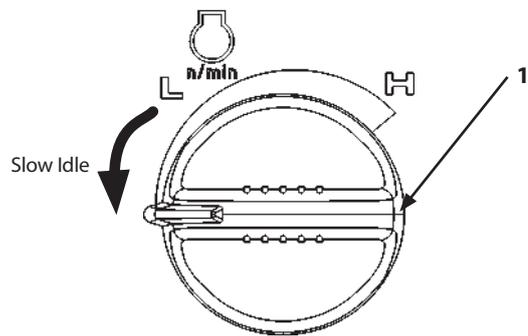
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch off.

IMPORTANT: Turbocharger may be damaged if the engine is not properly shut down.

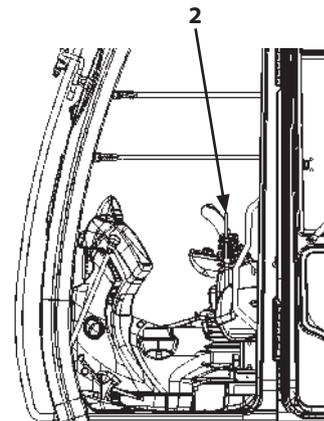
4. Turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to the stop (the slow idle position). Run the engine at slow idle speed for approximately 5 minutes to cool the engine.
5. Turn the key switch to OFF. Remove the key from the key switch.
6. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (2) to the LOCK position.

IMPORTANT: Protect cab electrical components from bad weather. Always close windows, roof vent and cab door when parking the machine.

7. Close windows, roof vent, and cab door.
8. Lock all access doors and compartments.

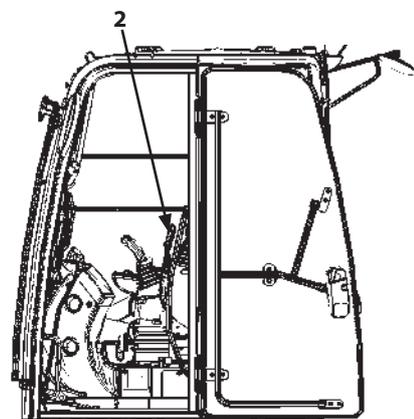


M1P1-01-068



LOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-008



LOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-010

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Control Lever (ISO Pattern)

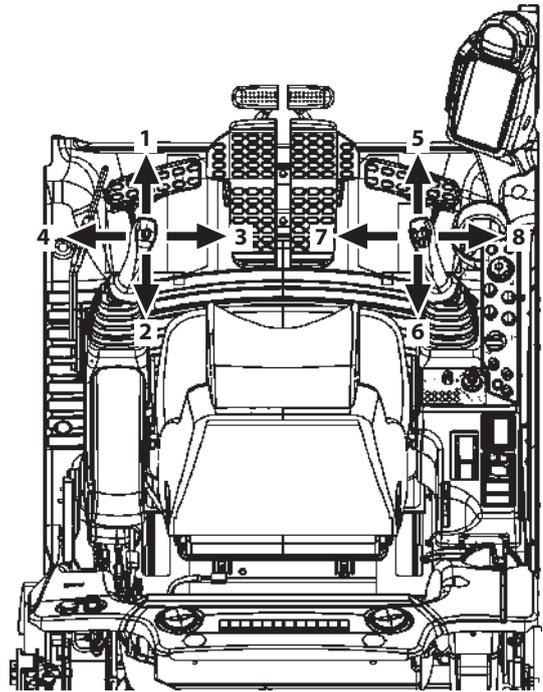
WARNING:

- Never place any part of body beyond window frame. It could be crushed by the boom if boom control lever is accidentally bumped or otherwise engaged. Never remove the window sash bar.
- Make sure you know the location and function of each control before operating.
- Do not change the control lever operation pattern. Failure to do so may result in operation mistake of the machine.

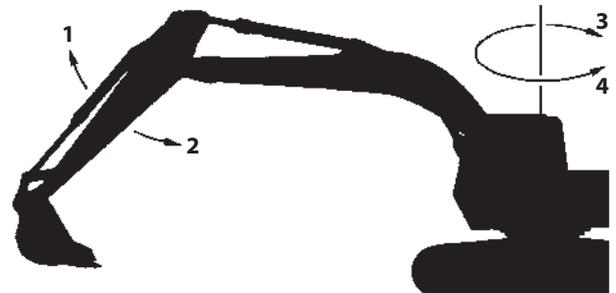
A label showing the control patterns of the levers and pedals is attached on the right side in the cab.

When a lever is released, it will automatically return to neutral, and that machine function will stop.

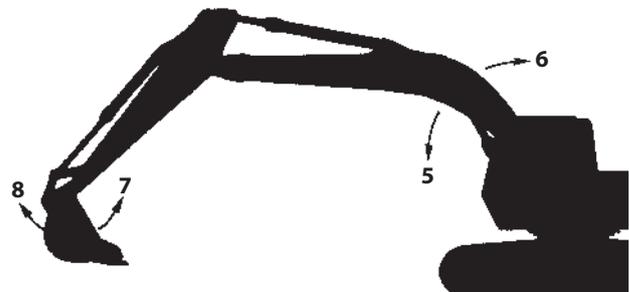
- 1- Arm Roll-Out
- 2- Arm Roll-In
- 3- Swing Right
- 4- Swing Left
- 5- Boom Lower
- 6- Boom Raise
- 7- Bucket Roll-In
- 8- Bucket Roll-Out



MDAA-01-288



M104-05-001



M104-05-002

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever

Pilot control shut-off lever (1) functions to prevent misoperation of the machine from occurring if the control levers are accidentally moved when leaving the operator's seat or when entering the cab.

WARNING:

- Always pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) into the full LOCK position. Unless pilot control shut-off lever (1) is fully moved to the LOCK position, the front control lever is not locked, possibly creating a hazardous situation.
- Be sure not to touch control lever (2) when operating pilot control shut-off lever (1). Failure to do so may allow the machine to unexpectedly move when a body part unintentionally comes in contact with the control lever, possibly resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- When leaving the machine, always stop the engine. Then, pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up to the LOCK position.
- Always check to be sure that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is pulled up to the LOCK position before transporting the machine or leaving the machine at the end of the shift.

Before Leaving the Machine

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Return all control levers to neutral. Properly shut down the engine.
2. Pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) up into the full LOCK position.

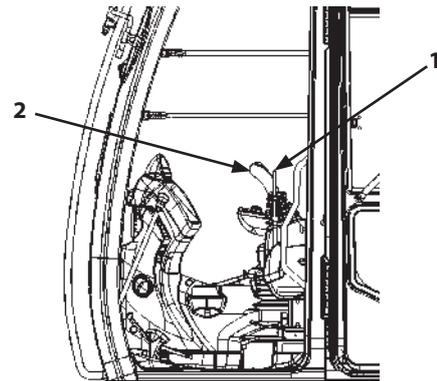
Before Starting Operation:

Confirm that pilot control shut-off lever (1) is pulled up to the LOCK position before starting the engine. The engine will not start in other than the LOCK position.

Slowly push down control shut-off lever (1) to UNLOCK position before starting operation.

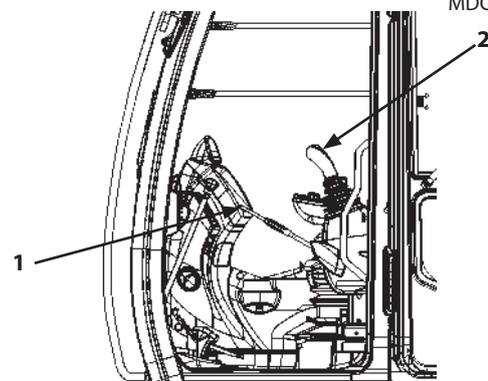
Confirm that all control levers and pedals are in neutral and that no part of the machine is in motion.

- WARNING:** If any part of the machine (any actuator) moves when pilot control shut-off lever (1) is lowered to the UNLOCK position despite the fact that all controls are placed in neutral, the machine is malfunctioning. Immediately pull pilot control shut-off lever (1) back to the LOCK position, and stop the engine. Then, see your authorized dealer.



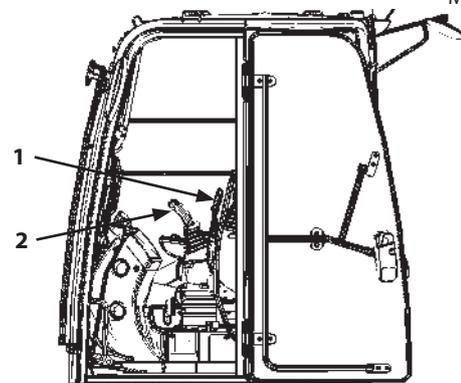
LOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-008



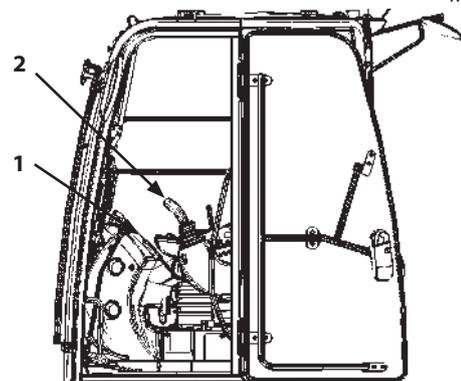
UNLOCK Position
ZX75US-5N

MDCN-01-009



LOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-010



UNLOCK Position
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-01-011

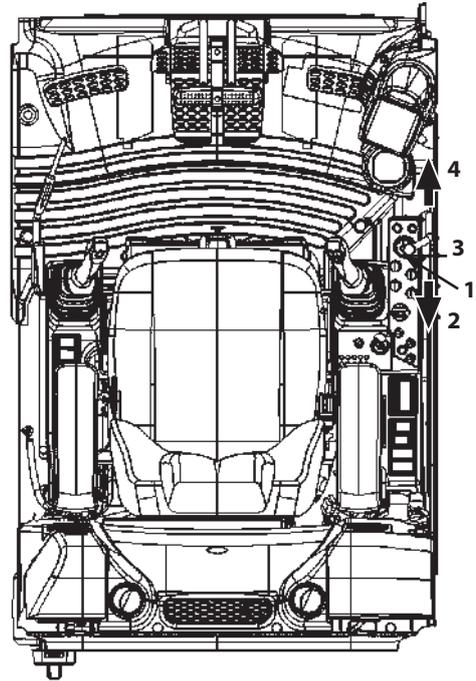
OPERATING THE MACHINE

Blade Lever

Use blade lever (1) on the operator's right to raise and lower the blade.

When the lever is released, it automatically returns to neutral, keeping the blade in its position until the lever is operated again.

- 1- Blade Lever
- 2- Blade Raise
- 3- Neutral
- 4- Blade Lower



MDCN-13-001

Precautions for Blade Operation

This blade is designed as a light service attachment for the hydraulic excavator. Please keep the following points in mind:

1. This blade is designed to be used for dozing work only. Do not attempt to dig deeply with the blade. Doing so will damage not only the blade but the undercarriage as well.
2. Do not apply intensive or uneven loads. Never apply high-speed impact to the blade by running the machine into a load.
3. Jacking up the machine with this blade, the surface beneath the blade comes under high pressure, increasing the risk of surface collapse.

Always be sure that the surface is strong enough to support the weight of the machine during operation.

Avoid dangerously uneven distribution of weight on the blade by maintaining even contact between the blade and the ground.

4. Never use this blade as an outrigger.
5. Avoid contact between the bucket and the blade while digging.



M155-14-008

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Warming Up Operation

In cold weather, warm up the machine until coolant and hydraulic oil temperature increases to the appropriate operating temperature.

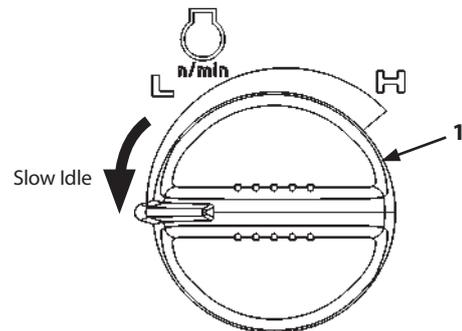
IMPORTANT: The appropriate hydraulic oil operating temperature on this machine is 50 to 80 °C (122 to 176 °F). Hydraulic components may be seriously damaged if the machine is operated with low temperature hydraulic oil. In case warming up the machine by relieving the hydraulic system, continuously relieve the relief valve for 10 to 15 seconds while taking a pause for 5 to 10 seconds.

1. Turn engine control dial (1) to the slow idle position.
(Do not operate the machine until the needle of coolant temperature gauge (2) starts swinging.)
2. After the needle of coolant temperature gauge (2) starts swinging, turn engine control dial (1) to approx. Medium position.
3. Operate the boom, arm and bucket cylinders slowly to each stroke end several times. If the machine equipped with various attachments, operate the attachment function slowly to allow hydraulic oil to circulate through the system.
4. Operate the travel and swing functions slowly to allow hydraulic oil to circulate through the systems.
5. Warming up operation ends after the above operation is completed.

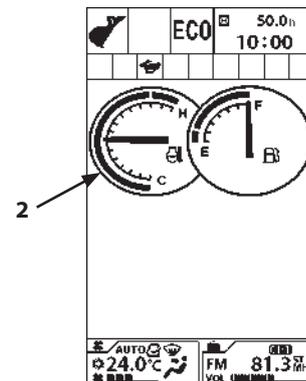
 **NOTE:** The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed for about 3 to 6 seconds right after the engine starts. When the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low, the time will be longer. The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed even if engine control dial (1) is not set in the slow idle position.

 **NOTE:** The warm-up system automatically operates after keeping slow idle speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if engine control dial (1) is in the slow idle position.

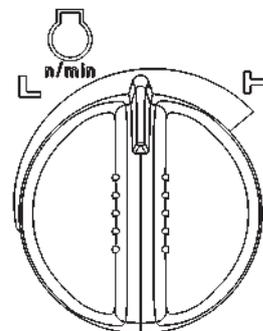
 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to operate the machine for six seconds after starting the engine. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of work device may suddenly increase, which may cause serious accident.



M1P1-01-068



MDAA-01-001EN



M1P1-05-003

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Engine Speed Control

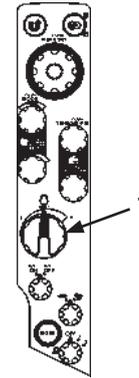
Increase and decrease the engine speed using engine control dial (1) located on the switch panel, as illustrated.

- Turn engine control dial (1) clockwise to increase the engine speed. Turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to decrease the engine speed.
- Note that the auto-idle function will be deactivated if engine control dial (1) is operated while the engine is running at the auto-idle setting.
- Before stopping the engine, always turn engine control dial (1) counterclockwise to the stop (to the slow idle setting). Run the engine five minutes to cool the engine. Then, turn the key switch to OFF position to stop the engine.

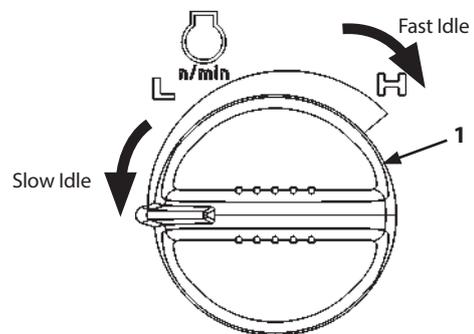
 **NOTE:** When the engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed for about 3 to 6 seconds right after the engine starts. When the coolant temperature or hydraulic oil temperature is low, the time will be longer. The engine speed will be kept to slow idle speed even if the engine control dial (1) is not set in the slow idle position.

 **NOTE:** The warm-up system automatically operates after keeping slow idle speed, and the engine speed will temporarily increase even if engine control dial (1) is set in the slow idle position.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to operate the machine for six seconds after starting the engine. The engine speed may change after the slow idle period and operation speed of work device may suddenly increase, which may cause serious accident.



MDAA-01-040



M1P1-01-068

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Auto-Idle

Auto-Idle Function

With auto-idle selector (3) turned to the A/I ON position, approximately 4 seconds after all control levers are returned to neutral, the engine speed decreases to the auto-idle setting to save fuel consumption.

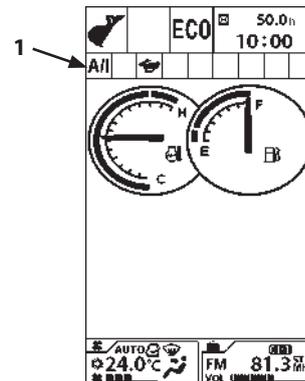
The engine speed will immediately increase to the speed set by engine control dial (2) when any control lever is operated.

WARNING:

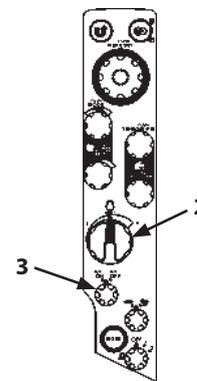
- Prevent the machine from unexpected movement. Be sure to turn auto-idle selector (3) to the A/I OFF position when unexpected machine movement is undesirable, especially when loading/unloading the machine for transportation.
- Always be aware of engine control dial (2) setting when auto-idle selector (3) is turned to the A/I ON position. If the engine speed is set high with engine control dial (2), and if the operator is not aware of the high engine speed setting, the engine speed will unexpectedly increase when any control lever is operated, causing unexpected machine movement, thus possibly resulting in serious personal injury.

IMPORTANT: Always check if auto-idle indicator (1) is turned ON or OFF before starting operation. If the indicator is ON, the auto-idle function will be activated.

 **NOTE:** Auto-idle control may not work completely until the end of the warm-up.



MDAA-01-314EN



MDAA-01-040

OPERATING THE MACHINE

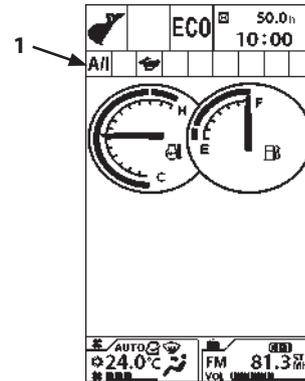
Auto-Idle ON/OFF

Note that auto-idle function can be turned ON or OFF by using auto-idle selector (3) only when the key switch is in ON position.

Always check if the auto-idle function is turned ON or OFF with auto-idle indicator (1).

Auto-Idle Indicator (1) ON : Auto-Idle Function ON
Auto-Idle Indicator (1) OFF : Auto-Idle Function OFF

- When auto-idle selector (3) is turned OFF with auto-idle indicator (1) ON, indicator (1) will go OFF and the auto-idle system is deactivated.
- Even if the engine is stopped by turning the key switch with auto-idle selector (3) in the A/I ON position [indicator (1) ON], the auto-idle system is not deactivated. When the engine is restarted, the auto-idle system remains activated, allowing auto-idle indicator (1) to flash for 5 seconds and stay ON later.



MDAA-01-314EN



MDAA-01-040

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Auto Shut-Down

⚠ WARNING: This function automatically stops the engine. Take extra care on the work and work environment when using this function.

When the auto shut-down function is turned ON, the engine automatically stops after the preset time at the state in which the control shut-off lever is pulled. 30 seconds before the engine stop, monitor (2) displays a message that engine will be stopped and indicator (1) starts flashing. Also the buzzer sounds. The buzzer sounds once at 30 seconds before, continuously sounds from 15 seconds. The engine speed decreases to the idling speed, and then stops after 15 seconds. When the control shut-off lever is pushed before stopping the engine, the auto shut-down is disabled and the engine will not stop.

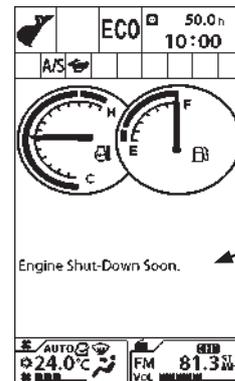
IMPORTANT: Ensure that the ON or OFF status of auto shut-down indicator (1). If the indicator is ON, the auto shut-down function will be activated.

Operating Condition

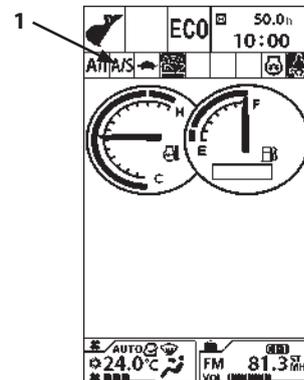
- The engine is running.
- The pilot control shut-off lever is in the LOCK position.
- Coolant and hydraulic oil temperature are not high.

IMPORTANT:

- When the engine stops by the auto shut-down function, turn the key switch to ACC or OFF once and then turn it to START to restart the engine. Do not leave the machine after auto shut-down. Failure to do so may discharge the batteries.
- When the key switch is turned to OFF position while the auto shut-down function is ON, the setting will be reset. When it is required to keep the setting, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.



MDAA-01-146EN



MDED-01-286

OPERATING THE MACHINE

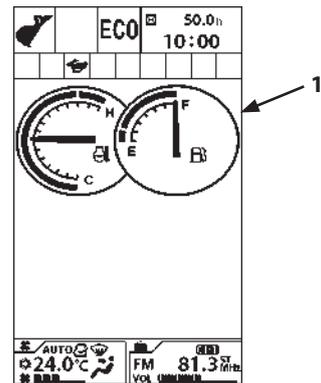
IMPORTANT:

- Even if the auto shut-down function is ON, the engine will not stop during the regeneration of the muffler filter.
- When the auto shut-down activates, the air conditioner will also stop.

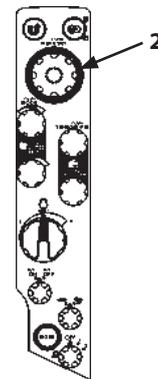
Setting the Auto Shut-Down Function

Auto Shut-Down: On/Off

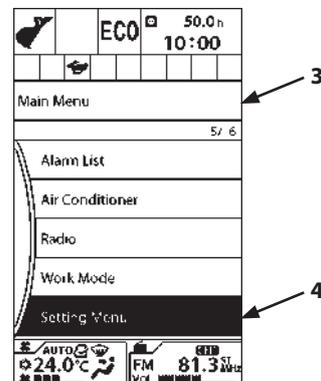
1. Press selector knob (2) while displaying Basic Screen (1) to display Main Menu screen (3).
2. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Setting Menu (4).
3. Press selector knob (2) to display Setting Menu screen (5).
4. Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Auto Shut-Down (6).



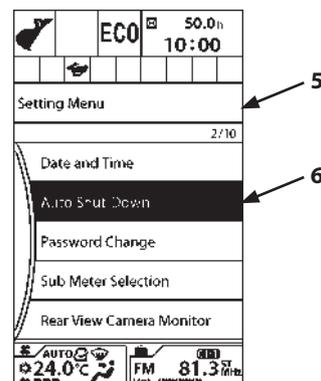
MDAA-01-001EN



MDAA-01-040



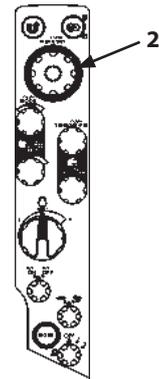
MDAA-01-114EN



MDDED-01-147EN

OPERATING THE MACHINE

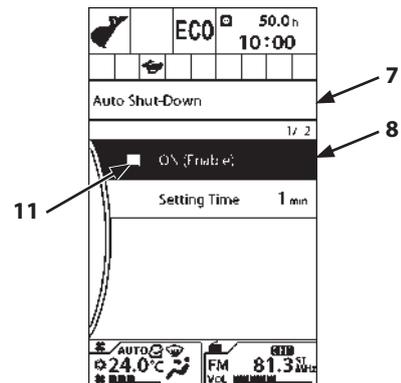
- Press selector knob (2) to display Auto Shut-Down screen (7).



MDAA-01-040

- Rotate selector knob (2) to highlight ON (8).
- Press selector knob (2) to display Auto Shut-Down screen (7). Press selector knob (2) again to turn the auto shut-down function OFF.

 **NOTE:** When the function is ON, the mark "■" (11) is displayed in green. When the function is OFF, the mark "■" (11) is displayed in gray.

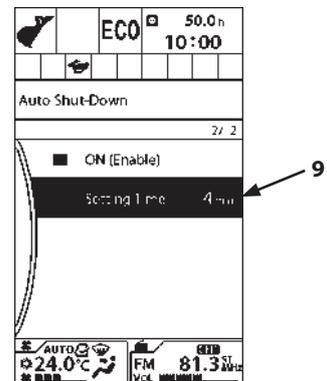


MDAA-01-148EN

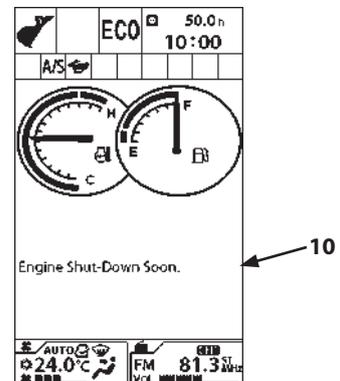
Acting Time Setting

- On the Auto Shut-Down screen, rotate selector knob (2) to highlight Time (9).
- Push selector knob (2). Rotate selector knob (2) to adjust the auto shut-down acting time.
- Press selector knob (2) to make the change.

 **NOTE:** 30 seconds before the engine stop, the monitor will display "Engine Shut-Down Soon." message (10).



MDAA-01-150EN



MDAA-01-146EN

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Muffler Filter Manual Regeneration

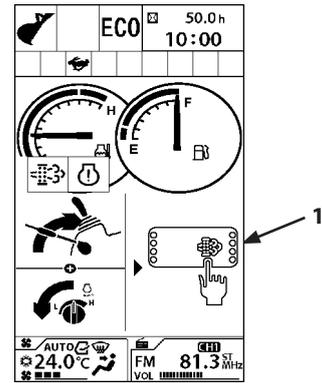
Manual Regeneration Procedure

When the manual regeneration is needed, screen (1) as shown in the right will be displayed. When this screen is displayed, you need to perform the manual regeneration. Before starting the manual regeneration, be sure to check the following.

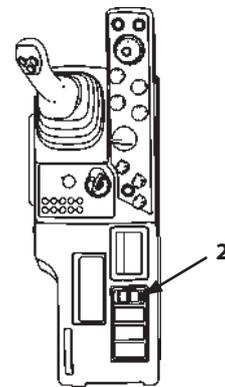
If the rear view camera is equipped on the machine and the camera is enabled, screen (1) is displayed only when the pilot control shut-off lever is in LOCK position. (Refer to 1-26)

- No person is present around the machine
 - Keep flammable objects away from the muffler.
 - Remaining fuel alarm does not light.
1. Park the machine in a safe place. Lower the front attachment onto the ground.
 2. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
 3. Set the engine control dial to slow idle.
 4. Push and hold muffler filter manual regeneration switch (2) (about 1 second).
 5. When pushing the muffler filter manual regeneration switch (2), screen (3) as shown in the right will be displayed and the manual regeneration starts. Bar graph on the screen indicates progress of the regeneration process.

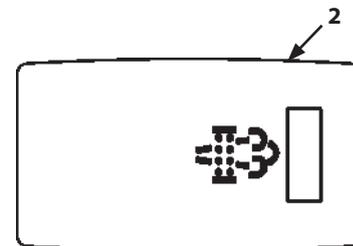
CAUTION: The regeneration does not start unless the pilot control shut-off lever is in the LOCK position and the engine control dial is in slow idle. When touching the pilot shut-off lever or the engine control dial during regeneration, the regeneration process is aborted. When the process is aborted, start over again.



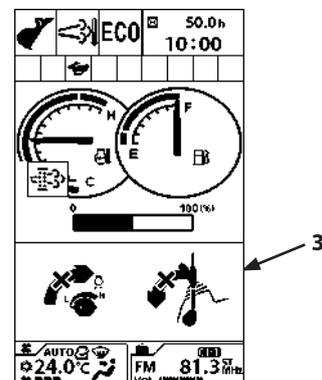
MDEC-01-005



MDAA-01-330



MDAA-05-002



MDEC-01-006

OPERATING THE MACHINE

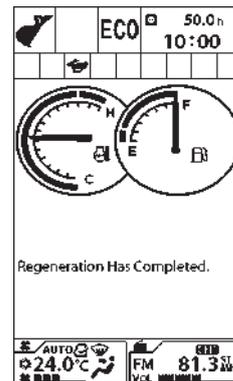
6. When the regeneration is finished, "Regeneration Has Completed." message will be displayed. If "Regeneration Has Failed." message is displayed, start over the regeneration process again. Failure of regeneration process may happen in the conditions other than above (such as malfunction of a sensor that affects regeneration at low ambient temperature).

 **NOTE:**

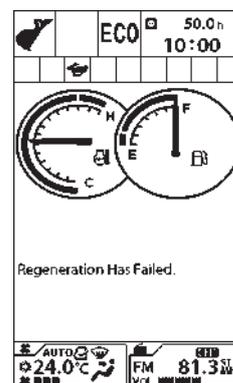
- The engine sound may change and the engine speed may increase when the manual regeneration starts, but it is not a malfunction.
- Regeneration time varies depending on the ambient temperature.
- White smoke may temporarily be generated from the tail pipe during the regeneration process due to the burning of particle matter (PM), but it is not a malfunction.
- Manual regeneration process completes earlier right after the engine has been running than when it is cold.
- Coolant temperature may increase during the manual regeneration.

IMPORTANT: If regeneration must be interrupted, push down the pilot control shut-off lever to **UNLOCK** position or operate the engine control dial. The message "Regeneration Has Failed." will be displayed on the monitor, but the machine becomes operable. In this case, regeneration should be performed again. Restart the manual regeneration as soon as possible.

 **NOTE:** When push muffler filter manual regeneration switch at the engine start, the regeneration does not start unless the warm-up operation is performed for 15 to 20 minutes.



MDAA-01-083EN



MDAA-01-084EN

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Power Mode

Two engine speed modes, ECO and PWR modes are selected by operating the power mode switch (1).

ECO (Economy) Mode

Operate the machine in this mode when performing normal work.

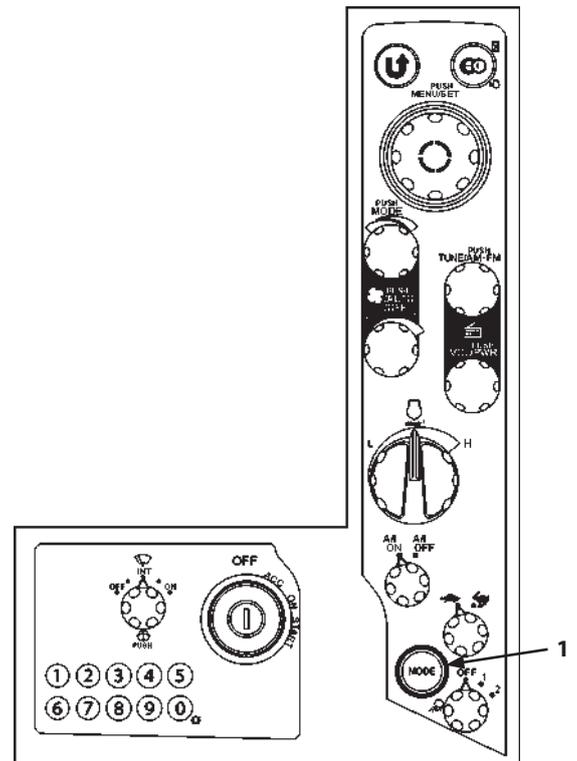
ECO is displayed on Power Mode Display (2).

PWR (Power) Mode

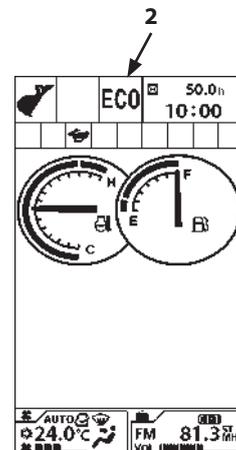
Use PWR (Power) mode when extra horsepower is needed.

PWR is displayed on Power Mode Display (3).

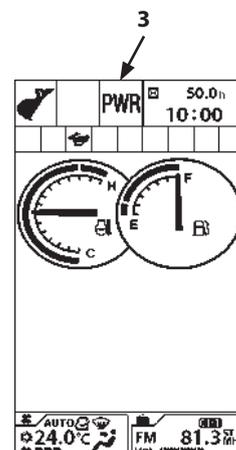
 **NOTE:** ECO mode is set automatically when starting the engine. Set PWR mode if necessary.



MDAA-01-310



MDAA-01-001

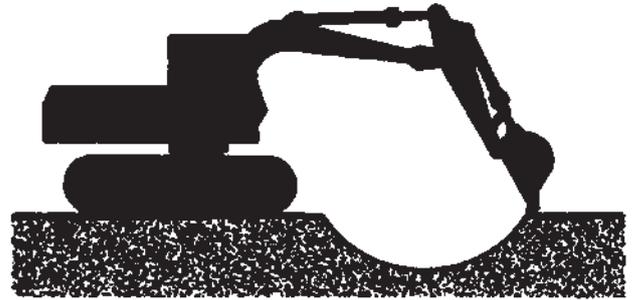


MDAA-01-353

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Operating Backhoe

- Use the appropriate arm and bucket for the work. (Refer to the "Bucket Types and Applications" in the Specifications section.)
- Pull the bucket toward the machine using the arm as the main digging force.
- When soil sticks to the bucket, remove it by moving the arm and/or bucket rapidly back and forth.
- Place the bucket teeth on the ground with the bottom of the bucket at a 45 degree angle to the ground.
- When trenching a straight line, position the tracks parallel to the trench. After digging to the desired depth, move the machine as required to continue the trench.
- When operating with hydraulic cylinders fully retracted or extended, all hydraulic cylinders and equipment may be damaged.



M107-05-037

IMPORTANT:

- **When digging at an angle, avoid striking the tracks with the bucket teeth.**
- **When lowering the boom, avoid sudden stops that may cause shock load damage to the machine.**
- **When digging a deep excavation, avoid striking the boom or bucket cylinder hoses against the ground.**
- **When operating the machine with the blade (if equipped) positioned towards the front, the bucket teeth may come in contact with the blade if you are not careful.**

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Shovel

Backhoe operation digs the ground using the bucket in a roll-in motion. On the other hand, face shovel operation digs the ground using the arm cylinder in a scraping motion.

WARNING: Take care not to hit the cab when rolling in the arm with the reversed-installed bucket.

IMPORTANT: If a bucket hook is mounted, take care not to hit the arm with the hook when rolling in the bucket.

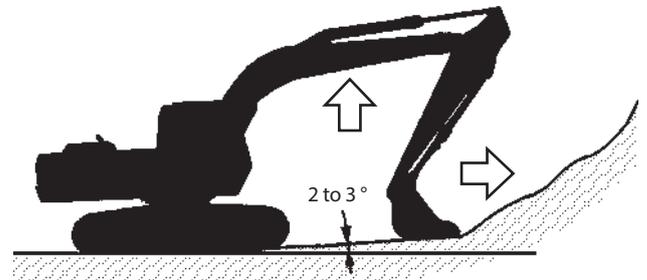
- For face shovel operation, dig the ground using the arm cylinder in a scraping motion.
- When underground water is expected, make a slope angle of 2 to 3° to drain this water as shown.

NOTE: Because of the hydraulic cylinder structure, digging force of the face shovel operation is smaller than the backhoe operation.



Watch out!
(Take care not to hit the cab with bucket)

MZX5-05-003



M104-05-020

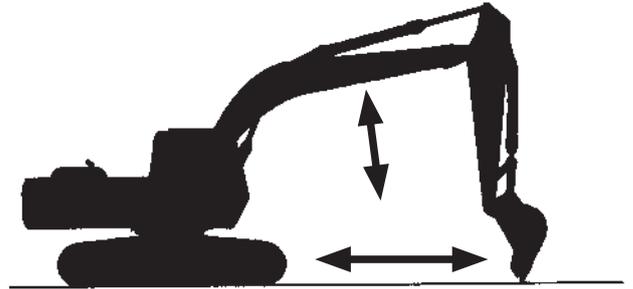
OPERATING THE MACHINE

Grading Operation

Operate the boom, arm, and the bucket in such a way so that the bucket teeth move horizontally, constantly keeping them perpendicular to the ground at the grading operation.

IMPORTANT: Do not pull or push dirt with the bucket when traveling. Excess force will be applied on each part, and the machine may be damaged.

1. When grading from the forward to the backward, slowly roll in the arm while slightly raising the boom. As soon as the arm passes the vertical position, slowly lower the boom so that the bucket can be horizontally moved.
2. When grading from the backward to the forward, operate the arm and bucket rolled back as described in step 1.
3. Do the slope finishing work in the same procedure as described in steps 1 and 2.



M104-05-017

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Avoid Driving Bucket Teeth into Ground

⚠ WARNING: If the bucket teeth are forcedly driven into the ground, crushed material may spatter, possibly resulting in injury of the operator and/or co-workers around the machine. Furthermore, the service lifetimes of all front attachment parts may be shortened.

If the bucket teeth are forcedly driven into the ground, the service lifetime of all front attachment parts (especially the bucket) may be severely shortened. When excavating tightly fastened gravelly soil, use the bucket digging out force. Operate the boom, arm, and bucket simultaneously so that the bucket teeth can be effectively penetrated into the excavation surface. Carefully operate the machine to prevent crushed material from spattering, possibly resulting in injury to the operator and/or co-workers around the machine.

Avoid Striking With Bucket

⚠ WARNING: The bucket bottom is curved. Therefore, hammering or piling work with the bucket is very hazardous. In addition, damage to the bucket and the front attachment parts may result.

Hammering or piling work with the bucket may create hazardous situations. Never attempt to perform hammering or piling work with the bucket. Damage to the bucket and the front attachment parts may also result.

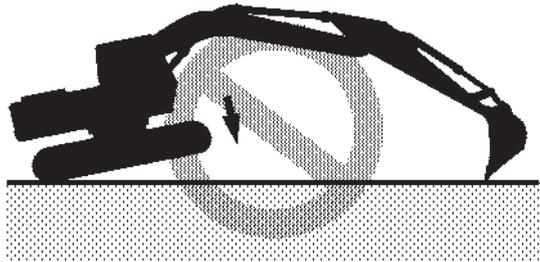
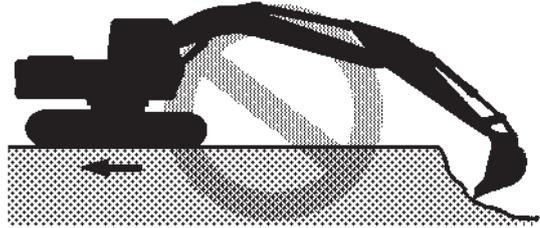


MZX5-05-004

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Avoid Abusive Operation

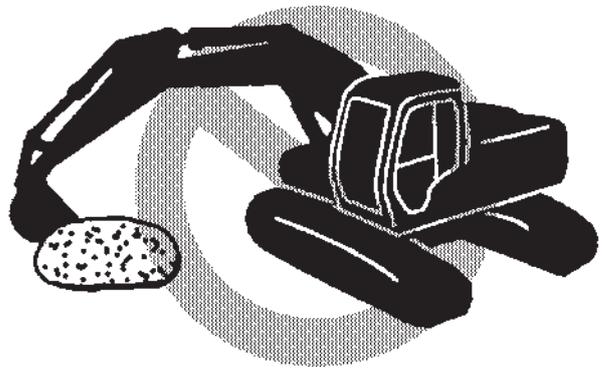
Do not use travel while thrusting the bucket teeth into the ground and do not raise rear of the machine to use the machine's weight as additional digging force. Severe machine damage may result.



MZX5-05-005

Avoid Side Load the Bucket

Do not side load the bucket. For example, do not swing the bucket to level material or do not strike objects from the side with the bucket. Doing so may damage the front attachment and the swing system.



MZX5-05-006

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Avoid Hitting Blade with Front-End Attachment

When operating the machine with the blade positioned towards the front, the bucket or boom cylinder may come into contact with the blade if you are not careful. Be sure to prevent this from happening.



MDED-05-003



MDED-05-004

Avoid Hitting Blade with Bucket

When crowding the arm into a traveling or transporting position, be careful not to let the bucket hit the blade.



MDED-05-004

Avoid Striking the Blade into a Rock

Do not attempt to strike large rocks with the blade, as doing so will damage the blade and the blade cylinders, shortening their operating lives.



MDED-05-005

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Do Not Use Wide Track Shoes on Rough Ground.

Never use wide track shoes on rough ground such as rocks, sand or gravel. Wide track shoes are designed for soft ground.

Failure to do so may result in shoe bending and/or shoe bolt loosening, and may damage other undercarriage components such as track link and rollers.

(Refer to the "Shoe Types and Applications" in the Specifications section.)

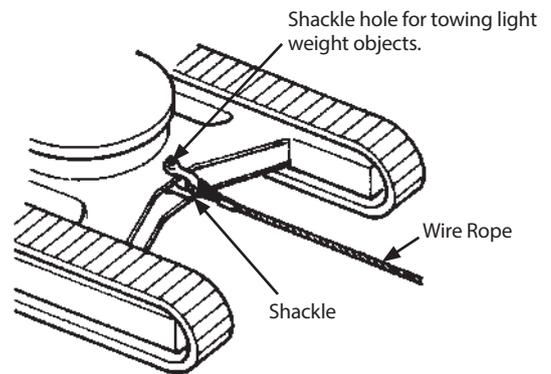
OPERATING THE MACHINE

Shackle Hole Usage

A shackle hole is provided on the track frame to tow light weight objects as specified below.

IMPORTANT: Be sure to conform to the restrictions and precautions stated below when towing a light weight object using the shackle hole provided on the track frame. The track frame and/or the shackle hole may be damaged otherwise.

- The maximum drawbar pull: 19610 N (2000 kgf, 4400 lbf)
- Be sure to use a shackle.
- Keep the tow line horizontal, straight, and parallel to the tracks.
- Select the slow travel mode. Slowly drive the machine when towing.



M104-05-011

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Lifting

⚠ WARNING: When you use machine for lifting, be sure to comply with all local regulations. Cables, straps, or ropes can break, causing serious injury. Do not use damaged chains, frayed cables, slings, straps, or ropes to crane.

Never move the load suddenly. Never move load over a person's head. Do not allow any persons near load.

Keep all persons away from wire-rope-attached load, lifted or sitting on the ground unless it is securely sitting on blocks or on the ground.

Position upperstructure so that the travel motors are at the rear.

Do not attach sling/chain to the bucket teeth.

- Secure sling/chain tightly to the load being lifted. Wear gloves when securing sling/chain.
 - Fasten sling/chain to bucket loop bucket hook or bucket pin, with the bucket roll-in and arm roll-in.
 - Coordinate hand signals with your signal man before starting.
 - Be aware of the location of all persons in the working area.
 - Attach a hand line to load and make sure person holding it is well away from load.
 - Before lifting, test your load.
1. Park your machine close to load.
 2. Attach load to the machine.
 3. Raise load 50 mm (2 in) above the ground.
 4. Swing the load all the way to one side.
 5. While keeping load close to the ground, move it away from machine.
 6. If there is any indication of reduced stability of your machine, lower load to the ground.
- Lift load only as high as necessary.



SA-014

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Emergency Boom Lowering Procedure

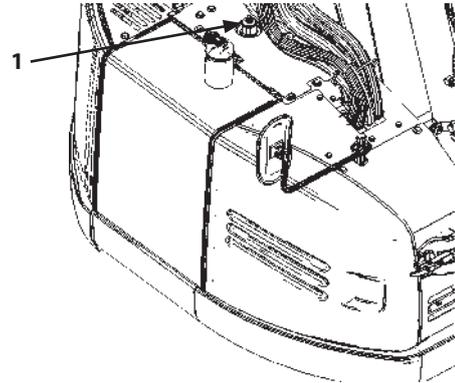
⚠ WARNING: Prevent personal injury. Confirm that no one is under the front attachment before starting the procedure below.

If the engine stalls and cannot be restarted, lower the boom to lower the bucket to the ground referring to the emergency boom lowering procedure stated below.

1. Be sure to bleed air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing air bleed valve (1) on the hydraulic oil tank.

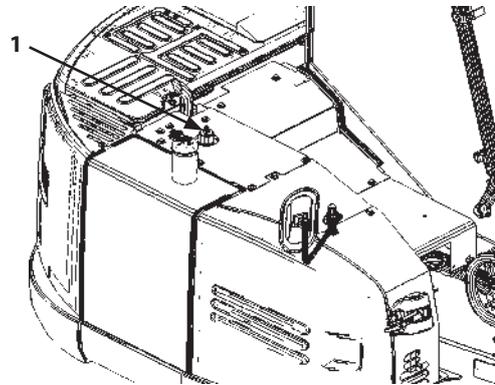
⚠ WARNING: Be sure to work only after oil temperature is low or before operation. Failure to do so may allow high temperature oil to spray, possibly causing severe burns.

2. Lower the boom in the procedures on the next page.



ZX75US-5N

MDED-05-008



ZX85USB-5N

MDED-05-009

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Releasing Hose Rupture Valve (Machine Equipped with Hose Rupture Valve)

The hose rupture valve prevents sudden falling of the front attachment in the event of hose breaks during machine operation. It is located on the rod side of the arm cylinder and bottom side of the boom cylinder.

⚠ WARNING:

- **Never attempt to operate the hose rupture valve unless emergency. Failure to do so may result in serious accident.**
- **Loosen the hose rupture valve slowly. If adjustment screw (4) is loosened rapidly, the arm or boom may lower rapidly.**

To lower the front attachment in case of emergency such as a fault is generated while raising the front attachment, operate the valve by following the procedure given below.

1. Remove cap (1) from the valve.
2. Put the matching marks on plug (2), lock nut (3) and adjustment screw (4) for assembling.
3. Loosen lock nut (3). Securely tighten adjustment screw (4).

IMPORTANT: Note turn number of the adjustment screw. It is used for returning the adjustment screw to its original state.

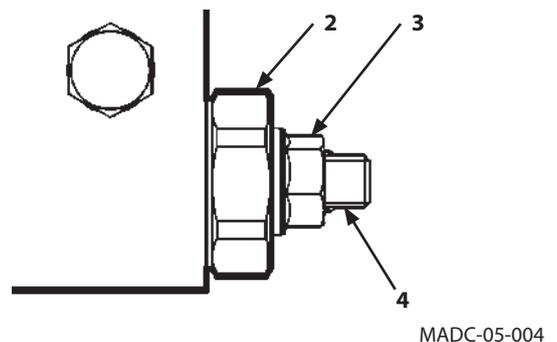
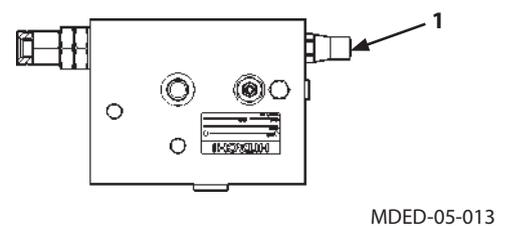
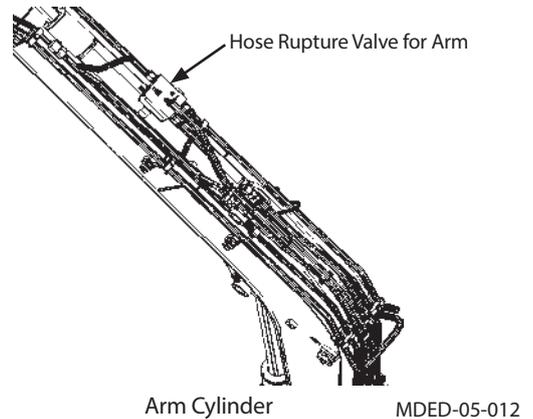
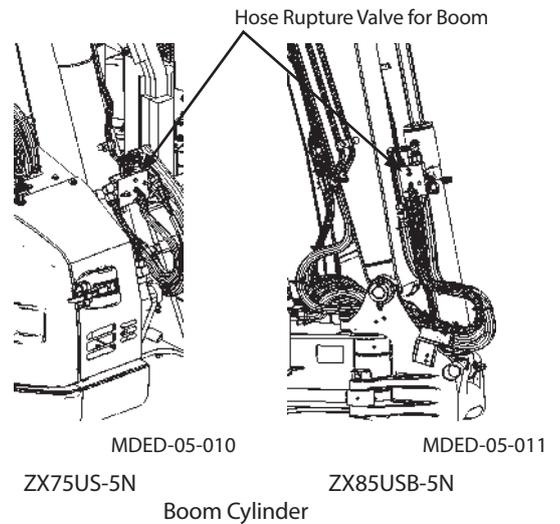
4. Lower the front attachment by operating the emergency valve on the control valve.

After checking that the front attachment is completely lowered, return the emergency valve to its original state.

(Refer to "Releasing Emergency Valve" on the next page.)

5. Return adjustment screw (4), lock nut (3), plug (2) and cap (1) of the hose rupture valve to their original state.

Tightening torque: 10 to 14 N (1 to 1.4 kgf·m)



OPERATING THE MACHINE

Releasing Emergency Valve

IMPORTANT: Never loosen screw (2) more than 2 turns. Screw (2) may come off.

1. Loosen lock nut (1). Loosen screw (2) one half of a turn. The boom lowering speed can be somewhat adjusted by loosening screw (2) more.

IMPORTANT: Excessive leakage may result if the screw and the lock nut are tightened insufficiently. Be sure to retighten the screw and the lock nut to specifications.

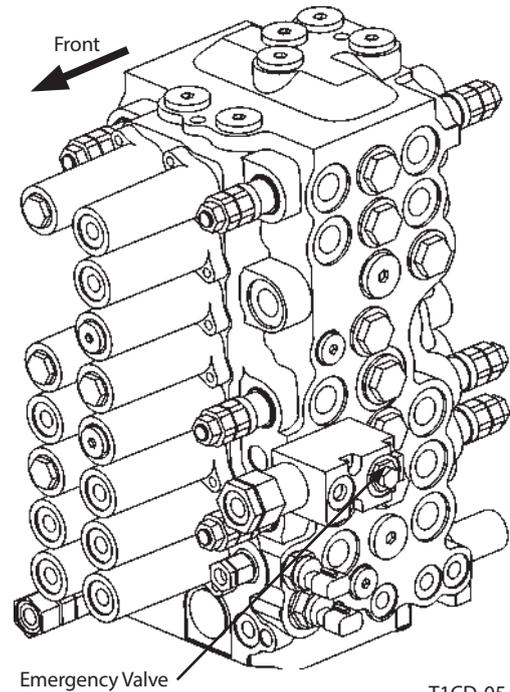
2. After the boom is lowered, tighten screw (2) and tighten lock nut (1) to the specifications below.

Locknut (1)

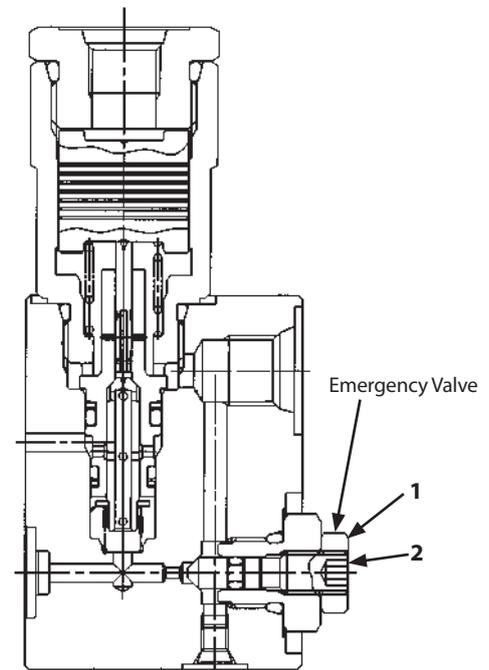
Tightening Torque: 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.4 lbf·ft)

Screw (2)

Tightening Torque: 7 N·m (0.7 kgf·m, 5.0 lbf·ft)



T1CD-05-04-002



T1CD-05-04-001

OPERATING THE MACHINE

Precautions for After Operations

- After finishing the day's operation, drive the machine to a firm, level ground where no possibility of falling stones, ground collapse, or floods are present.
(Refer to the group for "PARKING MACHINE" in the DRIVING MACHINE section.)
- Fully refill the fuel in the fuel tank.
- Clean the machine.

TRANSPORTING

Transporting by Road

When transporting the machine on public roads, be sure to first understand and follow all local regulations.

- When transporting the machine using a trailer, check the width, height, length and weight of the trailer with the machine loaded. Note that transporting weight and dimensions may vary depending on the type of shoe or front attachments installed.
- Investigate beforehand the conditions of the route to be traveled, such as dimensional limits, weight limits, and traffic regulations.

In some cases, getting the permission from the local authority concerned or disassembling the machine to bring it within dimensional limits or weight limits of local regulations may become necessary.

Notify the nearest dealer that you are transporting the unit.



M1V1-06-001

TRANSPORTING

Loading/Unloading on a Trailer

Always load and unload the machine on a firm, level surface.

⚠ WARNING: Be sure to use a loading dock or a ramp for loading/unloading. Never load or unload the machine onto or off a truck or trailer using the front attachment functions when driving up or down the ramp.

Ramp/Loading Dock:

1. Before loading, thoroughly clean the ramps, loading dock and flatbed. Dirty ramps, loading docks, and flatbeds with oil, mud, or ice on them are slippery and dangerous.
2. Place blocks against the truck and trailer wheels while using a ramp or loading dock.
3. Ramps must be sufficient in width, length, and strength. Be sure that the incline of the ramp is less than 15 degrees.
4. Loading docks must be sufficient in width and strength to support the machine and have an incline of less than 15 degrees.
5. When loading the machine equipped with pat crawler or rubber pad shoes, take sufficient care not to allow the machine to slip since the surface of the rubber pad shoe is flat.

Load the machine only after removing soil or clay adhered to the machine.

6. When transporting the machine equipped with a blade, take care not to hit the blade.

TRANSPORTING

Loading/Unloading

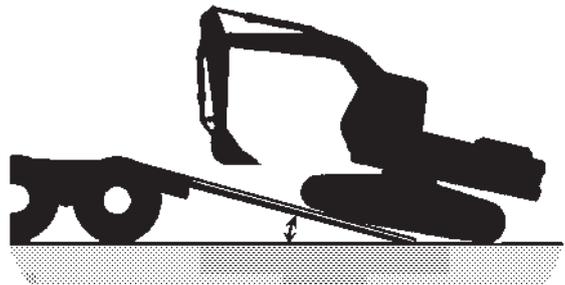
WARNING:

- Always turn the auto-idle switch OFF when loading or unloading the machine. In the auto-idle mode, speed may automatically increase.
- Always select the slow speed mode with the travel mode switch.
- Never steer while driving up or down a ramp as it is extremely dangerous and may cause the machine to turnover. NEVER attempt to change directions whilst positioned on the ramp. If repositioning is necessary, first move back to the ground or flatbed, modify traveling direction, and begin to drive again.
- The top end of the ramp where it meets the flatbed is a sudden bump. Take care when traveling over it as the balance may be lost.
- If the front attachment is not fitted, reverse onto the trailer.
- Extreme care must be taken when swinging the upper structure when the machine is on the trailer flatbed. If the front attachment is fitted, swing slowly with the arm fully roll-in underneath the boom being careful not to lose the balance of the machine.

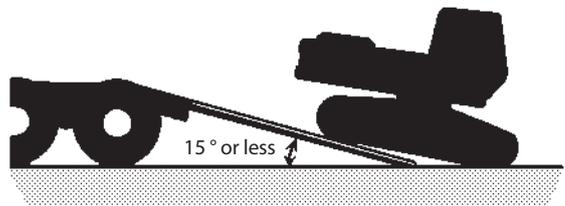
Loading

If the front attachment is fitted, load with the front faced towards the front, if the front attachment is not fitted, reverse onto the trailer.

1. Load the machine so that the centerline of the machine aligns with the centerline of the trailer flatbed.
2. Drive the machine onto the ramp slowly.



M1G6-06-002

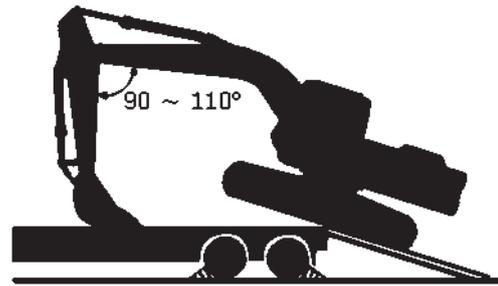


M107-06-018

TRANSPORTING

3. When the front attachment is fitted

- 3.1 Determine a position for the bucket in line with the trailer. Adjust the angle of the boom and the arm at 90 to 110°.
 - 3.2 Lower the bucket onto to the deck of the trailer before the unit passes over the end of the ramp for support.
 - 3.3 Move the machine as illustrated right. And then, slowly rotate the upperstructure 180° while keeping the arm fully rolled in.
 - 3.4 Reverse the machine to the specified position.
 - 3.5 Rest the front attachment on supports such as wooden blocks placed on the trailer flatbed. Also lower the blade onto the deck at this time (if fitted).
4. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
 5. Place the pilot control shut-off lever in the LOCK position.
 6. Close cab windows, roof vent and door, and cover the exhaust opening, to prevent entry of wind and water. Place a cover over the exhaust outlet. Lock all doors, covers and caps if they have a lock.
 7. House all mirrors and the radio antenna away correctly.



M107-06-012



MDED-06-001

⚠ CAUTION: In cold weather, be sure to warm up the machine before loading or unloading it.



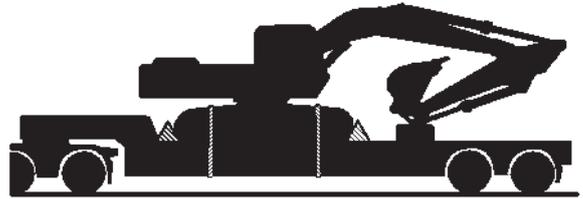
M107-06-013

TRANSPORTING

Fastening Machine for Transporting

⚠ WARNING: Fasten the machine frame to the deck securely with chains and cables. While traveling, loads may shake around, move forward or backward or to the sides.

1. Place cog stoppers or blocks in front of and behind the tracks to help secure the unit.
2. Fasten each corner of the machine and front attachment to the trailer with appropriate strength of chains or cables.



M1V1-06-001

TRANSPORTING

Unloading

WARNING:

- Always turn the auto-idle switch OFF when loading or unloading the machine. In the auto-idle mode, speed may automatically increase.
- Always select the slow speed mode with the travel mode switch.
- Never steer while driving up or down a ramp as it is extremely dangerous and may cause the machine to turnover. NEVER attempt to change directions whilst positioned on the ramp. If repositioning is necessary, first move back to the ground or flatbed, modify traveling direction, and begin to drive again.
- The top end of the ramp where it meets the flatbed is a sudden bump. Take care when traveling over it as the balance may be lost.
- If the front attachment is not fitted, reverse on the trailer.
- Extreme care must be taken when swinging the upper structure when the machine is on the trailer flatbed. If the front attachment is fitted, swing slowly with the arm fully roll-in underneath the boom being careful not to lose the balance of the machine.

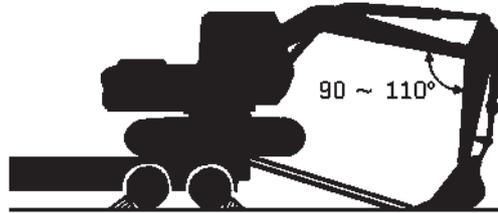
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the angle of the boom and the arm is kept between 90 to 110 ° when unloading the unit.

Damage to the unit is possible if the arm is kept in a suspended state during unloading.

1. Travel extremely slowly with the bucket on the ground and the angle of the arm and the boom kept at between 90 to 110 ° when moving from the edge of the trailer onto the ramp.

IMPORTANT: When driving the machine over the ramp, do not allow the machine to hit the ground too hard with the arm. Possible damage to the hydraulic cylinders may result.

2. The bucket must be on the ground before the machine begins to tip forward.
3. As the machine moves forward, raise the boom and extend the arm until the machine is completely off the ramp.



M107-06-014



M107-06-015

TRANSPORTING

Lifting Machine



WARNING:

- **Use lifting cables and other lifting tools being free from any damage and/or aging, and having sufficient strength.**
- **Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer for correct lifting procedures, and the size and types of lifting cable and tools.**
- **Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position so that the machine does not accidentally move while being lifted.**
- **Incorrect lifting procedure and/or incorrect wire rope attachment will cause the machine to move (shift) while being lifted, resulting in machine damage and/or personal injury.**
- **Do not lift the machine quickly. Excessive load will be applied to the lifting wire ropes and/or lifting tools, possibly causing them to break.**
- **Do not allow anyone to come close to or under the lifted machine.**
- **The indicated gravity center is for the standard specification machine. The gravity center will vary depending on the kinds of attachments and/or optional equipment to be installed or their position to be taken. Therefore, take care not to lose the balance of the machine while lifting.**

TRANSPORTING

Wire Rope Length while lifting the Machine, Wire Rope Load Bearing Values

The values in this chart are not a guarantee of safety.
When lifting, use this as a reference.

Wire rope length and operating weight

	Length of Wire Rope 1	Length of Wire Rope 2	Length of Wire Rope 3	Length of scale	Operating Weight
	L1	L2	L3	L4	W
UNIT	mm	mm	mm	mm	ton
ZX75US-5N	8406	5123	8509	3200	7.96
ZX85USB-5N	8265	5130	8469	3200	8.42

Load applied to wire rope

	Tension of Wire Rope 1	Tension of Wire Rope 2	Tension of Wire Rope 3	Load on scale
	W5	W2	W6	W4
UNIT	t	t	t	t
ZX75US-5N	2.09	5.10	2.10	6.37
ZX85USB-5N	2.22	5.38	2.24	6.72

Based on the above, working load of each wire rope using a safety factor of 6.

	Working load of Wire Rope 1	Working load of Wire Rope 2	Working load of Wire Rope 3	Working load applied on scale
	6*W5	6*W2	6*W6	6*W4
UNIT	t	t	t	t
ZX75US-5N	12.55	30.58	12.61	38.21
ZX85USB-5N	13.30	32.30	13.42	40.29

 **NOTE:** Values marked* are calculated using the operating weight.

When lifting the machine, use a wire rope and scale able to hold the load mentioned above.

MAINTENANCE

Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures

Learn how to service your machine correctly. Follow the correct maintenance and inspection procedures shown in this manual.

Inspect machine daily before starting.

- Check controls and instruments.
- Check coolant, fuel and oil levels.
- Check for leaks, kinked, frayed or damaged hoses and lines.
- Walk around machine checking general appearance, noise, heat, etc.
- Check for loose or missing parts.

If there is any problem with your machine, repair it before operating or contact your authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- **Use only recommended fuel and lubricants.**
- **Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi parts. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death and/or machine breakdown.**
- **Failure to use recommended fuel, lubricants, and genuine Hitachi parts will result in loss of Hitachi product warranty.**
- **Never adjust engine governor or hydraulic system relief valve.**
- **Protect electrical parts from water and steam.**
- **Never disassemble electrical components such as main controller, sensors, etc.**
- **Never adjust parts of engine fuel system or hydraulic equipment.**
- **Using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector. It also affects the engine and muffler filter parts, leading to malfunction.**
- **Use Hitachi genuine high performance filter.**



SA-005

MAINTENANCE

- **Body Information Controller**

This machine provides a body information controller that stores machine operation information for preventive maintenance.

When maintaining the machine, our authorized service man may download the stored information.

Consult with your nearest Hitachi dealer for detailed function of this device.

- **Communication Terminal Operation**

It is not necessary to check or operate the communication terminal however if any abnormality is found, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

Before installing any covering attachment such as a head guard, consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

Never spray water on the communication terminal and the wirings.

- **Inquire on the proper way to recycle or dispose of oil, fuel, coolant, filters, batteries and other waste from your local environmental or recycling center, or from your authorized dealer.**

MAINTENANCE

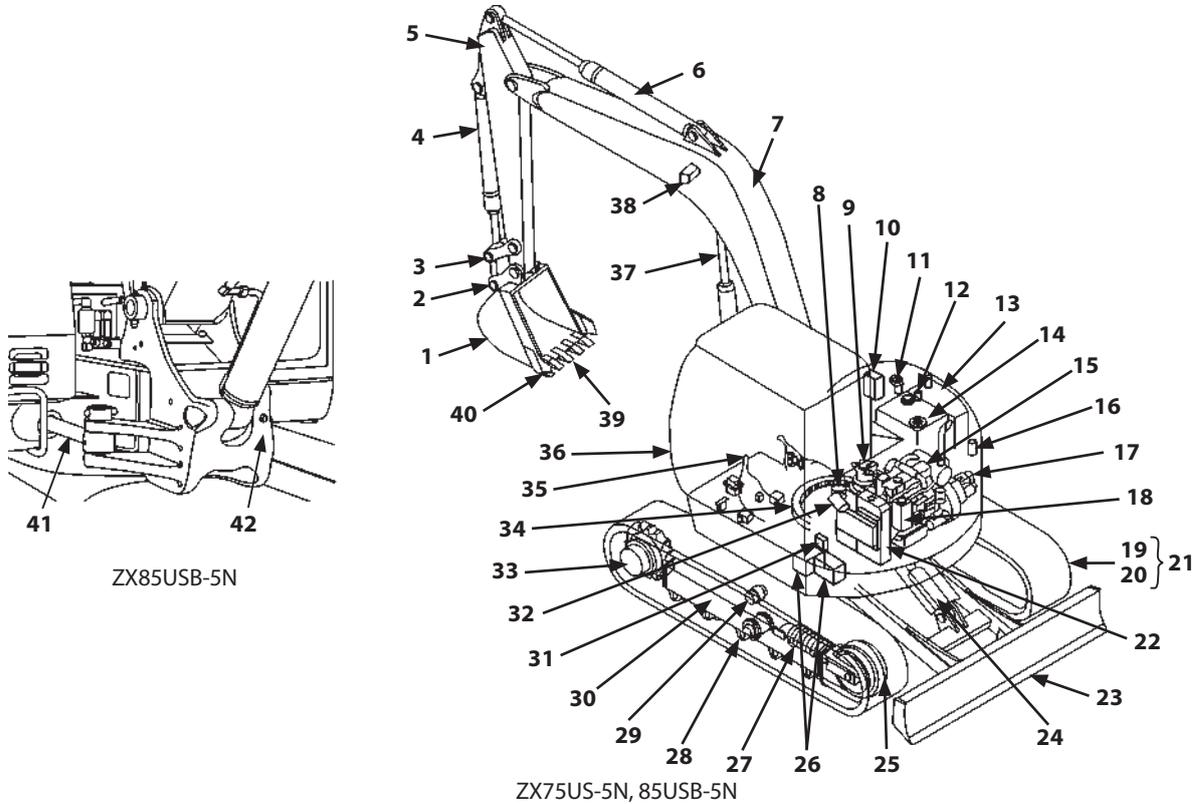
Check the Hour Meter Regularly

Refer to the List of Check and Maintenance for information about lubricants, check and adjustment intervals. The maintenance guide table is affixed in the back of the tool box cover. Refer to page 7-5.

Check and maintenance intervals shown in this manual are those for the machines to be operated under normal conditions. In case the machine is operated under more severe conditions, shorten the intervals.

MAINTENANCE

Layout



M1P1-07-049

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1- Bucket | 13- Fuel Tank | 24- Blade Cylinder | 36- Cab |
| 2- Link A | 14- Hydraulic Oil Tank | 25- Front Idler | 37- Boom Cylinder |
| 3- Link B | 15- Engine | 26- Battery | 38- Work Light |
| 4- Bucket Cylinder | 16- Engine Oil Filter | 27- Track Adjuster | 39- Tooth |
| 5- Arm | 17- Pump | 28- Lower Roller | 40- Side Cutter |
| 6- Arm Cylinder | 18- Reserve Tank | 29- Upper Roller | 41- Boom Swing Cylinder |
| 7- Boom | 19- Track Link | 30- Track Frame | 42- Boom Swing Post |
| 8- Center Joint | 20- Shoe | 31- Washer Tank | |
| 9- Swing Reduction Gear | 21- Track | 32- Air Cleaner | |
| 10- Control Valve | 22- Radiator, Oil Cooler, Inter Cooler | 33- Travel Device | |
| 11- Pilot Filter | 23- Blade | 34- Swing Bearing | |
| 12- Swing Drain Filter* | | 35- Control Lever | |

*Serial No.

ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522

ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Guide Table

The maintenance guide table is affixed to the right side of the cab (outside). Lubricate and/or service the parts at the intervals as instructed in the table so that all necessary maintenance can be performed regularly.

- **Symbol Marks**
The following marks are used in the maintenance guide table.

	Grease (Front Joint Pin, Swing Bearing, Swing Gear)		Hydraulic oil filters (Pilot Filter, Swing Drain Filter Hydraulic Oil Tank Filter, Suction Filter)
	Gear Oil (Travel Reduction Device)		Air Cleaner Element
	Engine Oil		Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)
	Engine Oil Filter		Fuel Filter (Fuel Main Filter, Pre-Filter)
	Hydraulic Oil		

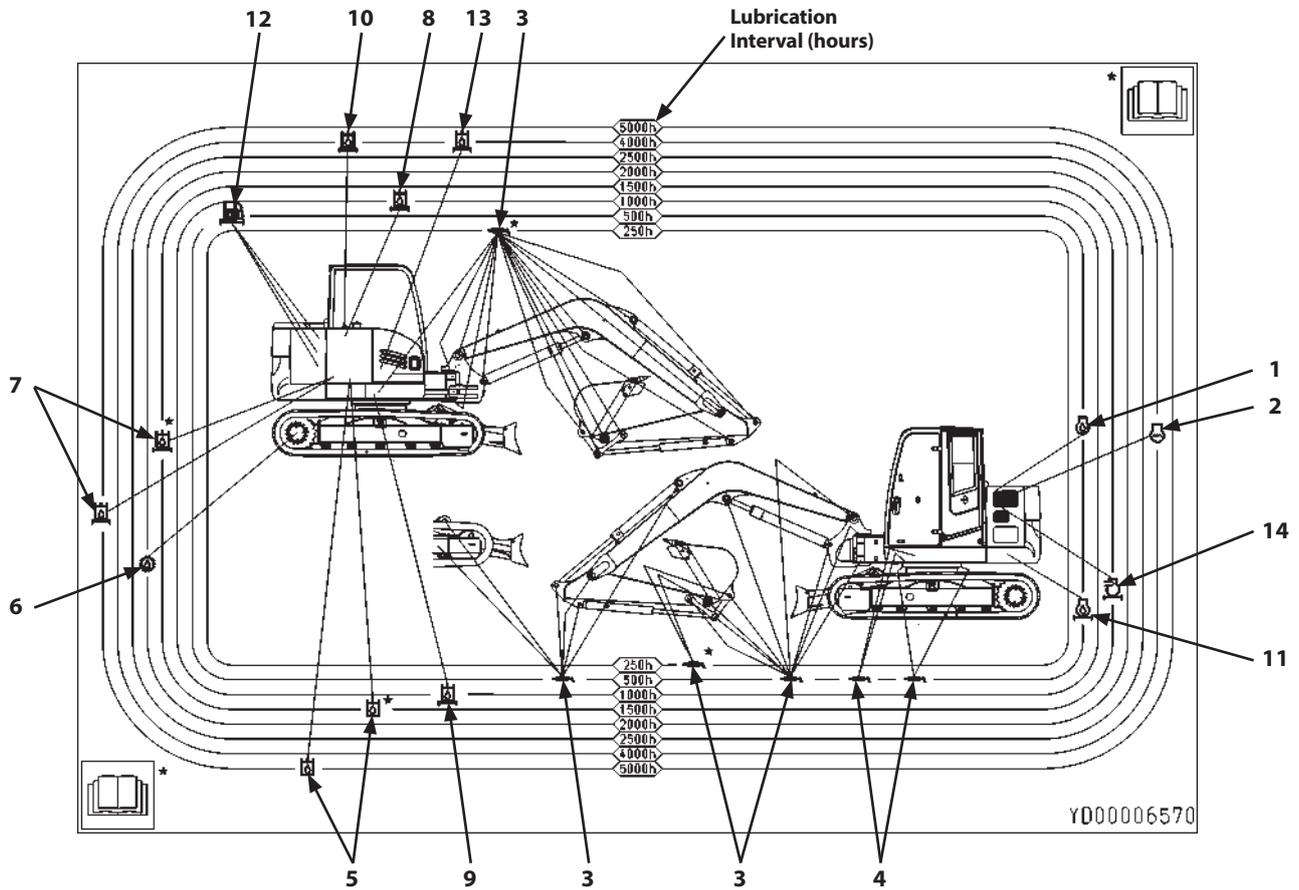
MAINTENANCE

• Maintenance Guide Table

Serial Number:

ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522

ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111



SSYD00006750-2

	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Engine Oil	7-24	8	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Full Flow)	7-37
2	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-60	9	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot)	7-40
3	Grease	7-18	10	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Air Breather)	7-42
4	Grease	7-19	11	Engine Oil Filter	7-24
5	Hydraulic Oil	7-34	12	Fuel Filter (Main/Pre)	7-52, 53
6	Gear Oil (Travel Device)	7-27	13	Swing Drain Filter	7-41
7	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Suction)	7-34	14	Air Cleaner Element	7-55

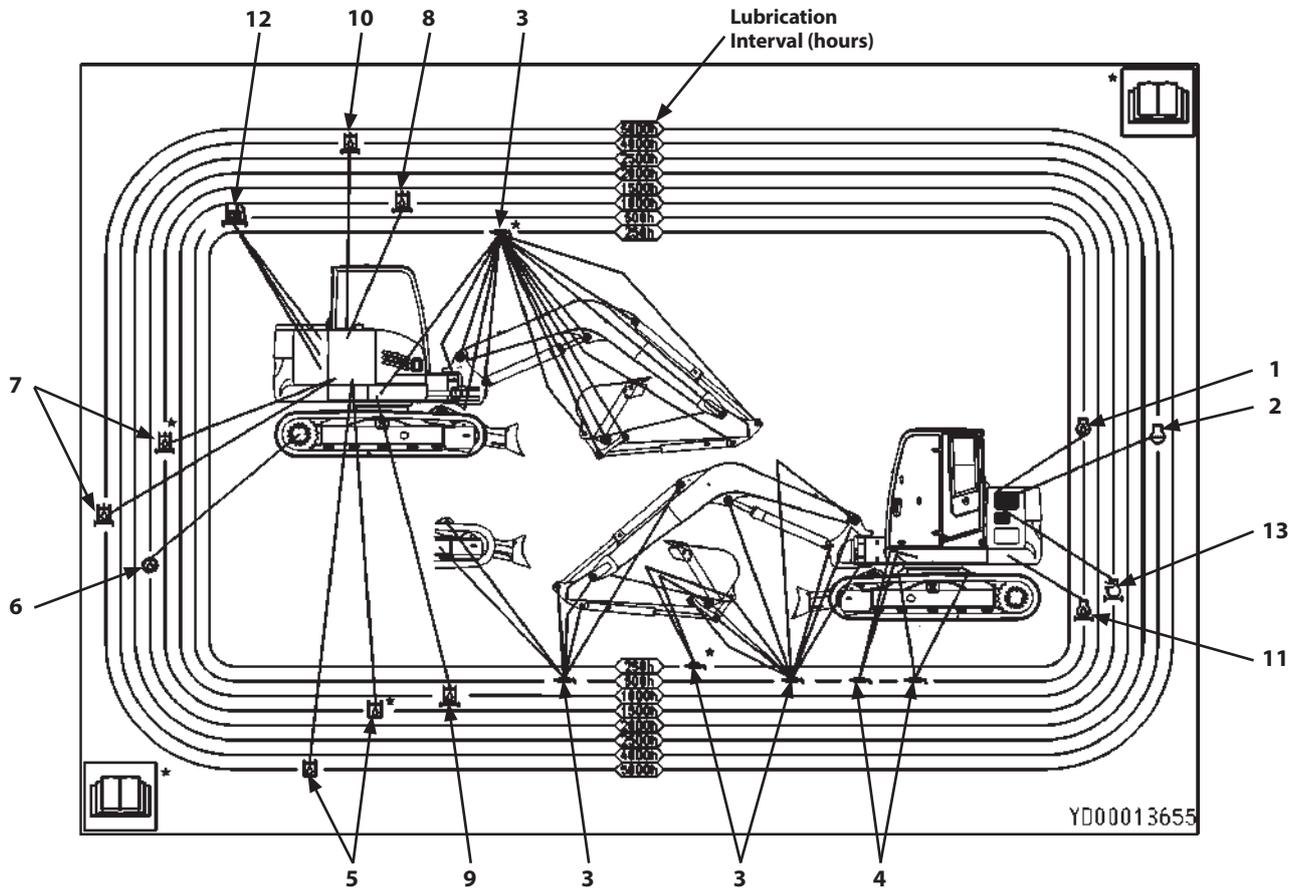
MAINTENANCE

• Maintenance Guide Table

Serial Number:

ZX75US-5N 017523 and up

ZX85USB-5N 022112 and up



SSYD00013655

	Item	Page		Item	Page
1	Engine Oil	7-24	8	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Full Flow)	7-37
2	Coolant (Long-Life Coolant)	7-60	9	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Pilot)	7-40
3	Grease	7-18	10	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Air Breather)	7-42
4	Grease	7-19	11	Engine Oil Filter	7-24
5	Hydraulic Oil	7-34	12	Fuel Filter (Main/Pre)	7-52, 53
6	Gear Oil (Travel Device)	7-27	13	Air Cleaner Element	7-55
7	Hydraulic Oil Filter (Suction)	7-34			

MAINTENANCE

Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance

Except in special cases, park the machine by following the procedure before servicing the machine.

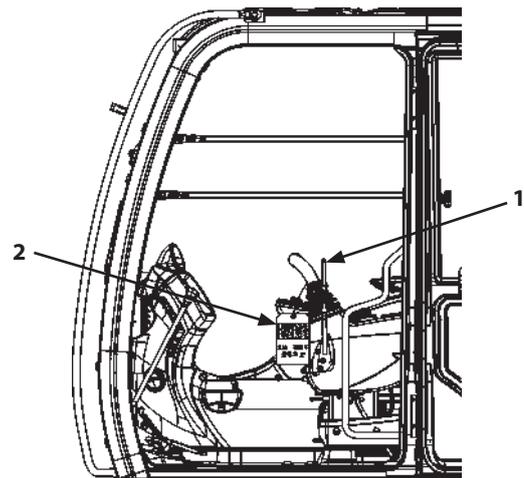
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Turn the auto-idle switch OFF.
4. Turn the engine control dial to the slow idle position and run the engine for 5 minutes to cool the engine.
5. Turn the key switch OFF to stop the engine. Remove the key. Be sure to place pilot control shut-off lever (1) to the LOCK position.
6. After putting a tag (2) for "Under Serving" on the easy-to-see cab door or control lever, begin the work.

⚠ WARNING: Never attempt to maintain the machine when the engine is running in order to prevent the accident. If maintenance work while engine running is unavoidable, strictly comply with the following items.

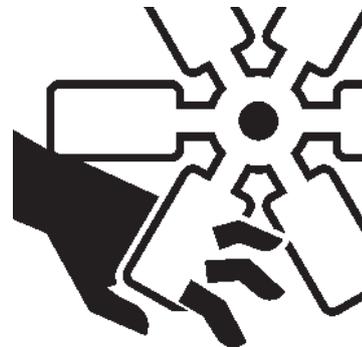
- One person should take the operator's seat to be ready to stop the engine any time while communicating with other workers.
- When working around moving parts is unavoidable, pay special attention to ensure that hands, feet, and clothing do not become entangled.
- If parts or tools are dropped or inserted into the fan or the belt, they may fly off or be cut off. Do not drop or insert parts and tools into the moving parts.
- Move pilot control shut-off lever (1) to LOCK position so that the front attachment will not move.
- Never touch the control levers and pedals. If operating the control levers or pedals is unavoidable, signal co-workers to evacuate to safer place.



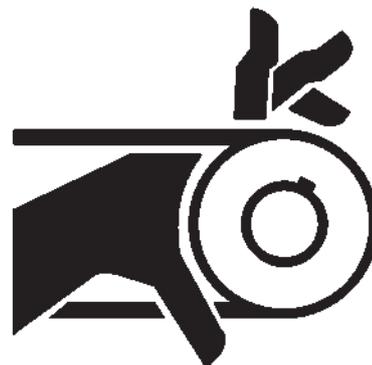
M104-07-021



MDAA-07-028



SA-2294



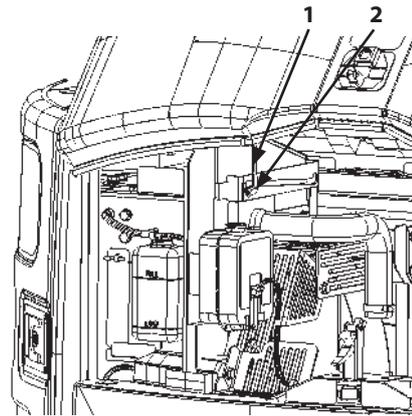
SA-026

MAINTENANCE

Hood and Access Covers

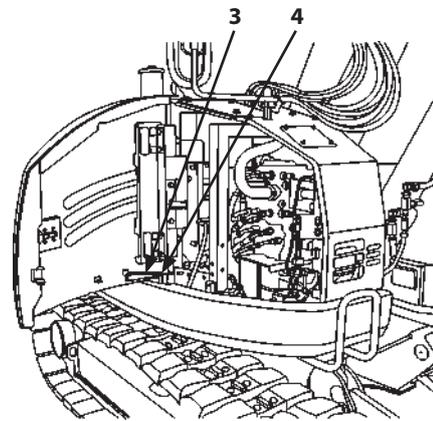
⚠ WARNING:

- Do not keep the hood and access covers open when the machine is parked on a slope, or while the wind is blowing hard. The hood or access covers may close accidentally, possibly resulting in personal injury.
- When opening or closing the hood and access covers, take extra care not to catch fingers between the base machine and the hood or access covers.
- Holding the handle on the access cover, raise the cover until rod (1) is secured with catch (2).
- After opening the right front cover, right rear cover, and left cover, be sure to insert rod (3) into frame lock hole (4) to hold the cover.
- When opening the rear left cover, open the front left cover first. Then, pull to open the rear left cover as illustrated.



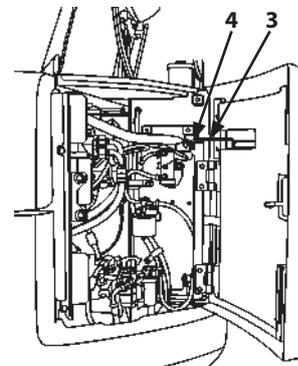
Engine Cover

MDED-07-003



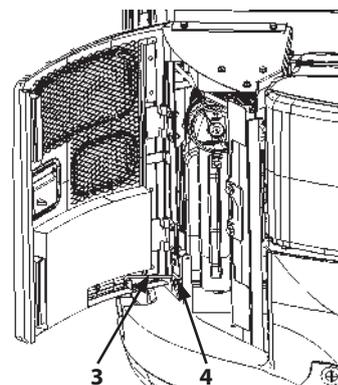
Front Right Cover

M1P1-07-008



Rear Right Cover

M1P1-07-003



Left Cover

MDED-07-004

MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Guide

A. Greasing

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page		
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000			
1.	Front Joint Pins	Bucket and Link Pins	8	★			★★					7-18	
		Swing Post	ZX85USB-5N	4				★★					7-19
		Others		8	★			★★					7-19
2.	Swing Bearing		2									7-20	
3.	Swing Internal Gear		1					★★★				7-21	
4.	Blade Joint Pins		4									7-22	

★ : In case excavations are performed in water, grease the pin after operation is complete.

★★ : 250 hours for only first time.

★★★ : Check and add grease if necessary.

IMPORTANT:

- Grease bucket and link pivots every day until break-in operation (50 hours) is complete.
- When a bucket which does not have clearance adjustment mechanism such as slope-finishing bucket or V-type bucket, or a genuine Hitachi hoe bucket before EX-5 model, or an attachment other than genuine Hitachi bucket is used, grease two pins every 250 hours.

B. Engine

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page	
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000		
1.	Engine Oil	Check Oil Level	1									7-23
2.	Engine Oil	Change	11.6 L (3.1 US gal)									7-24
3.	Engine Oil Filter	Replace	1									7-24

C. Transmission

Parts			Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page	
				8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000		
1.	Travel Device	Check Oil Level	2									7-26
		Change	1.2 L×2 (1.3 US qt×2)									

MAINTENANCE

D. Hydraulic System

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)									Page	
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	1500	2500	4000		5000
1.	Check Hydraulic Oil Level	1											7-32
2.	Drain Hydraulic Oil Tank Sump	1											7-33
3.	Change Hydraulic Oil	100 L (26.4 US gal)							★	★		★	7-34
4.	Clean Suction Filter	1	When changing hydraulic oil									7-34	
5.	Replace Full-Flow Filter	Std. Model	1						★				7-37
		Demolition and logging work	1	*1									7-38
6.	Replace Pilot Oil Filter	1											7-40
7.	Replace Swing Drain Filter *2	1											7-41
8.	Replace Air Breather Element	1											7-42
9.	Check Hoses and Lines	for leaks	–										7-43
		for cracks, bend, etc.	–										7-43

 **NOTE:** ★ Changing interval differs according to the brand of hydraulic oil used, kind of filter element or average attachment operating availability. Refer to the "changing intervals of hydraulic oil and full flow filter element" on page 7-29.

*1 Replace every 300 hours.

*2 Serial No.

ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522

ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111

E. Fuel System

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page	
			8	50	100	250	500	1000		2000
1.	Check Fuel Level	1								7-47
2.	Drain Fuel Tank Sump	1	As required						7-49	
3.	Drain Fuel Pre-Filter	1								7-50
4.	Replace Fuel Main Filter Element	1								7-52
5.	Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element	1								7-53
6.	Check Fuel Hoses	for leaks, cracks	–							7-54
		for cracks, bend, etc.	–							7-54

F. Air Cleaner

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page	
			8	50	100	250	500	1000		2000
1.	Air Cleaner Outer Element	Clean	1	(or when indicator lit)			★		7-55	
		Replace	1	After cleaning 6 times or 1 year						7-55
2.	Air Cleaner Inner Element (Optional)	Replace	1	When outer element is replaced						7-55

★: Shorten the maintenance interval when the machine is operated in dusty areas.

MAINTENANCE

G. Cooling System

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page	
			8	50	100	250	500	1000		2000
1.	Check Coolant Level	1								7-58
2.	Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension	1		★★						7-59
3.	Change Coolant	9.5 L (2.5 US gal)	Twice a year *							7-60
4.	Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler Core	Outside	1							7-61
		Inside	1	When coolant is changed						7-61
5.	Clean Oil Cooler and Radiator Front Screen	1					★			7-61
6.	Clean Air Conditioner Condenser	1								7-61
7.	Clean Fuel Cooler Front Screen	1					★			7-61

★: Shorten the maintenance interval when the machine is operated in dusty areas.

★★: Maintenance required only during first time check.

*: When genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant is used, change every two years or 2000 operating hours, whichever comes first.

IMPORTANT:

- **Use soft water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water. Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %. If a coolant mixed with less than 30 % of Hitachi Long-Life Coolant is used, service life of the cooling parts may be shortened due to damage by freezing or corrosion of coolant system parts.**
- **If mineral-rich water is used for coolant, water stain or scale may build up inside the engine or radiator, causing overheat due to deterioration of coolant performance.**

H. Electrical System

Parts		Quantity	Interval (hours)						Page	
			8	50	100	250	500	1000		2000
1.	Battery	Check Electrolyte Level	2	Every month						7-64
		Check electrolyte specific gravity	2	Every month						7-65
2.	Replacing Fuses	Replace	–	As required						7-66

MAINTENANCE

I. Miscellaneous

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page		
			8	50	250	500	1000	1500	2000		3000	
1.	Check and Replace Bucket Teeth	–									7-69	
2.	Change Bucket	–	As required							7-71		
3.	Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel	–	As required							7-72		
4.	Adjust Bucket Linkage	1	As required							7-73		
5.	Remove Travel Levers	2	As required							7-74		
6.	Check and Replace Seat Belt	1		Every 3 years						7-74		
7.	Check Windshield Fluid Level	1	As required							7-75		
8.	Check Track Sag (Steel Crawler)	2								7-76		
9.	Check Track Sag (Rubber Crawler) (Optional)	2								7-79		
10.	Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter	Fresh Air Filter	Clean	1							7-82	
			Replace	1	After cleaning 6 times or so						7-82	
		Circulating Air Filter	Clean	1								7-83
			Replace	1	After cleaning 6 times or so						7-83	
11.	Check Air Conditioner	–								7-85		
12.	Clean Cab Floor	–	As required							7-87		
13.	Check, Clean and Function Check Injector	–							*	7-88		
14.	Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance	–					*			7-88		
15.	Measure Engine Compression Pressure	–					*			7-88		
16.	Check Starter and Alternator	–					*			7-88		
17.	Check, Clean and Function Check EGR Valve	–							*	7-88		
18.	Check Gas Damper	–	*As required							7-89		
19.	Check Crankcase Breather	–						*		7-89		
20.	Clean EGR Cooler	–						*		7-89		
21.	Check Intake Throttle Valve	–							*	7-89		
22.	Check Radiator Cap	–							*	7-89		
23.	Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts	–		★★						7-89		

★★: Maintenance required only during first time check.

 NOTE: * Contact your nearest Hitachi dealer for maintenance.

J. Muffler Filter

	Parts	Quantity	Interval (hours)							Page	
			8	50	100	250	500	1000	2000		3000
1.	Check and Clean Filter Element of Muffler Filter	1								*	7-99
2.	Check and Clean Muffler Filter	–	As required							7-99	

 NOTE: * Contact your nearest Hitachi dealer for maintenance.

MAINTENANCE

Periodic Replacement of Parts

To ensure safe operation, be sure to conduct periodic inspection of the machine. In addition, the parts listed below, if defective, may pose serious safety/fire hazards.

These parts may cause serious safety/fire hazards due to deterioration, wear, or fatigue being attributed to material aging or repeated operation. It is very difficult to gauge the extent of deterioration, fatigue, or weakening of the parts listed below simply by visual inspection alone. For this reason, replace these parts at the intervals shown in the table below. Consult your authorized dealer for correct replacement.

Periodic Replacement Parts		Replacement Intervals	
Engine	Fuel hose (Fuel tank to engine)	Every 2 years	
	Fuel hose (Engine, Fuel Cooler to Fuel Tank)	Every 2 years	
	Oil filter hose (Engine to oil filter)	Every 2 years	
	Heater hose (Heater to engine)	Every 2 years	
	Engine rubber vibration insulator	Every 5 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first	
	Pump coupling	Every 5 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first	
	Differential pressure hose (Differential sensor to differential pipe)	Every 3000 hours	
Hydraulic System	Base Machine	Pump suction hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Pump delivery hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Swing hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Travel high pressure hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
	Working Device	Boom cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Arm cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
		Bucket cylinder line hose	Every 2 years or 4000 hours whichever comes first
Seat Belt		Every 3 years	
Clear hatch (if equipped)		Every 5 years	

IMPORTANT:

- **Replace the clear hatch with a new one every 5 years even if undamaged. In case it was remarkably damaged or has received severe shock loads, replace it even if it has been not in use for 5 years.**
- **When cleaning the clear hatch, use a neutral detergent. If acidic or alkaline detergent is used, the clear hatch may become discolored or crack.**
- **Keep organic solvent away from the clear hatch. Failure to do so may cause the clear hatch to become discolored or crack.**

MAINTENANCE

Kind of Oils

Recommended Grease

Kind of Grease	Lithium Grease	
Application	Front Attachment Joint Pins, Swing Bearing, Swing Internal Gear	
Air Temp.	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	
Recommended Products	Hitachi Genuine Grease NLGI EP-2	
Alternative Products	Specification	NLGI 2 EP

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Genuine Greases are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for the machine hence we recommend to use Hitachi Genuine Greases.**
- **If you do not use Hitachi Genuine Greases, use grease conforming to EP-2. Otherwise, the machine may suffer damage.**
- **Do not use greases which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable grease may lead to damage which is excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.**
- **For details, contact your nearest authorized dealer.**

Recommended Engine Oil

Kind of Oil	Engine Oil	
Application	Engine Crank Case	
Air Temp.	-20 to 30 °C (-4 to 86 °F)	-15 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)
Recommended Products	Hitachi Genuine Engine Oil 10W-30 DH-2	Hitachi Genuine Engine Oil 15W-40 DH-2
Alternative Products	Viscosity	10W-30
	Specification	JASO DH-2

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Genuine Engine Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for the machine hence we recommend to use Hitachi Genuine Engine Oils.**
- **If you do not use Hitachi Genuine Engine Oil, use engine oil conforming to JASO DH-2. Otherwise, engine and muffler filter may suffer damage, or performance of engine and muffler filter may deteriorate.**
- **Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.**
- **For details, contact your nearest authorized dealer.**

MAINTENANCE

Recommended Oil

Application		Travel Reduction Gear
Kind of Oil		Gear Oil
Air Temp.		-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)
Recommended Products		Hitachi Gear Oil GL-4 90
Alternative Products	Specification	API GL-4

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Genuine Gear Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for the machine hence we recommend to use Hitachi Genuine Gear Oils.**
- **If you do not use Hitachi Genuine Gear Oil , use gear oil or engine oil conforming to specifications described above. Otherwise, the machine may suffer damage.**
- **Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.**
- **For details, contact your nearest authorized dealer.**

Recommended Hydraulic Oil

Kind of Lubricant	Hydraulic Oil	
Where to be applied	Hydraulic System	
Change Interval	5000 hours	1500 hours
Environmental Temp.	-20 to 40 °C (-4 to 104 °F)	
Recommended Products	Super EX 46HN	
Alternative Product	Hydraulic Oil meeting JCMAS HK VG46W	

 **NOTE:** A different interval of oil change may be required for Alternative Products. For details, contact your nearest authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- **Hitachi Genuine Hydraulic Oils are specially designed and tested to provide optimum performance for the machine hence we recommend to use Hitachi Genuine Hydraulic Oils.**
- **Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to damage which is excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.**
- **If you do not use Hitachi Genuine Hydraulic Oil, use hydraulic oil conforming to JCMAS HK VG46W. Otherwise, the machine may suffer damage. For the information of JCMAS HK VG46W, refer to JALOS website.**

MAINTENANCE

Recommended Oil Viscosity

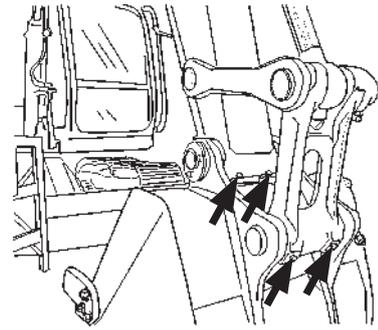
Application	Kind of Oil	Air Temperature [°C(°F)]								
		-30 (-22)	-20 (-4)	-10 (14)	0 (32)	10 (50)	20 (68)	30 (86)	40 (104)	
Engine Crank Case	Engine Oil									Super Wide DH-2 10W30
										Super Wide DH-2 15W40
Travel Reduction Device	Gear Oil									API GL 4
Hydraulic System	Hydraulic Oil									Super EX 46HN
Fuel Tank	Diesel Fuel									ASTM Grade No.2-DS15 ASTM Grade No.2-DS500
										ASTM Grade No.1-DS15 ASTM Grade No.1-DS500
Grease Nipple	Lithium Grease									SEP Grease
Radiator	Coolant									Hitachi Long Life Coolant

MAINTENANCE

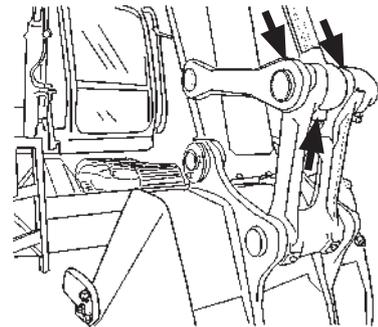
A. Greasing

- 1** Front Joint Pins
--- every 500 hours

Lubricate all fittings shown in the figure.

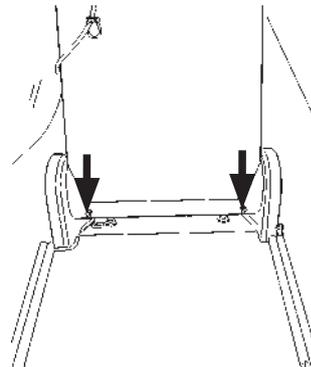


MDED-07-032



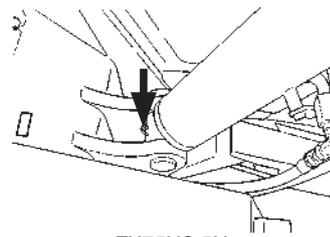
MDED-07-032

- Boom Foot



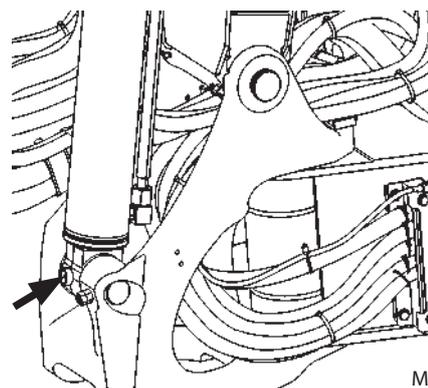
MDED-07-033

- Boom Cylinder Bottom Side



ZX75US-5N

MDED-07-034

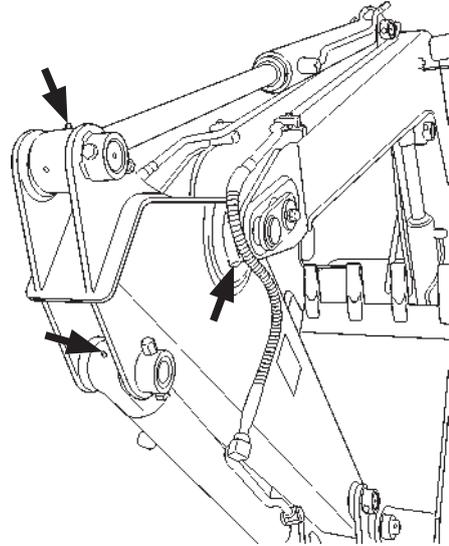


ZX85USB-5N

MDED-07-060

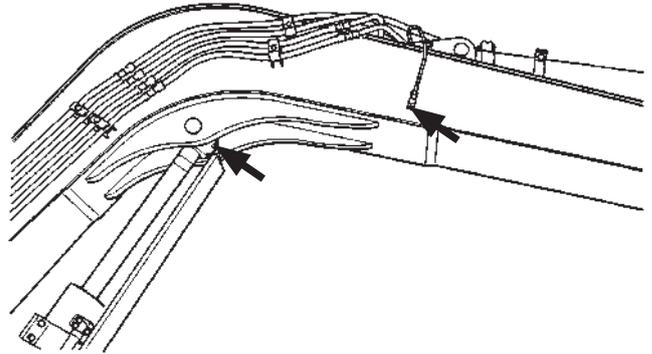
MAINTENANCE

- Boom and Arm Joint Pin, Arm Cylinder Rod Pin and Bucket Cylinder Bottom Pin.



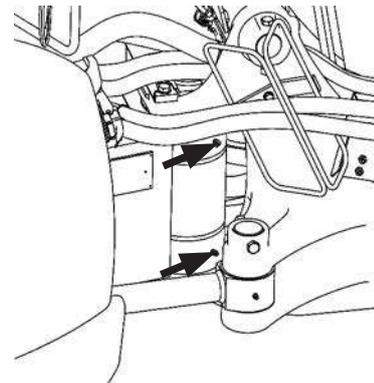
M1CG-07-007

- Boom Cylinder Rod Pins and Arm Cylinder Bottom Pin.



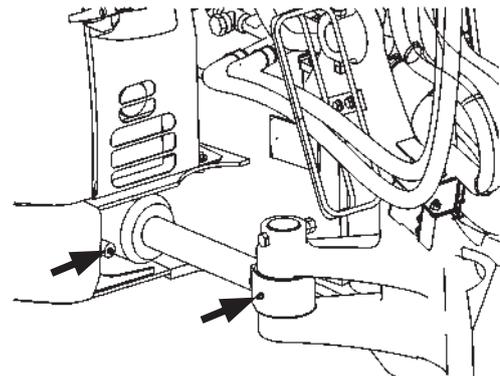
M195-07-012

- Swing Post (ZX85USB-5N)



MDED-07-061

- Swing Cylinder (ZX85USB-5N)



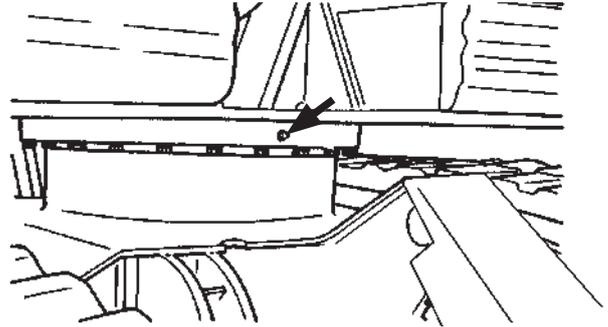
MDED-07-062

MAINTENANCE

2 Swing Bearing --- every 500 hours

CAUTION: Lubricating both the swing bearing and gear and rotating the upperstructure must be done by one person. Before you lubricate the swing bearing, clear the area of all persons.

Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Use handrails.



M197-07-012

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. With the upperstructure stationary, apply grease via the two grease fittings.
3. Start the engine. Raise the bucket several inches off the ground and rotate the upperstructure 45 ° (1/8 turn).
4. Lower the bucket to the ground.
5. Repeat the procedure (Step 1 to 4) three times.
6. Apply grease to the swing bearing until grease can be seen escaping from the swing bearing seals.

Grease Capacity : 0.20 L (0.21 US qt)

7. Take care not to supply excessive grease.

MAINTENANCE

3 Swing Internal Gear --- every 500 hours

CAUTION: Lubricating both the swing bearing and gear and rotating the upperstructure must be done by one person. Before you lubricate the swing bearing, clear the area of all persons.

Lower the bucket to the ground. Stop the engine. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position. Use handrails.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

2. Open the tool box cover on the upperstructure and remove cover (1).

3. Grease must be to the top of all internal gear teeth of the swing bearing and be free of contamination.

Add approximately 0.5 kg (1.1 lb) of grease, if required. If the grease is contaminated, remove grease and replace with clean grease.

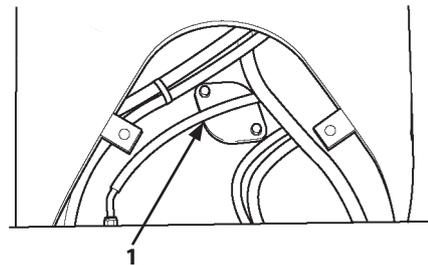
IMPORTANT: If water or mud is found in the swing gear area, see **Operating in Water or Mud in the "Driving the Machine" section.**

4. Install the cover.

5. If grease shows any sign of water or mud, replace all the grease on the internal gear.

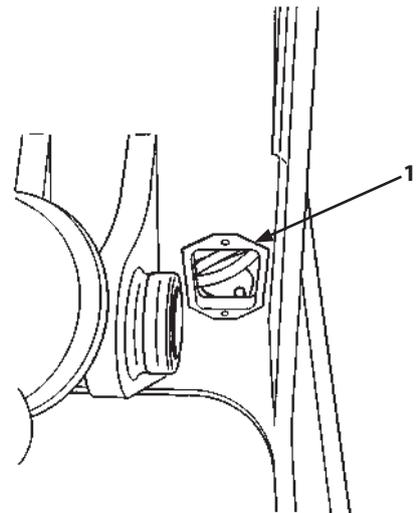
Remove cover (2) from the bottom of the swing gear housing, located near the center joint.

Grease capacity : 4.4 L (1.2 US gal)



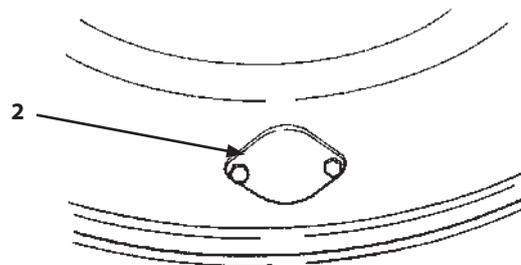
ZX85USB-5N

M1CD-07-041



ZX75US-5N

MDDE-07-035

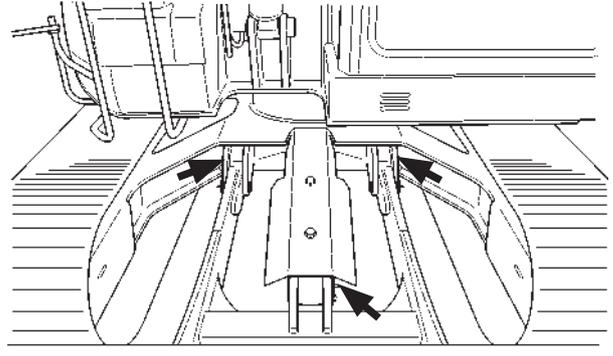


M157-07-161

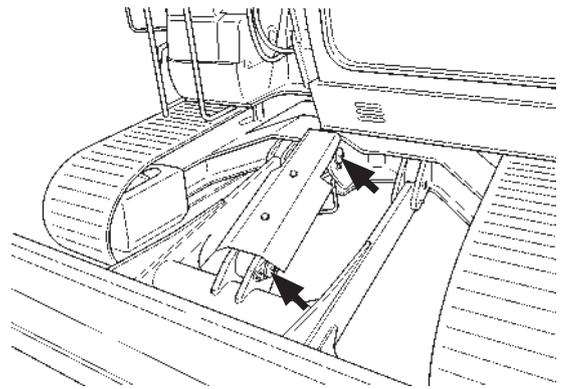
MAINTENANCE

4 Blade Joint Pins --- every 500 hours

- Blade joint pins
- Blade cylinder rod/bottom pins



M1CC-00-001



M1CC-07-021

MAINTENANCE

B. Engine

- 1** Engine Oil Level
--- check daily (Before starting the engine)

IMPORTANT: This machine adopts the closed air breather system. An incorrect engine oil level may cause trouble on the engine (The oil level should be between the upper and lower marks on oil level gauge (1)).

Even if the engine oil level exceeds the upper limit, control the oil level to the proper quantity before starting the engine.

Check oil level before starting the engine.

Open the engine cover and pull out oil level gauge (1). Wipe oil level gauge (1) with cloth, re-insert it into the pipe to the end, and then pull it out again.

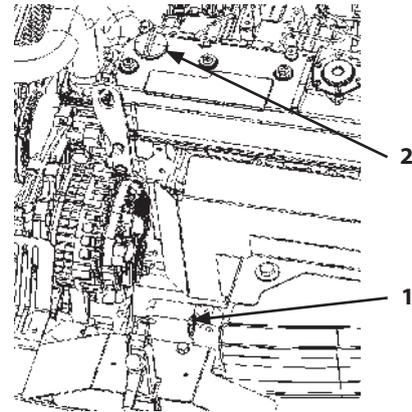
The oil level should be between the upper and lower marks on dipstick (1).

If oil level is below the lower limit mark, add the recommended engine oil via oil filler (2).

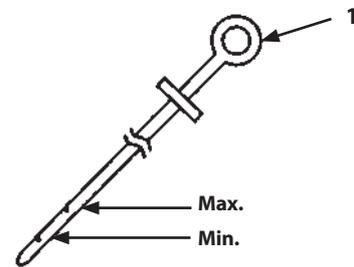
If oil level exceeds the upper limit mark, remove drain plug (3) at the bottom of the engine oil pan, and then drain oil.

CAUTION: Do not spill oil while changing oil. Spilled fuel and oil, and trash, grease, debris, accumulated coal dust, and other flammable materials may cause fires.

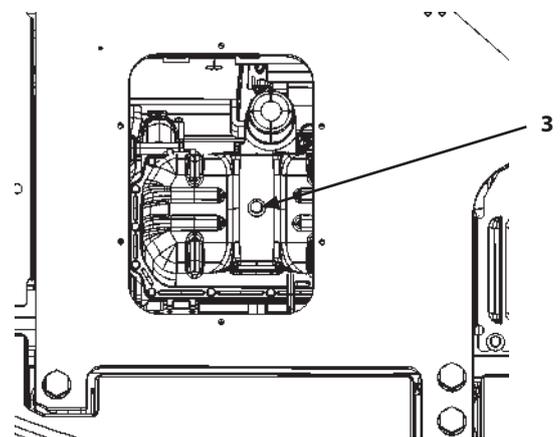
After refilling, make sure oil filler cap(2)is securely tighten.



MDED-07-036



M178-07-011



MDED-07-006

MAINTENANCE

2 Change Engine Oil --- every 500 hours

3 Replace Engine Oil Filter --- every 500 hours

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

CAUTION:

- **Engine may be hot just after operation. Wait for engine to cool before starting work.**
 - **Do not spill oil while adding oil. Spilled oil may cause fires.**
2. Remove oil filler cap (2).
 3. Remove bolts (3) and cover (4).
 4. Remove drain plug (6) to drain oil.
 5. Then, allow oil to drain through a clean cloth into a container.

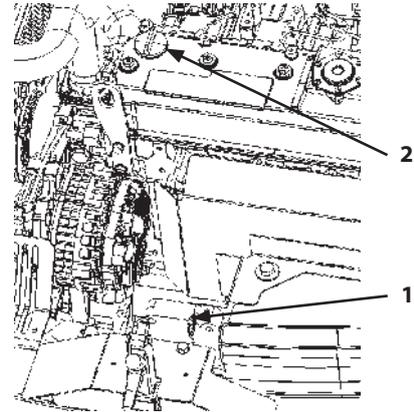
Capacity class: 20-liter (5.3 US gal)

6. After all oil has been drained, inspect the cloth for any debris such as small pieces of metal.

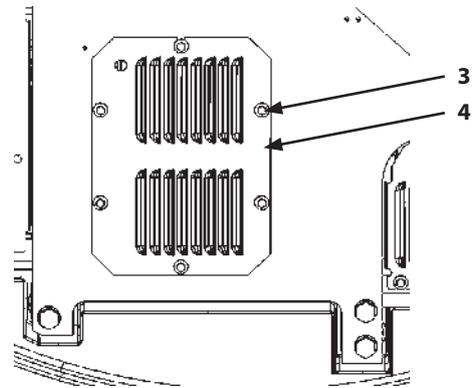
7. Install and tighten drain plug (6).

Wrench size: 19 mm

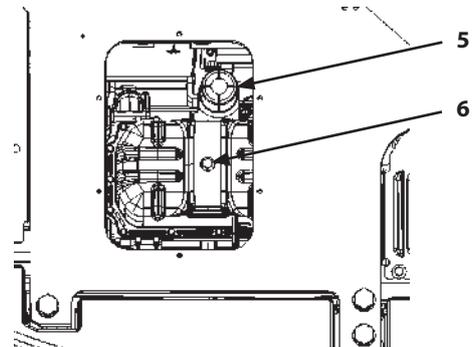
Tightening torque: 60 N·m (6 kgf·m, 44 lbf·ft)



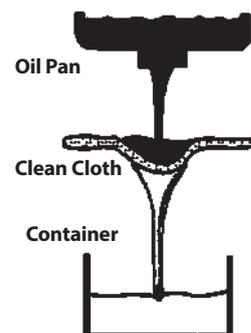
MDED-07-036



MDED-07-037



MDED-07-038



M104-07-010

MAINTENANCE

- Remove the filter cartridges of engine oil filter cartridge (5) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
- Clean the filter gasket contact area on the engine.

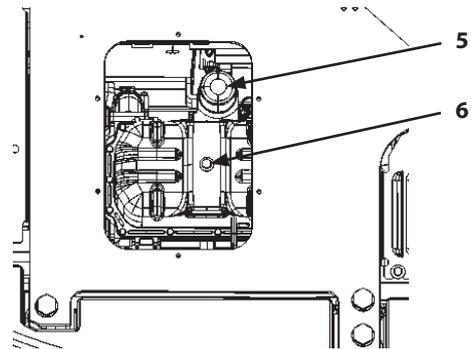
IMPORTANT:

- When filling new oil, take care not to allow foreign matter to enter the engine.
 - Do not re-use engine oil filter (5). Be sure to use only genuine engine oil filter (5). Failure to use genuine parts or replace oil filter (5), may damage the engine.
- Apply a thin layer of clean oil to the cartridge gasket (O-ring).
 - Install new filter (5). Turn the filter cartridge clockwise by hand until the gasket touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the gasket when installing filter (5).
 - Tighten engine oil filter (5) 3/4 to 1 turn more using the filter wrench. Be careful not to overtighten.

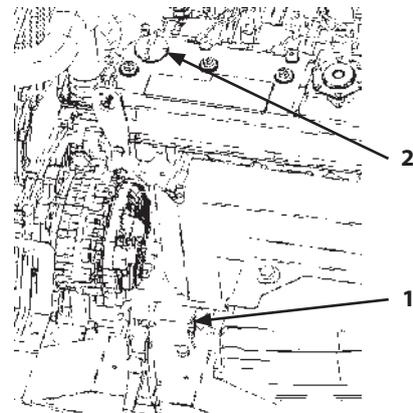
Tightening torque: 20 to 24 N·m (2.0 to 2.4 kgf·m, 15 to 17 lbf·ft)

IMPORTANT:

- An incorrect engine oil level may cause trouble on the engine. Even if the engine oil level exceeds the upper limit, control the oil level to the proper quantity before starting the engine.
- Fill the engine with recommended oil. Check that oil level is between the circle marks on the dipstick after 15 minutes.
Engine oil capacity : 11.6 L (3.1 US gal)
 - Securely tighten oil filler cap (2).
 - Start the engine. Run the engine at slow idle for 5 minutes.
 - Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
 - Check for any leakage.
 - After 15 minutes, check oil level on the dipstick and add or drain oil to maintain proper oil level. (The oil level should be between the upper and lower limit marks on the oil level gauge.) (Refer to 7-23)



MDED-07-006



MDED-07-005

MAINTENANCE

C. Transmission

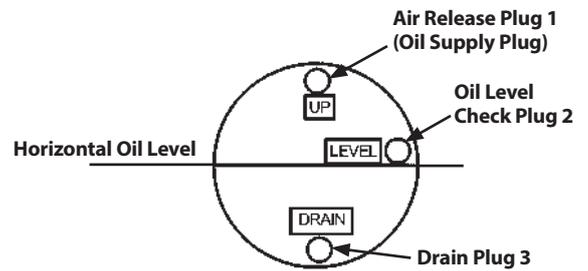
1 Travel Reduction Gear

Check Oil Level --- every 250 hours

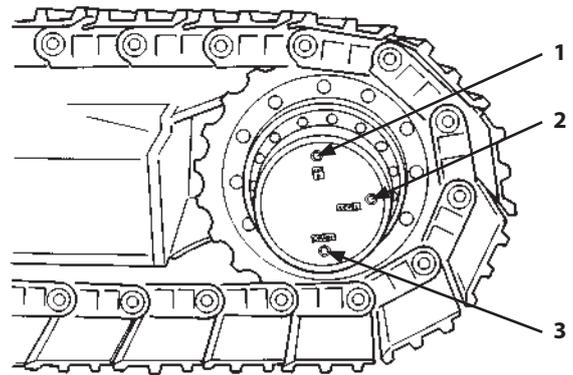
1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Rotate the travel motor until the imaginary line through plug (1) and plug (3) is vertical.
3. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

⚠ WARNING: Keep body and face away from the air release plug. Gear oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for gear oil to cool and then gradually loosen the air release plug to release pressure.

4. After gear oil has cooled, slowly loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure.
5. Remove air release plug (1) and oil level check plug (2). Oil must be up to the bottom of hole.
6. If necessary, add oil until oil flows out of oil level check plug (2) hole. (See gear oil chart)
7. Clean and wrap the plug threads with sealing-type tape. Install plug (1) and (2).
Tighten plugs (1) and (2) to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft).
8. Check the gear oil level in the other travel reduction gear.



MDAA-07-047



M1CC-07-019

MAINTENANCE

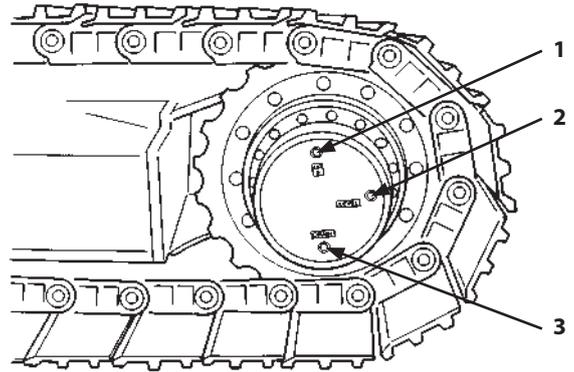
Change Gear Oil --- every 2000 hours

IMPORTANT: Do not use gear oils other than those listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Transmission Oil".

1. Park the machine on a level surface.
2. Rotate the travel motor until the imaginary line through plug (1) and plug (3) is vertical.
3. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

WARNING: Keep body and face away from the air release plug. Gear oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for gear oil to cool and then gradually loosen the air release plug to release pressure.

4. After gear oil has cooled, slowly loosen air release plug (1) to release pressure, and temporarily retighten plug (1).
5. Remove drain plug (3) and plug (1), in that order, to drain oil.
6. Clean drain plug (3). Wrap the threads of drain plug (3) with sealing-type tape. Install plug (3). Tighten plug (3).
Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft)
7. Remove oil level check plug (2).
8. Add oil until oil flows out of oil level check plug (2) hole. (See gear oil chart)
9. Clean plugs (1) and (2). Wrap the threads of oil level check plug (2) and air release plug (1) with sealing-type tape. Reinstall the plugs (1) and (2). Tighten the plugs (1) and (2).
Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft)
10. Repeat steps 4. to 9. for the other travel reduction gear.



M1CC-07-019

MAINTENANCE

D. Hydraulic System

Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment

IMPORTANT: Never adjust parts of hydraulic equipment.

⚠ CAUTION: When checking and/or servicing the hydraulic components, pay special attention to the following points.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Begin servicing hydraulic components only after components, hydraulic oil and lubricants are completely cooled, and after releasing residual pressure.
 - 2.1 Before checking and/or servicing the hydraulic system, be sure to release the residual pressure from the cylinder circuits of the boom, arm and the bucket, swing piping and pilot piping. An accumulator can be installed on some models of this machine as an option to be capable of moving the front attachment for specified time (around 10 seconds) after stopping the engine.
 - 2.2 Bleed air from the hydraulic oil tank to release internal pressure.
 - 2.3 Immediately after operation, all hydraulic components and hydraulic oil or lubricants are hot and highly pressurized. Begin inspection and/or maintenance work only after the machine has cooled down.

Servicing heated and pressurized hydraulic components may cause plugs, screws and/or oil to fly off or escape suddenly, possibly resulting in personal injury. Hydraulic components may be pressurized even when cooled.

Keep body parts and face away from the front of plugs or screws when removing them.
- 2.4 Even after air pressure in the hydraulic oil tank is released, when the machine is parking on a slope, the oil pressure in the travel motor and the swing motor circuits are maintained at high pressure as the reaction force of the machine weight is constantly applied to the travel motor. Never check and/or service the machine parking on a slope.

MAINTENANCE

IMPORTANT:

- **When connecting hydraulic hoses and pipes, take special care to keep seal surfaces free from dirt and to avoid damaging them.**
- **Wash hoses, pipes, and the tank interior with a washing liquid and thoroughly wipe it out before reconnecting them.**
- **Only use O-rings that are free of damage or defects. Be careful not to damage them during reassembly. Do not allow high pressure hoses to twist when connecting them. The life of twisted hoses will be shortened considerably.**
- **Do not use hydraulic oils other than those listed in the table "Brand names of recommended hydraulic oil".**
- **When adding hydraulic oil, always use the same brand of oil; do not mix brands of oil. When using another manufacturer's hydraulic oil, be sure to change the full amount.**
- **The new machine is filled with hydraulic oil of Super EX 46 HN (change interval: every 5000 hours). When adding or changing the hydraulic oil, continue to use the super EX 46 HN.**
- **Never run the engine without oil in the hydraulic oil tank.**

MAINTENANCE

Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element

Hydraulic breaker operation causes the hydraulic system to become contaminated faster and quickly deteriorates the hydraulic oil.

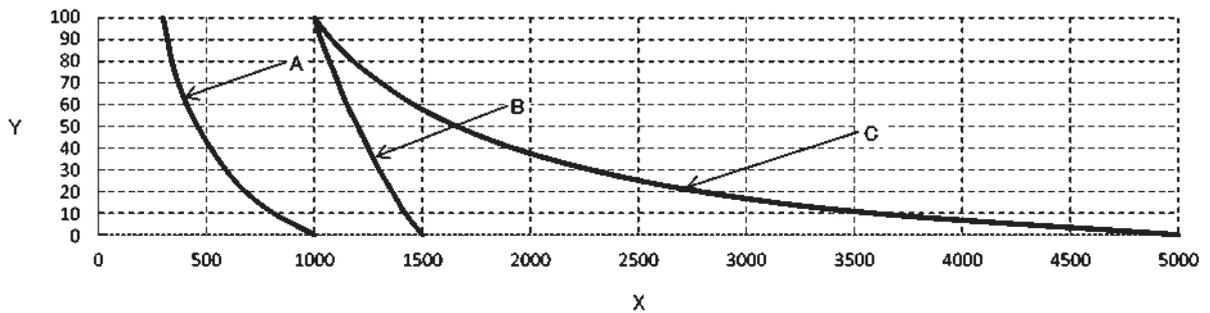
Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals may result in damage to the base machine and the breaker.

In order to extend service life, particularly that of the hydraulic pump, change the hydraulic oil and the full-flow filter element at the specified frequency given below.

Check machine service hours with the breaker hour meter. (Refer to the Operation in the Operator's Station chapter (1-63) to check the breaker operating ratio.)

Change Intervals for the High Performance Element (Micro-Glass)

Breaker Operating Ratio	0 %	10 %	20 %	30 %	40 %	50 %	60 %	70 %	80 %	90 %	100 %
Full-Flow Filter	1000	810	680	590	520	460	410	370	340	320	300
1500 Hour Hydraulic Oil	1500	1420	1360	1300	1250	1200	1150	1110	1070	1030	1000
5000 Hour Hydraulic Oil	5000	3580	2780	2280	1920	1660	1460	1310	1180	1080	1000



MDEC-07-015

A: Element Replacement Interval

B: Every 1500 hours

C: Every 5000 hours

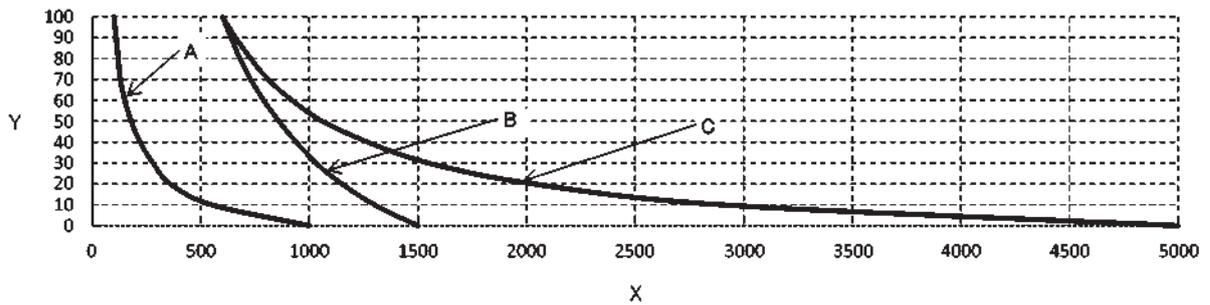
X: Change Interval (Hours)

Y: Average Breaker Operating Ratio (%)

MAINTENANCE

Change Intervals for the Standard Full-Flow Filter (Paper Filter)

Breaker Operating Ratio	0 %	10 %	20 %	30 %	40 %	50 %	60 %	70 %	80 %	90 %	100 %
Full-Flow Filter	1000	550	360	280	220	180	150	130	120	110	100
1500 Hour Hydraulic Oil	1500	1300	1150	1030	940	860	790	730	680	640	600
5000 Hour Hydraulic Oil	5000	2900	2030	1550	1270	1060	920	810	730	660	600



MDEC-07-016

A: Element Replacement Interval

B: Every 1500 hours

C: Every 5000 hours

X: Change Interval (Hours)

Y: Average Breaker Operating Ratio (%)

MAINTENANCE

1 Check Hydraulic Oil Level --- daily

IMPORTANT: If the oil level is not viewed in the level gauge, immediately refill hydraulic oil up to the appropriate level. Failure to do so may result in a serious failure in the hydraulic system. If the oil level is higher than the level gauge, remove oil down to the appropriate level using a pump.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Open the access door in front of the main pump. Check oil level with level gauge (1) on hydraulic oil tank. Oil must be between marks on gauge (1). If necessary, add oil.

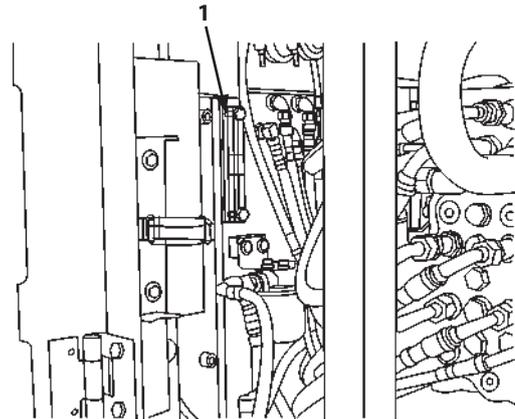
CAUTION: The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the air breather to release pressure, and carefully remove the cap.

To add oil:

3. Push the pressure release button on the air breather to release pressure. Remove the cover.
4. Add oil. Recheck oil level with level gauge (1).
5. Install the cover. Make sure the filter and rod assembly are in correct position.



M104-07-021



M1P1-07-009

MAINTENANCE

2 Drain Hydraulic Tank Sump --- every 250 hours

CAUTION: Hydraulic oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for oil to cool before starting work.

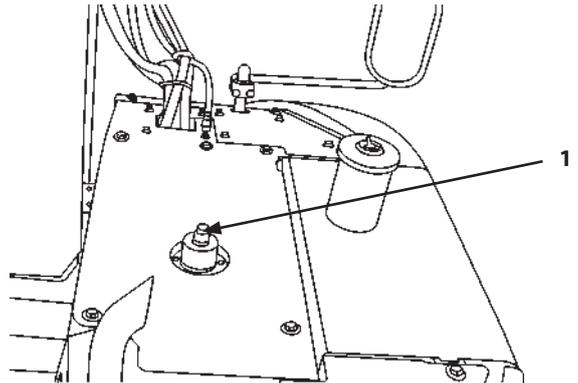
1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90 ° for easier access.
2. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

CAUTION: The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather to release pressure.

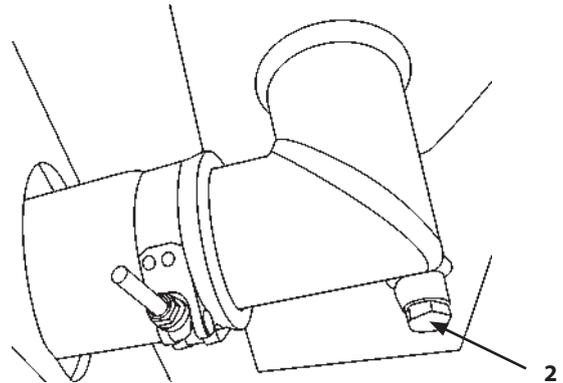
3. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather to release pressure.
4. Loosen drain plug (2) to drain water and sediment, Do not remove the plug completely, only loosen it enough to drain water and sediment.
5. After draining water and sediment, retighten plug (2).



M1CC-07-002



M1P1-07-010



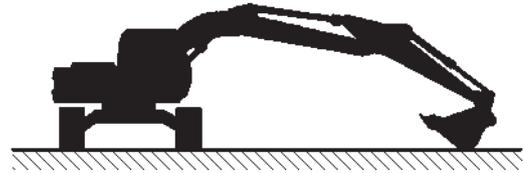
M1P1-07-017

MAINTENANCE

- 3** Change Hydraulic Oil
--- every 5000 hours, 2500 hours or 1500 hours

- 4** Suction Filter Cleaning
when hydraulic oil is changed

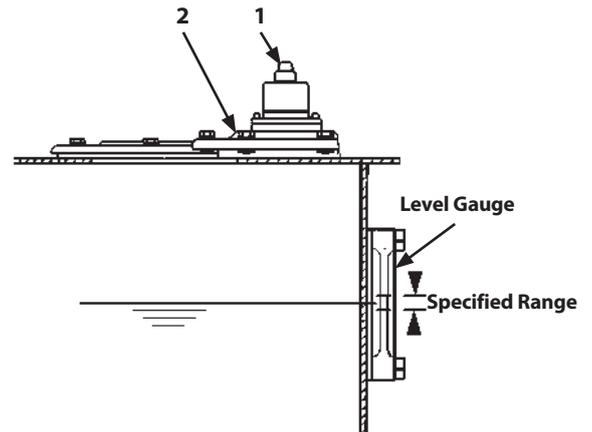
CAUTION: Hydraulic oil may be hot just after operation. Wait for oil to cool before starting work.



M1CC-07-006

IMPORTANT:

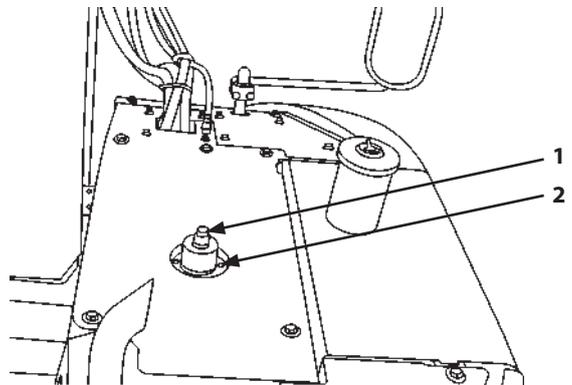
- Hydraulic oil changing intervals differ according to kind of hydraulic oils used. (See Recommended Oil Chart in this group)
 - Do not use hydraulic oils other than listed in the "Brand Names of Recommended Hydraulic Oil".
1. Park the machine on a level surface with the upperstructure rotated 90 ° for easier access.
 2. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
 3. Clean the top of the hydraulic oil tank to keep dirt out of the hydraulic system.



M1CD-07-012

CAUTION: The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather before removing the air breather.

4. Push pressure release button (1) on the air breather.
5. Remove cover (2).
6. Remove oil using a suction pump. The hydraulic oil tank capacity, up to specified oil level, is approximately A.
A : 100 L (26.4 US gal)



M1P1-07-010

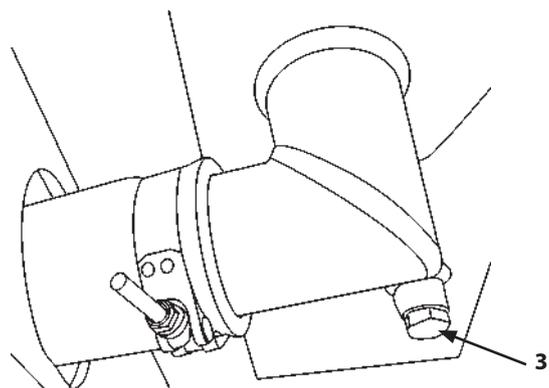
MAINTENANCE

7. Remove drain plug (3). Allow oil to drain.
8. Remove rod assembly (4).

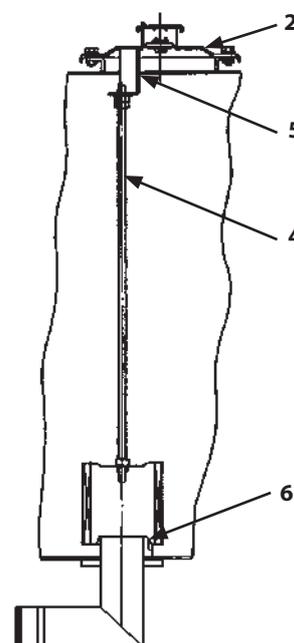
IMPORTANT: When changing hydraulic oil, take care not to enter foreign matters such as dirt, water, and/or sand into the hydraulic oil tank.

9. Clean the filter and tank interior. If the filter is to be replaced, install new filter on the rod as shown. Tighten nut to 15 to 20 N·m (1.5 to 2.0 kgf·m, 11.0 to 14.5 lbf·ft).
10. Before installing the suction filter, check the dimension of rod assembly (4) shown in figure right. Securely insert rod assembly (4) into pipe (6).
11. Replace the hydraulic tank oil filter.
(See "Replace Full-Flow Filter")
12. Clean, install and tighten drain plug (3).
13. Add oil until it is between the marks on the oil level gauge.
14. Before securing cover (2) with bolts, ensure the top edge of the rod assembly (4) is completely inserted into the hole of support (5). Install cover (2). Make sure filter and rod assembly (4) are in correct positions. Tighten the bolts to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft).
15. Be sure to bleed air from the system following the procedures shown next page.

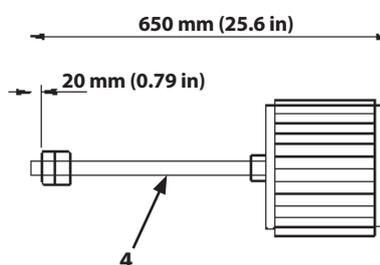
 **NOTE:** Replace element (4) at the regular interval to keep hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1P1-07-017



M197-07-083



M107-07-070

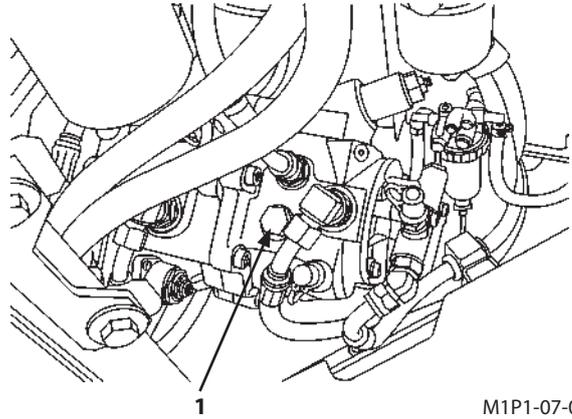
MAINTENANCE

Air Bleeding Procedures

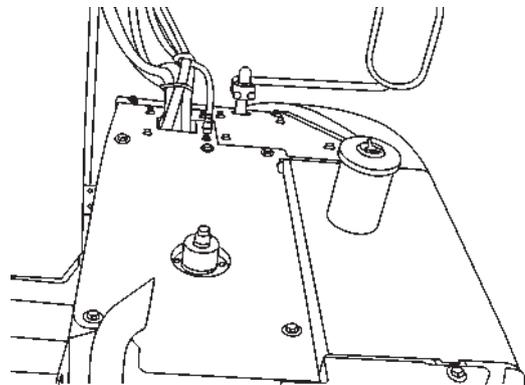
Bleed air from these pumps after changing hydraulic oil.

IMPORTANT: If the hydraulic pump is not filled with oil, it will be damaged when the engine is started.

- Pump Air Bleeding
 1. Remove air bleed plug (1) on pump.
 2. Fill the pump with oil through air bleed plug (1) port until oil flows out of air bleed plug (1) hole.
 3. Temporarily tighten air bleed plug (1), start the engine and run at slow idle. Loosen one of air bleed plug (1) slightly until oil flows from plug port to release trapped air completely. Tighten air bleed plug (1). Repeat this step for the rest of plug (1).
 4. Purge air from the hydraulic system by running the engine at slow idle and operating the control levers slowly and smoothly for 15 minutes.
 5. Position the machine as illustrated in the oil level checking procedure.
 6. Turn the auto-idle switch off.
 7. Stop the engine. Remove the key from the key switch.
 8. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
 9. Check the hydraulic oil tank gauge. Add oil if necessary.



M1P1-07-011



M1P1-07-010

MAINTENANCE

5 Replace Full-Flow Filter

Std. Model

--- every 1000 hours

IMPORTANT: Changing interval differs according to the brand of hydraulic oil used, kind of filter element or average attachment operating availability. Refer to "Change Hydraulic Oil and Full-Flow Filter Element". (Refer to pages 7-30, 7-31)

CAUTION: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

Procedures:

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Before replacing element (5), be sure to bleed air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing the air bleed valve on the hydraulic oil tank.
3. Loosen bolts (1) (6 used) to remove cover (2) and O-ring (3). When removing cover (2), slowly remove the cover while pressing the cover downward so that spring (4) does not fly off.
4. Remove spring (4), and element (5).
5. When installing new element (5) into the hydraulic oil tank, replace O-ring (3) with a new one at the same time.
6. Install cover (2) with bolts (1) (6 used).
7. Bleed air from the hydraulic system and check the hydraulic oil level after replacing the element.

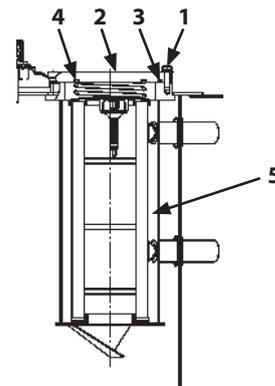
(Refer to the descriptions for "Air Bleeding Procedures")

If the machine is operated with air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, damage to the pump may result.

NOTE: Replace element (5) at the regular interval to keep hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1CC-07-002



MDAA-07-004

MAINTENANCE

Demolition and logging work

--- every 300 hours

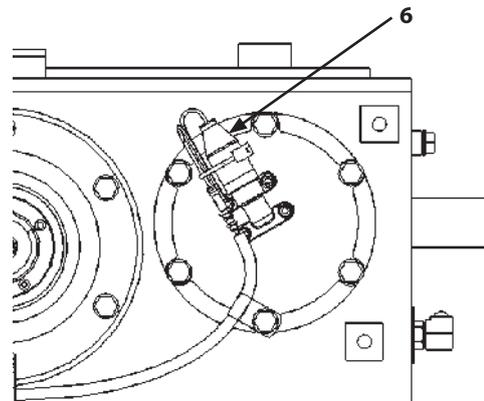
When the hydraulic oil filter alarm on the monitor panel is lit, immediately replace the filter element.

CAUTION: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

IMPORTANT: Changing interval differs according to the brand of hydraulic oil used, kind of filter element or average attachment operating availability.

IMPORTANT: Precautions for the filter element

- Excavators engaged in demolition and logging work use full-flow filter with high performance (micro-glass) element.
- When replacing the element, use the same kind of high performance element.
- In case a filter-paper element is unavoidably used, change hydraulic oil and replace full-flow filter element by referring to the "Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element" in the OPERATING THE MACHINE section.
- If a filter-paper element is used, the full-flow filter restriction indicator does not operate. Isolate the circuit for full-flow filter restriction indicator (6).



MDCN-07-024

MAINTENANCE

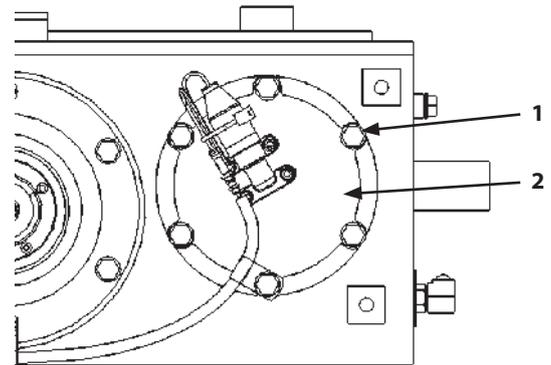
Procedures:

1. Park the machine on solid and level ground with the bucket cylinder fully extended and the arm cylinder fully retracted. Lower the bucket on the ground as shown to the right. Stop the engine.
2. Before replacing element (5), be sure to bleed air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing the air bleed valve on the hydraulic oil tank.
3. Loosen bolts (1) (6 used) to remove cover (2) and O-ring (3). When removing cover (2), slowly remove the cover while pressing the cover downward so that spring (4) does not fly off.
4. Remove spring (4), and element (5).
5. When installing new element (5) into the hydraulic oil tank, replace O-ring (3) with a new one at the same time.
6. Install cover (2) with bolts (1) (6 used).

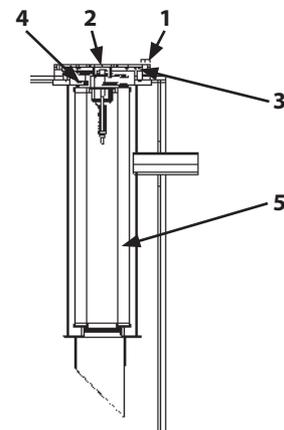
Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m, 37 lbf·ft)



M104-07-021



MDCN-07-024



MDCN-07-023

MAINTENANCE

6 Replace Pilot Oil Filter --- every 1000 hours

CAUTION: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

CAUTION: The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the air breather before removing the filter cartridge.

2. Push the pressure release button on the air breather.
3. Remove the filter cartridges of pilot oil filter (2) by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
4. Clean the filter O-ring contact area on filter head (1).
5. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the gasket of new filter (2).
6. Install new filter (2). Turn the filter cartridge clockwise by hand until the O-ring touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the O-ring when installing filter (2).

IMPORTANT: Do not re-use the filter cartridge.

7. Bleed air from the hydraulic system and check the hydraulic oil level after replacing the element.

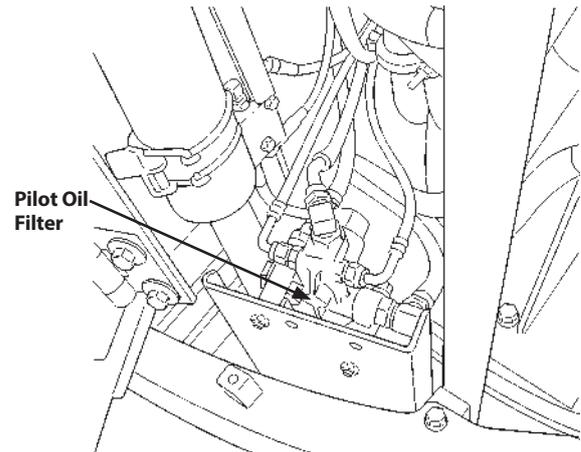
(Refer to the descriptions for "Air Bleeding Procedures")

If the machine is operated with air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, damage to the pump may result.

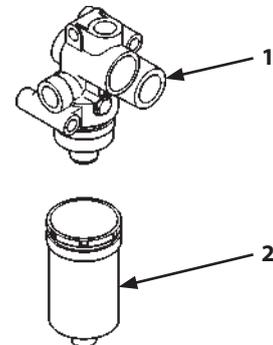
NOTE: Replace element (2) at the regular interval to keep hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1CC-07-002



MDED-07-039



M1P1-07-067

MAINTENANCE

- 7** **Replace Swing Drain Filter**
Serial No.
ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522
ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111
--- every 4000 hours

CAUTION: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

CAUTION: The hydraulic oil tank is pressurized. Push the pressure release button on the air breather before removing the filter cartridge.

2. Push the pressure release button on the air breather.
3. Remove the filter cartridges of the swing drain filter by turning it counterclockwise with the filter wrench.
4. Clean the filter gasket contact area on the filter head.
5. Apply a thin film of clean oil to the gasket of new filter.
6. Install new filter. Turn the filter cartridge clockwise by hand until the gasket touches the contact area. Be sure not to damage the gasket when installing filter.

IMPORTANT: Do not re-use the filter cartridge.

7. Tighten the filter cartridge 1-1/4 turns more using the filter wrench. Be careful not to overtighten.
8. Bleed air from the hydraulic system and check the hydraulic oil level after replacing the element.

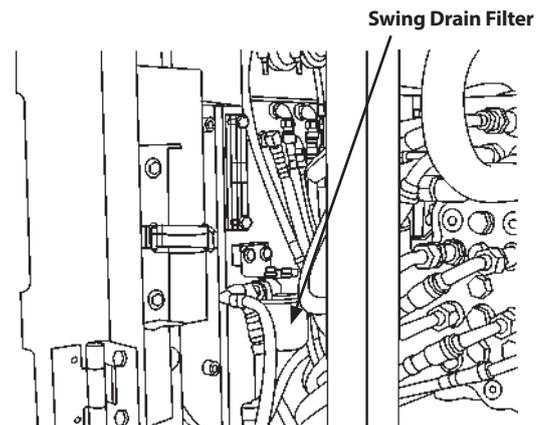
(Refer to the descriptions for "Air Bleeding Procedures")

If the machine is operated with air mixed in the hydraulic circuit, the damage to the pump may result.

NOTE: Replace the element at the regular interval to keep hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1CC-07-002



M1P1-07-009

MAINTENANCE

8 Replace Air Breather Element

--- every 4000 hours

CAUTION: Hydraulic oil becomes hot and pressurized during operation. Severe burns may result if skin comes in contact with escaping hydraulic oil immediately after operation. Wait for the oil to cool before starting any maintenance work.

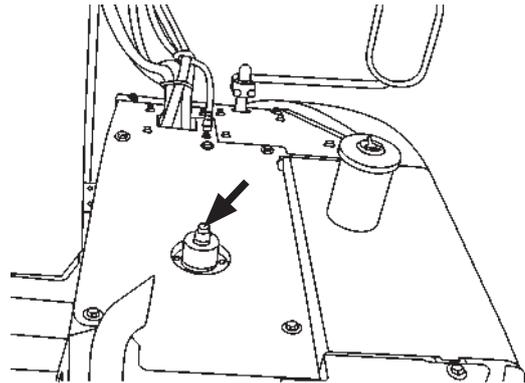


M1CC-07-002

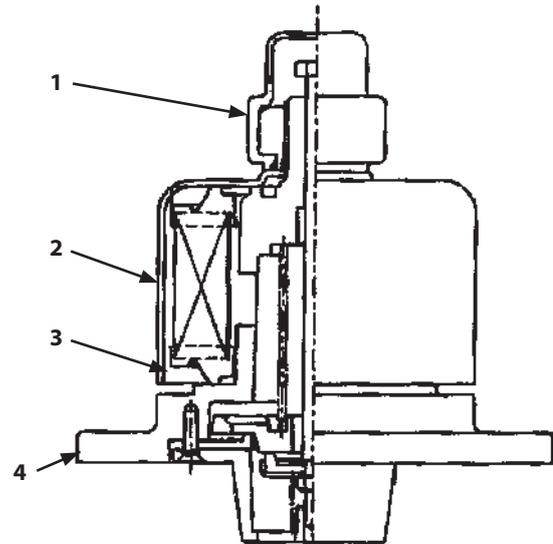
Procedures:

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Before replacing element (3), be sure to bleed air pressure from the hydraulic oil tank by pressing the air bleed valve on the hydraulic oil tank.
3. Rotate cover (2) clockwise approx. 1/4 turns. Remove cap (1) by rotating it counterclockwise.
4. Rotate cover (2) counterclockwise and remove it. Remove element (3).
5. Install new element (3). Tighten to install cover (2) until cover (2) comes in contact with element (3). Then, further tighten the cover 1/4 turn.
6. Securely tighten cap (1) clockwise by hand. While holding cap (1) by hand so that cap (1) does not rotate, securely tighten cover (2) by rotating counterclockwise 5 to 10° by hand.
7. Take care never to allow water and/or contaminant to stay between cover (2) and body (4) (air breathing port).

NOTE: Replace element (3) at the regular interval to keep hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components.



M1P1-07-010



M1G6-07-001

MAINTENANCE

9 Check Hoses and Lines

- daily
- every 250 hours

! WARNING:

- Hydraulic oil and lubricant leaks can lead to fire that may result in serious injury. Check for missing or loose clamps, kinked hoses, lines or hoses that rub against each other, damaged oil cooler, and loose oil cooler flange bolts, for leaks.
- Escaping oil under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. To avoid this hazard, search for oil leaks with a piece of cardboard. Take care to protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids. If an accident occurs, see a doctor familiar with this type of injury immediately.
- Tighten, repair or replace any missing, loose or damaged clamps, hoses and lines.
- Do not bend or strike high-pressure lines.
- Never install bent or damaged hoses or lines.

According to the check points shown below, check hoses and lines for oil leaks and damage.

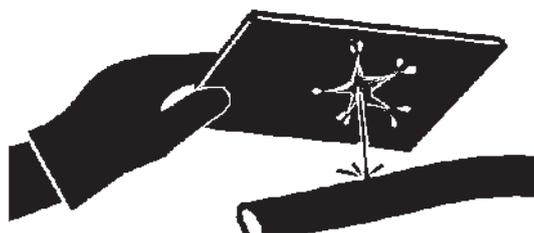
If any abnormality is found, replace or retighten as instructed in the table.



SA-031



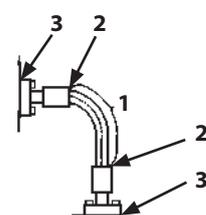
SA-292



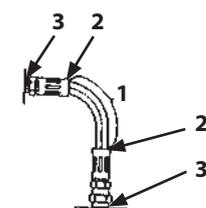
SA-044

Hose

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily	Hose covers	Leak (1)	Replace
	Hose ends	Leak (2)	Replace
	Fittings	Leak (3)	Retighten or replace hose or O-ring



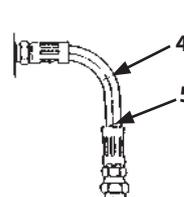
M137-07-008



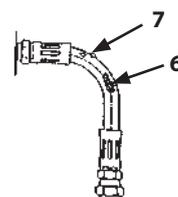
M115-07-145

MAINTENANCE

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Every 250 hours	Hose covers	Damage or leak (4)	Replace
	Hose ends	Damage or leak (5)	Replace
	Hose covers	Exposed reinforcement (6)	Replace
	Hose covers	Crack or blister (7)	Replace
	Hose	Bend (8), Collapse (9)	Replace
	Hose ends and Fittings	Deformation or corrosion (10)	Replace



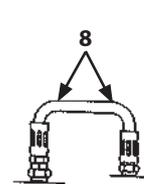
M115-07-146



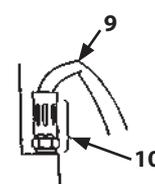
M115-07-147

Lines

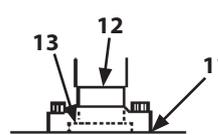
Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily	Contact surfaces of flange joints	Leak (11)	Replace
	Bolts	Loose or leak (11)	Retighten or replace O-ring
	Welded surfaces on flange joints	Leak (12)	Replace
Every 250 hours	Flange joint neck	Crack (13)	Replace
	Welded surfaces on flange joints	Crack (12)	Replace
	Clamps	Missing or deformation Loose bolts	Replace or retighten



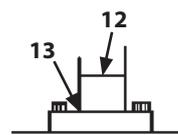
M115-07-148



M115-07-149



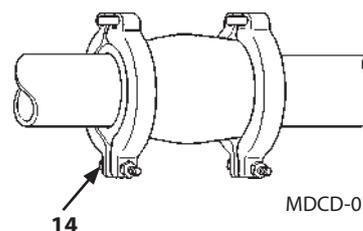
M137-07-001



M137-07-007

Hose and Lines

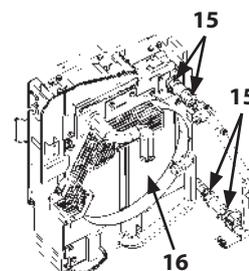
Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily Check	Flexible master coupling	Leak (14)	Retighten or replace



MDCD-07-044

Oil Cooler

Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Every 250 hours	Rubber Hose	Leak (15)	Retighten or replace
	Oil Cooler	Leak (16)	Replace



MDED-07-040

MAINTENANCE

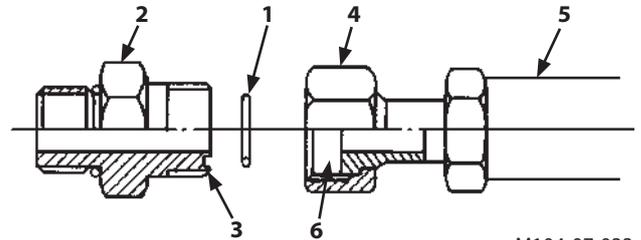
Service Recommendations for Hydraulic Fittings

Two hydraulic fitting designs are used on this machine.

- Flat Face O-ring Seal Fitting (ORS Fitting)
O-ring (1) is used on the sealing surfaces of adaptor (2) to prevent oil leakage.

Precautions for Use

1. Replace O-ring (1) with a new one when assembling fittings.
 2. Check that O-ring (1) is properly fitted in O-ring groove (3). Tighten union (4).
- Tightening union (4) with O-ring (1) out of the groove may damage O-ring (1) and cause oil leak.
3. When assembling fittings, take care not to make a dent on O-ring groove (3) of adaptor (2) and sealing surface (6) on hose (5) or valve side. Failure to do so may result in damage to O-ring (1) leading to oil leak.
 4. If oil leaks from a loose connection of union (4), do not tighten fitting (2). Open the connection, replace O-ring (1) with new one and check for correct O-ring position before tightening the connection.



M104-07-033

Tightening Torque:

Tighten fittings to the torque values shown below.

±10 %

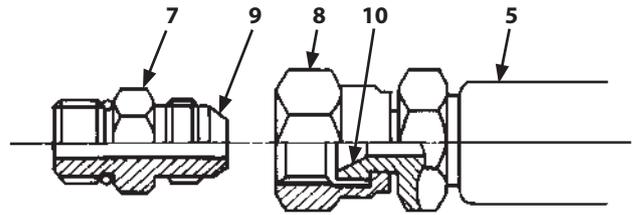
Wrench size (mm)		27	32	36	41, 46
Tightening Torque:	N·m	95	140	180	210
	(kgf·m)	(9.5)	(14)	(18)	(21)

MAINTENANCE

- **Metal Face Seal Fittings**

Fittings are used on smaller diameter joint and consist of a metal flare (10) and a metal flare seat (9).

1. Inspect flare (10) and flare seat (9). They must be free of dirt or obvious defects.
2. Tighten fitting (7) by hand.
3. Tighten fitting (7) or nut (8) to the torque values shown. Do not allow hose (5) to twist when tightening fittings.



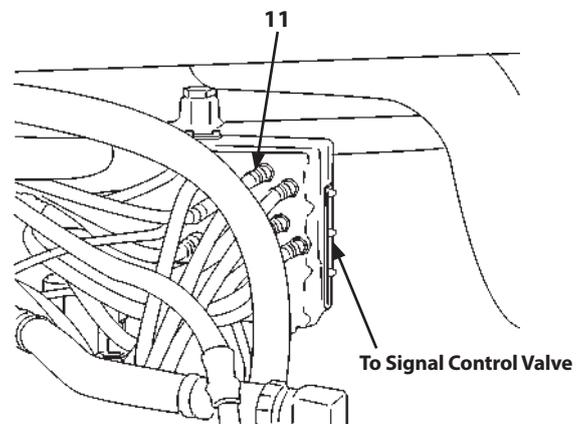
M202-07-051

Wrench size (mm)		17	19	22	27
Torque	N·m	25	30	40	80
	(kgf·m)	(2.5)	(3)	(4)	(8)

- **Bent Tube**

Tighten bent tube (11) mounted on the signal control valve to the torque values shown below.

Wrench size (mm)		17, 19
Tightening torque	N·m	35
	(kgf·m)	(3.5)



M1U1-07-043

MAINTENANCE

E. Fuel System

- 1** Check Fuel Level
--- every 8 hours (daily)

⚠ WARNING: Beware of fire. Fuel is flammable. Keep fuel away from fire hazards.

IMPORTANT: Always fill the fuel tank with the specified diesel fuel. Failure to do so may cause engine trouble and also making it difficult for the engine to start.

Recommended Fuel

Use only super high quality or high quality DIESEL FUEL (JIS K-2204) (ASTM D-975). Kerosene must NOT be used. Besides, using bad quality fuel, drainage agent, fuel additives, gasoline, kerosene or alcohol refueled or mixed with specified fuel may deteriorate performance of fuel filters and cause sliding problem at lubricated contacts in the injector. It also affects the engine parts, leading to malfunction. Using fuel other than ultra low-sulfur or low-sulfur diesel fuel has adverse effects on the engine which may result in malfunction.

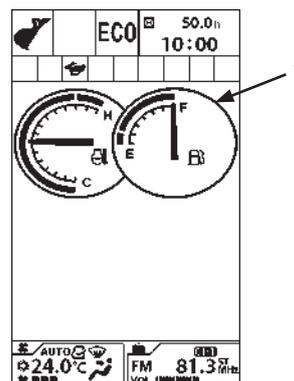
MAINTENANCE

Refueling

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.

CAUTION: Handle fuel carefully. Shut the engine off before fueling. Do not smoke while you fill the fuel tank or work on fuel system.

2. Check fuel level gauge (3) or fuel gauge (1) of the monitor panel. Add fuel if necessary.



MDAA-01-001

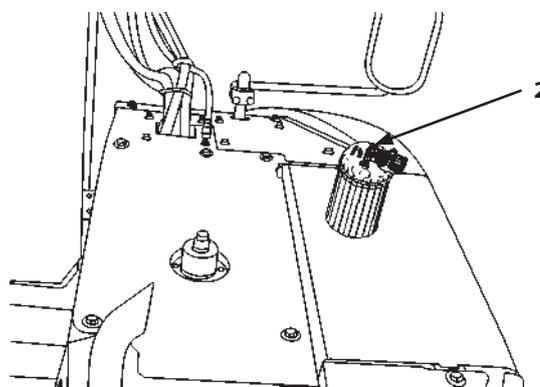
IMPORTANT: Keep all dirt, dust, water and other foreign materials out of the fuel system when refilling fuel.

3. Remove cap (2) of fuel port.

[Cap (2) unlock procedures]

- Release the key lock.
- Pull up handle (3) and turn handle (3) counterclockwise for releasing cap (2) lock.
- Remove cap (2).

4. To avoid condensation, fill the tank at the end of each day's operation. Take care not to spill fuel on the machine or ground.



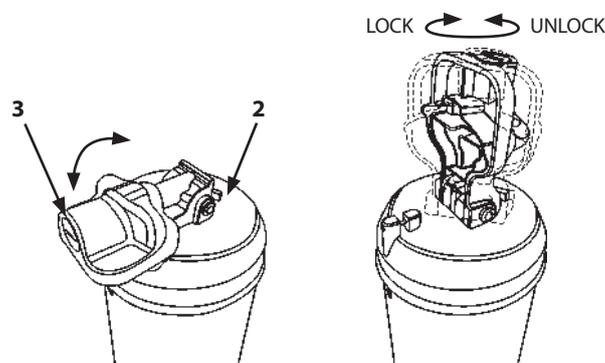
MDED-07-063

Model	Tank Capacity
ZX75US-5N	135 L (35.7 US gal)
ZX85USB-5N	120 L (31.7 US gal)

Do not fill the tank more than specified. Stop filling when a yellow mark on fuel level gauge (3) becomes visible. Be sure to position the fuel service nozzle so that any part of the nozzle does not obstruct rising of float-type fuel level gauge (3).

NOTE: Take precautions for Fueling with Automatic Fueling Device (Optional).

Avoid overfilling. Never fail to remove filler cap (2) when refueling with the automatic fueling device and be sure to stop fueling when the yellow mark on the float (3) becomes visible.



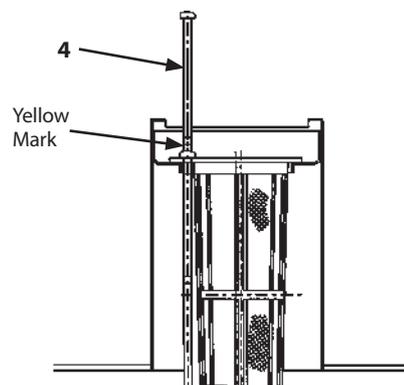
MLBA-07-094

MLBA-07-093

5. Install cap (2) of fuel port.

[Cap (2) lock procedures]

- Install cap (2).
- Turn handle clockwise until cap (2) is locked, and push down handle (3).
- Lock the key.



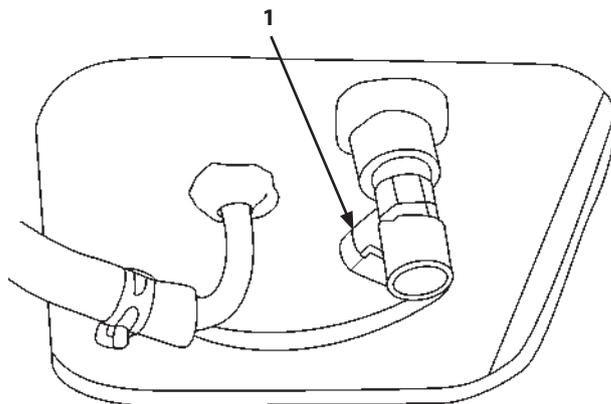
M157-07-060

MAINTENANCE

2 Drain Fuel Tank Sump

--- As required

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Place 0.5 liters or larger capacity container under drain valve (1) to collect the drained water.
3. Open drain valve (1) to drain water and/or sediment through the drain hose.
4. After draining water, securely tighten drain valve (1).



M1P1-07-016

MAINTENANCE

3 Drain Fuel Pre-Filter --- every 8 hours (before starting operation)

IMPORTANT: Drain fuel filter daily before starting operation. The engine may be damaged if you do not drain fuel filter daily.

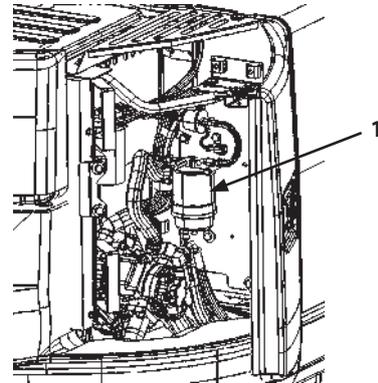
Pre-filter has water separator function, these allow float (4) to rise as water accumulates.

Be sure to drain daily the water accumulated in the filter until float (4) goes the bottom of case.

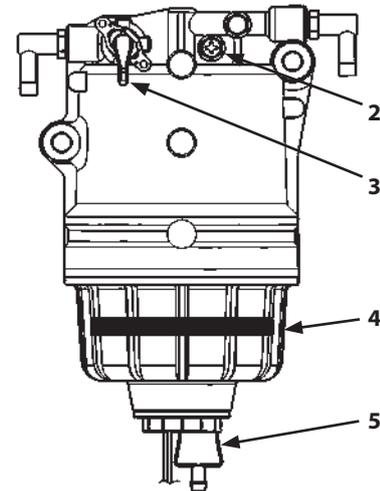
Drain Procedures

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Place 0.5 liters or larger capacity container under drain valve (5) to collect the drained water.
3. Close cock (3) at upper part of fuel pre-filter (1). Loosen drain valve (5) at lower part of fuel pre-filter (1) to drain water. If water is difficult to drain, loosen air bleed plug (2).
4. After draining water, securely tighten drain valve (5) and plug (2).
5. Open cock (3).

IMPORTANT: After draining water from the water separator, bleed air from the fuel supply system.



MDEC-07-001



MADG-07-002

MAINTENANCE

Air Bleeding Procedures

IMPORTANT: Air in the fuel system may make the engine hard to start or make it run irregularly. After draining water and sediment from the fuel pre-filter, replacing the fuel main filter and the fuel pre-filter or running the fuel tank dry, be sure to bleed the air from the fuel system.

This machine is equipped with a fuel solenoid pump.

CAUTION: Fuel leaks may lead to fires.

1. Confirm that the fuel level is more than one-half of the tank capacity. If the fuel level is lower, automatic bleeding device will not operate. Add fuel.
2. Turn the key switch ON and hold it in that position for approx. 3 minutes. Thereby, the fuel solenoid pump operates, starting to bleed air.
3. After the main filter is filled with fuel, hold the key switch in the ON position for 30 seconds.
4. Start the engine. Check the fuel supply system for fuel leaks.

IMPORTANT: Even if air is not thoroughly bled, do not hold the key switch in the ON position for more than 5 minutes. In case air is not thoroughly bled, first return the key switch to the OFF position. Then, after waiting for more than 30 seconds, turn the key switch ON again. Failure to do so may cause damage to the electrical pump and/or discharging the batteries.

If Air Mixed After Common Rail

In case air mixed in the fuel system due to lack of fuel and the engine is difficult to start, release air by following the procedure given below.

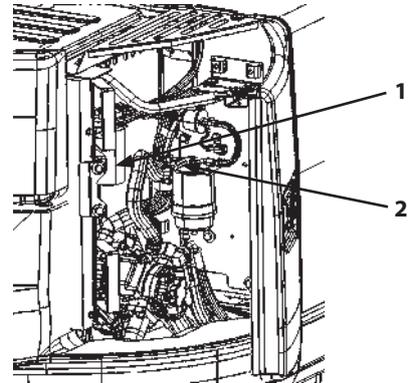
1. Bleed air until the engine supply pump entrance enough according to the above-mentioned procedures.
2. Operate starter motor for long cranking within 20 seconds. If engine falls to start, return key switch to OFF. Wait more than about 60 seconds, and then try again.

MAINTENANCE

4 Replace Fuel Main Filter Element --- every 500 hours

IMPORTANT:

- Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi elements for the fuel main filter element and the pre-filter element. Failure to do so may deteriorate the engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Please be noted that all engine failures caused by using other manufacturers' elements are excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.
- Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the fuel tank.



MDEC-07-001

Procedures:

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Close cock (2) on the top of the water separator.
3. Place 1 liter or larger capacity container under fuel filter (1) to collect the drained fuel.
4. Remove fuel filter (1) using the filter wrench.
5. Apply a thin film of clean fuel to the gasket of new fuel filter (1).
6. Tighten fuel filter (1) by hand until the gasket makes contact with the sealing surface.
7. Using the filter wrench, tighten fuel filter (1) about 1/2 turn more. Do not overtighten fuel filter (1).

Tightening Torque : 20 to 24 N·m (2.0 to 2.4 kgf·m, 15 to 17 lbf·ft)

8. Open cock (2) on the top of the water separator.
9. Bleed Air from the Fuel System
After replacing the fuel filter element, bleed air from the fuel supply system.

(Refer to "Air Bleeding Procedures".)

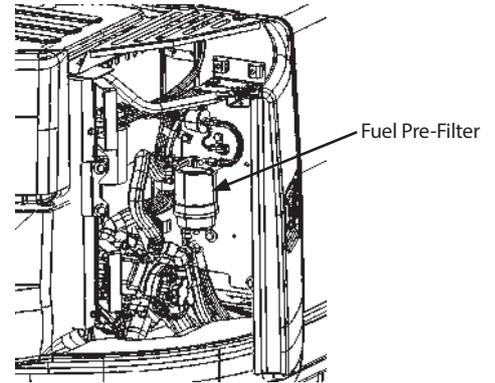
Wrench size: 10 mm

MAINTENANCE

- 5** **Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element**
--- every 500 hours or when fuel filter clogging lamp is lit

IMPORTANT:

- **Be sure to use only genuine Hitachi elements for the fuel pre-filter element. Failure to do so may deteriorate the engine performance and/or shorten the engine service life. Please be noted that all engine failures caused by using other manufacturers' elements are excluded from Hitachi Warranty Policy.**
- **Take care not to allow dirt and/or water to enter the fuel tank.**



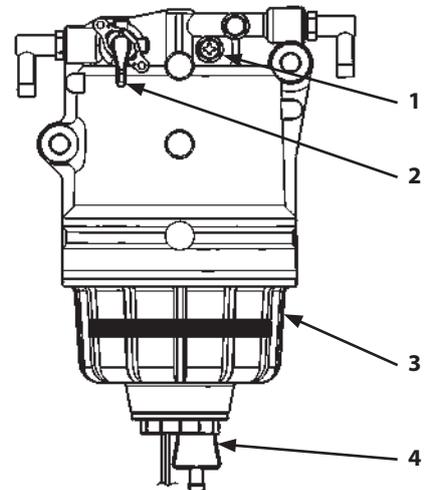
MDEC-07-001

Procedures:

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
 2. Close cock (2).
 3. Place a 1 liter or larger capacity container under drain plug (4).
 4. Loosen air bleed plug (1) and drain plug (4). Drain fuel until fuel does not flow out of the filter.
 5. Remove filter case (3) by using a special tool.
 6. Remove the filter element.
 7. Replace the O-ring with new ones.
 8. Install a new element and O-ring. Tighten filter case (3) by using a special tool.
- Tightening Torque : 30 ± 3 N·m (2.8 to 3.4 kgf·m, 21 to 25 lbf·ft).
9. Tighten air bleed plug (1) and drain plug (4).
 10. Open cock (2).
 11. Bleed Air from the Fuel System

After replacing the fuel filter element, bleed air from the fuel supply system.

(Refer to "Air Bleeding Procedures".)



MADG-07-002

MAINTENANCE

- 6** Check Fuel Hoses
 --- every 8 hours (daily)
 --- every 250 hours

⚠ CAUTION: Fuel leaks can lead to fires that may result in serious injury.

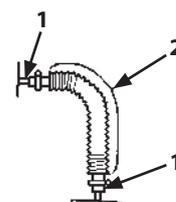
- Escaping combustible fluid can cause fires. Check for kinked hoses, hoses that rub against each other, and any fuel leaks.
- Repair or replace any loose or damaged hoses.
- Never reinstall bent or damaged hoses.

According to the check points shown below, check hoses for oil leaks and damage.

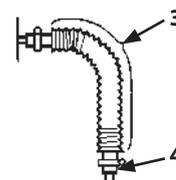
If any abnormality is found, replace or retighten as instructed in the table.

Hose

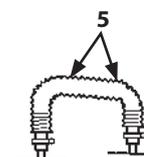
Interval (hours)	Check Points	Abnormalities	Remedies
Daily	Hose ends	Leak (1)	Retighten or replace
	Hose covers	Wear, crack (2)	Replace
Every 250 hours	Hose covers	Crack (3)	Replace
	Hose ends	Crack (4)	Replace
	Hose	Bend (5), Collapse (6)	Replace
	Hose fittings	Corrosion (7)	Replace



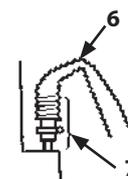
M137-07-003



M137-07-004



M137-07-005



M137-07-006

MAINTENANCE

F. Air Cleaner

- 1** **Clean and Replace Air Cleaner Outer Element**
Clean --- every 250 hours or when the restriction indicator comes ON
Replace --- after cleaning six times or after one year

- 2** **Replace Air Cleaner Inner Elements (Optional)**
--- When outer element is replaced

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Loosen clamps (2) to remove the cover.
3. Remove outer element (1).
4. Tap outer element (1) with the palm of your hand, NOT ON A HARD SURFACE.

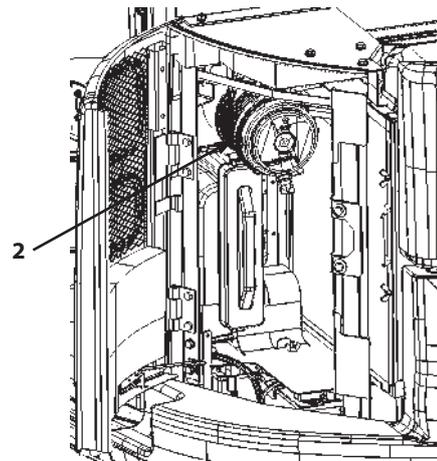
⚠ CAUTION: Use reduced compressed air pressure. (Less than 0.69 MPa, 7 kgf/cm²). Clear area of bystanders, guard against flying chips, and wear personal protection equipment including goggles or safety glasses.

IMPORTANT: To clean element (1), avoid giving shocks or striking element with other objects.

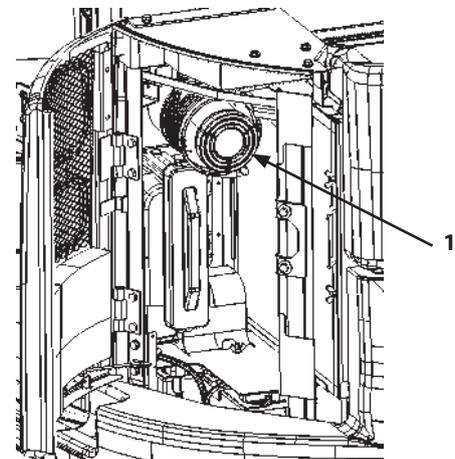
5. Clean outer element (1) by blowing compressed air [less than 0.69 MPa (7 kgf/cm²)] outward from the inside of the filter element. After cleaning, be sure to check element (1) for any damage. If any damage is found, replace the element with a new one.

IMPORTANT: Do not reuse inner element.

6. In case the air filter restriction indicator lights soon after cleaning outer element (1) even if the cleaning times are less than 6 times, replace both outer and inner elements with new ones.



MDED-07-011



MDED-07-012

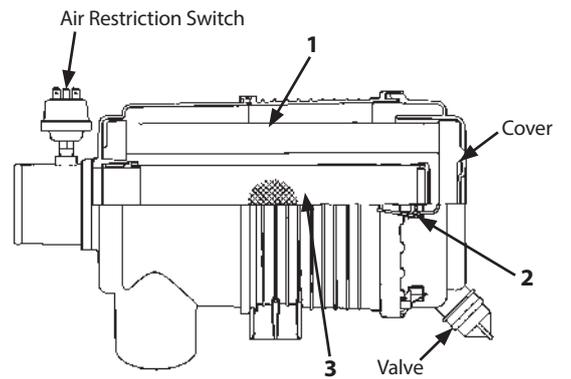
MAINTENANCE

- Clean the filter interior before installing outer element (1).
- Install outer element (1).

IMPORTANT: Do not install the element and/or the cover forcibly when installing the clamps, element, and/or cover. Failure to do so may result in deformation of the clamps, element, and/or cover.

- Install cover and tighten clamps (2).
- Start the engine and run at slow idle.
- Check the air filter restriction indicator on the monitor panel. If the air filter restriction indicator comes ON, stop the engine and replace outer element (1).
- When replacing the air cleaner filter element, replace both outer (1) and inner (3) elements together. Remove outer element (1). Clean the filter interior before removing inner element (3). Remove inner element (3). First install inner element (3) and then install outer element (1).

IMPORTANT: Do not reuse inner element (3). Always replace the new one.



MADC-07-008

MAINTENANCE

G. Cooling System

Coolant

IMPORTANT: Use soft water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water. Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %.

If a coolant mixed with less than 30 % of Hitachi Long-Life Coolant is used, service life of the cooling parts may be shortened due to damage by freezing or corrosion of coolant system parts.

Antifreeze Mixing Ratio

Air Temperature [°C]	Mixing Ratio [%]	Antifreeze		Soft water	
		Liters	US qt	Liters	US qt
-1	30	2.9	3.1	6.6	7.0
-15	35	3.3	3.5	6.2	6.5
-20	40	3.8	4.0	5.7	6.0
-25	45	4.3	4.5	5.2	5.5
-30	50	4.8	5.1	4.7	5.0

Precautions for handling antifreeze

 **CAUTION:** Antifreeze is poisonous.

- Antifreeze is poisonous; if ingested, it can cause serious injury or death. Induce vomiting and get emergency medical attention immediately.
- If antifreeze is accidentally splashed into eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes and get emergency medical attention.
- When storing antifreeze, be sure to keep it in a clearly marked container with a tight lid. Always keep ANTIFREEZE out of the reach of children.
- Use attention to fire hazards. LLC is specified as a dangerous substance in the fire protection law.
- When disposing of LLC, be sure to comply with all local regulations. When storing or disposing of antifreeze, be sure to comply with all local regulations.

MAINTENANCE

1 Check Coolant Level --- daily

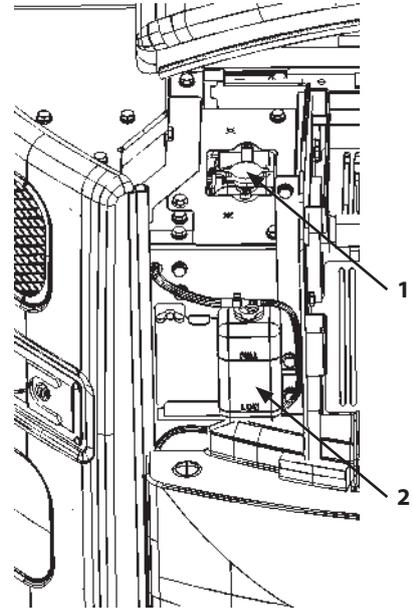
With the engine cold, the coolant level must be between the FULL and LOW marks on coolant reservoir (2).

If the coolant level is below the low mark, add coolant to coolant reservoir (2).

⚠ CAUTION: Do not loosen cap (1) until the coolant temperature in the radiator becomes cool. Hot steam may spout out, possibly causing severe burns. After the coolant temperature has lowered, slowly loosen cap (1) to release the inside air pressure before removing cap (1).

If coolant reservoir (2) is empty, add coolant to the radiator and then to coolant reservoir (2).

- When refilling a long life coolant (LLC), use the same brand product and the same mixture ratio as already used in the machine.
- If only water is refilled, the mixture ratio in the long life coolant (LLC) is diluted so that anti-rust and antifreeze effect in the coolant will become deteriorated.



MDED-07-013

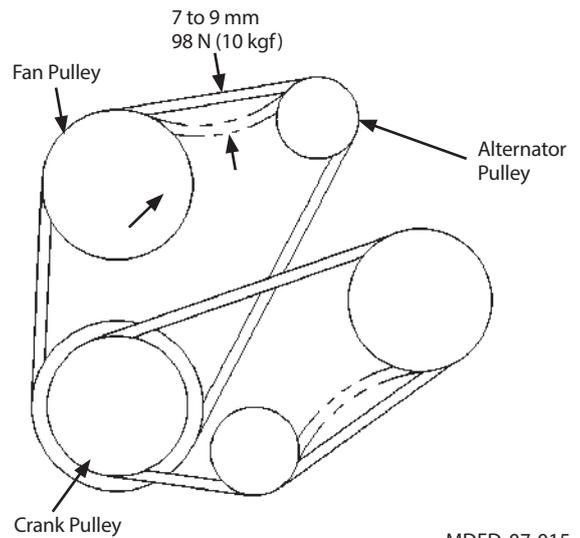
MAINTENANCE

- 2** Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension
--- every 100 hours (first time after 50 hours)

IMPORTANT: Loose fan belt may result in insufficient battery charging, engine overheating, as well as premature belt wear. Belts that are too tight, however, can damage both bearings and belts.

Inspect

Check fan belt tension by depressing the midpoint between the fan pulley and the alternator pulley by your thumb with a depressing force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf). Deflection must be within the value illustrated in the right. Visually check the belt for wear. Replace if necessary.

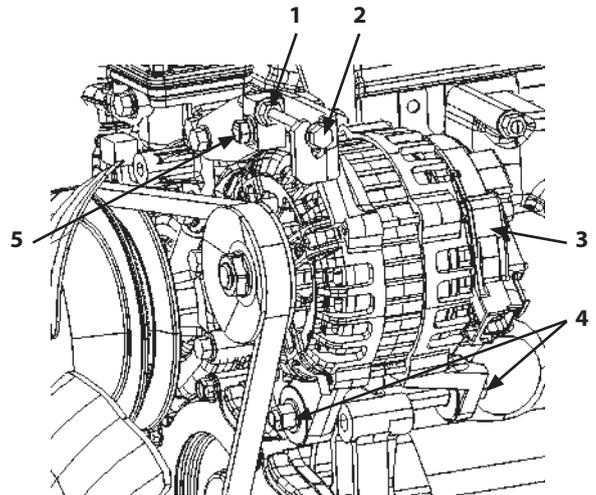


MDED-07-015

Adjust Drive Belt Tension

1. Loosen lock nut (1) at the top of alternator (3), and lock nut (4) at the bottom of alternator (3).
2. Adjust belt tension by moving alternator (3) forward or backward by using adjustment bolt (2).
3. Securely tighten lock nut (1) and (4).

IMPORTANT: When a new belt is installed, be sure to re-adjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.



MDED-07-016

MAINTENANCE

3 Change Coolant --- twice a year (in spring and autumn)

 **NOTE:** When genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant is used, change interval is once every two years (in autumn every other year) or every 2000 hours whichever comes first.

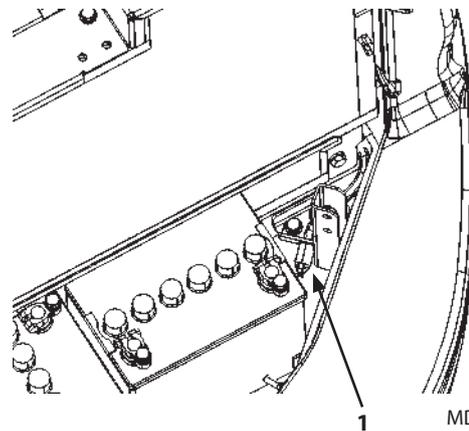
 **CAUTION:** Do not loosen the radiator cap until the system has cooled. Hot steam may spout out, possibly causing severe burns. Loosen the cap slowly to the stop. Release all pressure before removing the cap.

IMPORTANT: Use soft water as a coolant. Do not use strong acid or alkaline water. Use the coolant with genuine Hitachi Long-Life Coolant (LLC) mixed by 30 to 50 %.

Procedure:

1. Park the machine following the same procedures as described on page 7-8 for preparation for inspection and maintenance.
2. Remove the radiator front screen. Remove the radiator cap. Open drain cock (1) on the radiator and engine block to allow the coolant to drain completely. Remove impurities such as scale at the same time.
3. Close drain cock (1). Fill the radiator with soft water containing fewer impurities and a radiator cleaner agent. Run the engine at a speed slightly higher than slow idle; when the needle of the temperature gauge reaches the green zone, run the engine for about 10 more minutes.
4. Stop the engine and open radiator drain cock (1). Flush out the cooling system with tap water, until draining water is clear. This helps remove rust and sediment.
5. Close drain cock (1). Fill the radiator with soft water and LLC at the specified mixing ratio. When adding coolant, do so slowly to avoid mixing air bubbles in the system.

Run the engine to sufficiently bleed air from the cooling system.
6. After adding coolant, operate the engine for several minutes. Check the coolant level again, and add coolant if necessary.



MDED-07-017

MAINTENANCE

- 4** Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler Core
Outside --- every 500 hours
Inside --- when coolant is changed

CAUTION: Use reduced compressed air pressure (Less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm²) for cleaning purposes. Wear personal protection equipment including eye protection.

IMPORTANT: If air with pressure of higher than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²) or tap water with high delivery pressure is used for cleaning, damage to the radiator and oil cooler fins may result.

The radiator and the oil cooler are arranged in tandem. If dirt or dust is accumulated on them, cooling system performance decreases. Clean the radiator and oil cooler cores with compressed air pressure (lower than 0.2 MPa (2 kgf/cm²)) or tap water. It will prevent a reduction in cooling system performance.

- 5** Clean Oil Cooler and Radiator Front Screen
--- every 500 hours

IMPORTANT: Check the screen daily and replace it if necessary when the machine is operated in dusty areas.

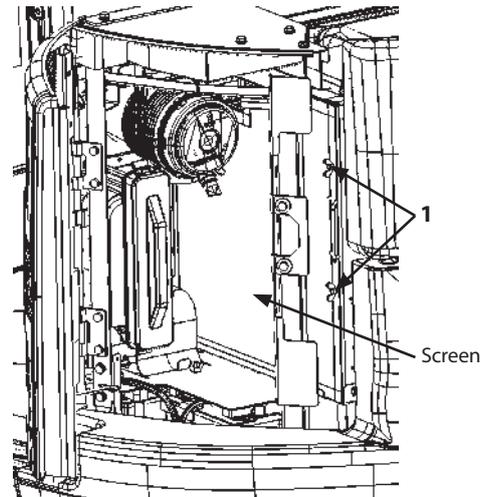
Remove wing bolts (1) and screen.

- 6** Clean Air Conditioner Condenser
--- every 500 hours

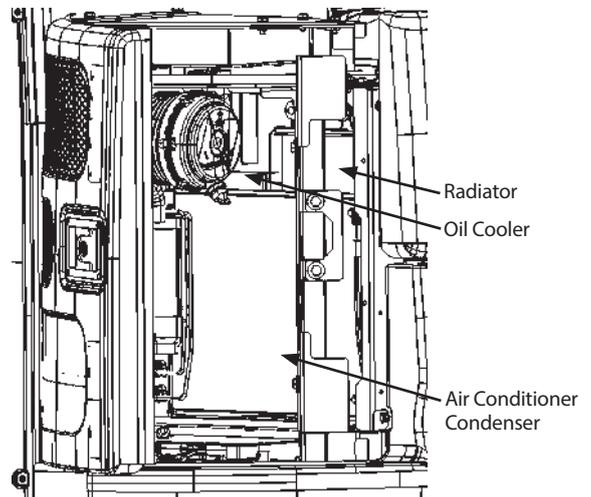
IMPORTANT: Check the air conditioner condenser daily and clean it if necessary when the machine is operated in dusty areas.

- 7** Clean Fuel Cooler Front Screen
--- every 500 hours

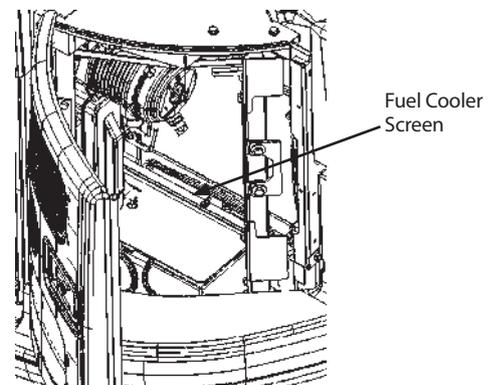
IMPORTANT: Check the screen daily and replace it if necessary when the machine is operated in dusty areas.



MDED-07-018



MDED-07-019



MDEC-07-002

MAINTENANCE

H. Electrical System

IMPORTANT:

- Improper radio communication equipment and associated parts, and/or improper installation of radio communication equipment effects the machine's electronic parts, causing involuntary movement of the machine.
Also, improper installation of electrical equipment may cause machine failure and/or a fire on the machine.
Be sure to consult your authorized dealer when installing a radio communication equipment or additional electrical parts, or when replacing electrical parts.
- Never attempt to disassemble or modify the electrical/electronic components. If replacement or modification of such components is required, contact your authorized dealer.

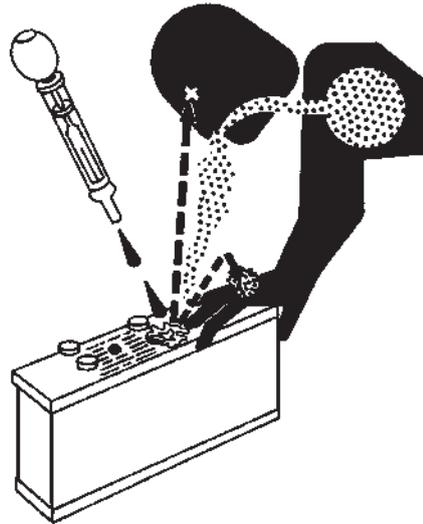
1 Batteries

⚠ WARNING:

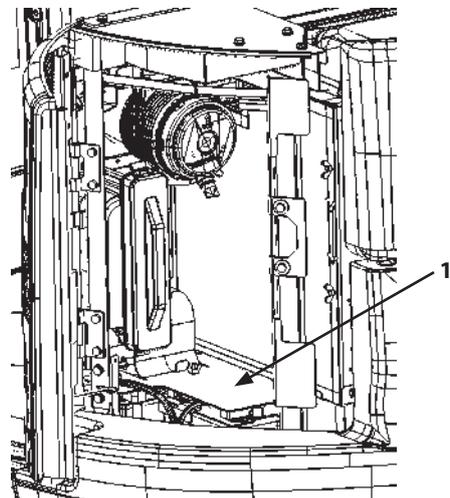
- Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries.
- Do not leave cover (1) removed. Do not keep tools, metals or flammable materials around the battery or inside the battery room. If a metal tool is placed across the battery terminal and a vehicle component such as the engine block, sparks may be created, possibly resulting in fire and/or explosion.
- Do not continue to use or charge the battery when electrolyte level is lower than specified. Explosion of the battery may result.
- Charge the batteries in a well ventilated location.
- Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.
Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.

Avoid hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.
5. Using proper booster battery starting procedures.



SA-036



MDED-07-018

MAINTENANCE

If you spill acid on yourself:

- 1. Flush your skin with water.**
- 2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.**
- 3. If splashed in eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.**

If acid is swallowed:

- 1. Do not induce vomiting.**
- 2. Drink large amounts of water or milk.**
- 3. Get medical attention immediately.**

IMPORTANT: Add water to batteries in freezing weather before you begin operating your machine for the day, or else charge the batteries.

IMPORTANT: If the battery is used with the electrolyte level lower than the specified lower level, the battery may deteriorate quickly.

IMPORTANT: Do not refill electrolyte more than the specified upper level. Electrolyte may spill, damaging the painted surfaces and/or corroding other machine parts.

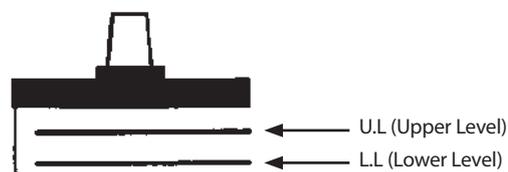
 **NOTE:** In case electrolyte is refilled more than the specified upper level line or beyond the bottom end of the sleeve, remove the excess electrolyte until the electrolyte level is down to the bottom end of the sleeve using a pipette. After neutralizing the removed electrolyte with sodium bicarbonate, flush it with plenty of water, otherwise, consult the battery manufacturer.

MAINTENANCE

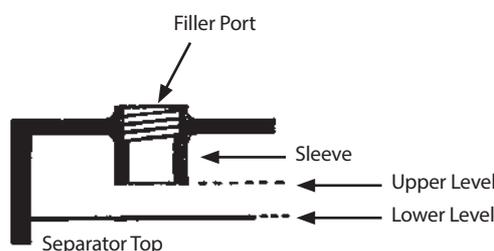
Electrolyte Level Check

--- every month

1. Check the electrolyte level at least once a month.
2. Park the machine on level ground and stop the engine.
3. Check the electrolyte level.
 - 3.1 When checking the level from the battery side:
Clean around the level check lines with a wet towel.
Do not use a dry towel. Static electricity may be developed, causing the battery gas to explode. Check if the electrolyte level is between U.L (Upper Level) and L.L (Lower Level). In case the electrolyte level is lower than the middle level between the U.L and L.L, immediately refill distilled water or commercial battery fluid. Be sure to refill with distilled water before recharging (operating the machine). After refilling, securely tighten the filler plug.
 - 3.2 When impossible to check the level from the battery side or no level check mark is indicated on the side:
After removing the filler plug from the top of the battery. Check the electrolyte level by viewing through the filler port. It is difficult to judge the accurate electrolyte level in this case. Therefore, when the electrolyte level is flush with the U.L, the level is judged to be proper. Then, referring to the right illustrations, check the level. When the electrolyte level is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, refill with distilled water or commercial battery fluid up to the bottom end of the sleeve. Be sure to refill with distilled water before recharging (operating the machine). After refilling, securely tighten the filler plug.
 - 3.3 When an indicator is available to check the level, follow its check result.
4. Always keep around the battery terminals clean to prevent battery discharge. Check terminals for loose and/or rust. Coat terminals with grease or petroleum jelly to prevent corrosion build up.



M146-07-109



M146-07-110

Proper



Since the electrolyte surface touches the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrolyte surface is raised due to surface tension so that the electrode ends are seen curved.

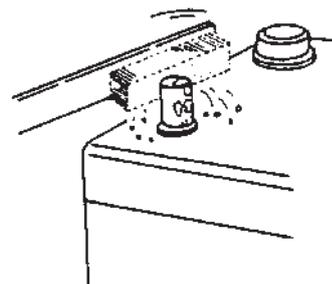
M146-07-111

Lower



When the electrolyte surface is lower than the bottom end of the sleeve, the electrode ends are seen straight.

M146-07-112



M409-07-072

MAINTENANCE

Check Electrolyte Specific Gravity

--- every month

⚠ WARNING: Battery gas can explode. Keep sparks and flames away from batteries. Use a flashlight to check the battery electrolyte level.

Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into the eyes.

Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a voltmeter or hydrometer.

Always remove the grounded (-) battery clamp first and replace it last.

Avoid hazard by:

1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
4. Avoiding spilling or dripping electrolyte.
5. Using proper booster battery starting procedures.

If you spill acid on yourself:

1. Flush your skin with water.
2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
3. If splashed in eyes, flush with water for 10 to 15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

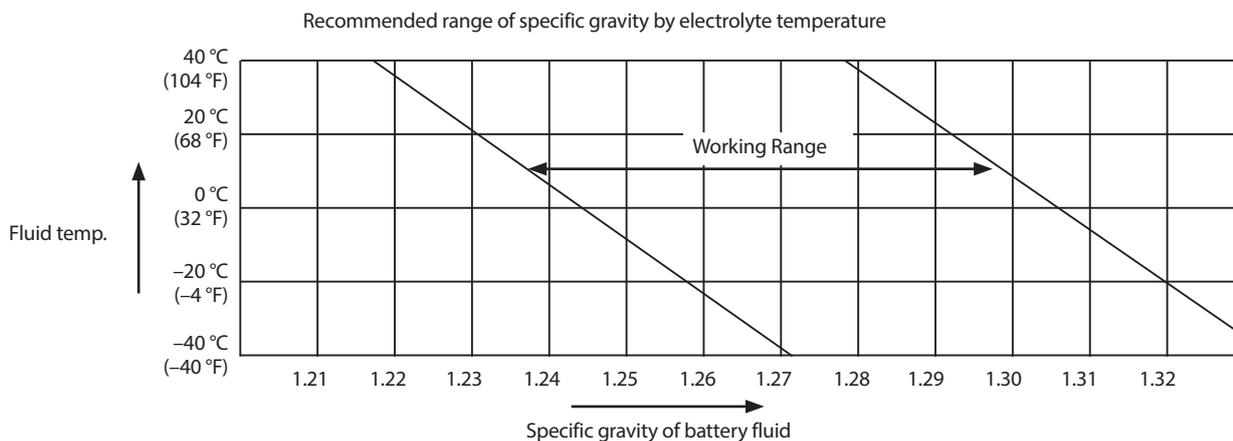
If acid is swallowed:

1. Do not induce vomiting.
2. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
3. Get medical attention immediately.

IMPORTANT: Check the specific gravity of the electrolyte after it is cooled, not immediately after operation.

Check the electrolyte specific gravity in each battery cell.

The lowest limit of the specific gravity for the electrolyte varies depending on electrolyte temperature. The specific gravity should be kept within the range shown below. Charge the battery if the specific gravity is below the limit.



MAINTENANCE

Replace Batteries

Your machine has two 12-volt batteries with negative (-) ground.

If one battery in a 24-volt system has failed but the other is still good, replace the failed battery with one of the same type. For example, replace a failed maintenance-free battery with a new maintenance-free battery. Different types of batteries may have different rates of charge. This difference could overload one of the batteries and cause it to fail.

MAINTENANCE

2 Replacing Fuses --- as necessary

If any electrical equipment fails to operate, first check the fuses. Fuse box is located behind the operator's seat.

 **NOTE:**

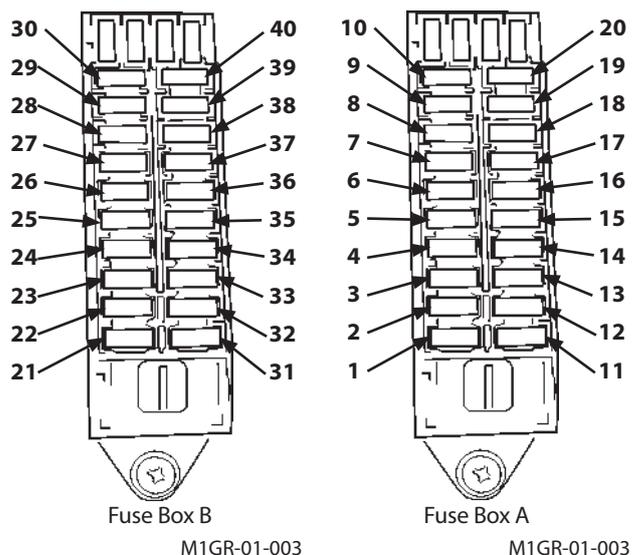
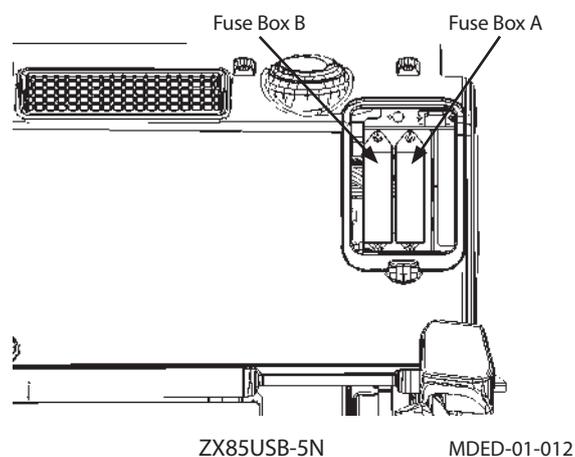
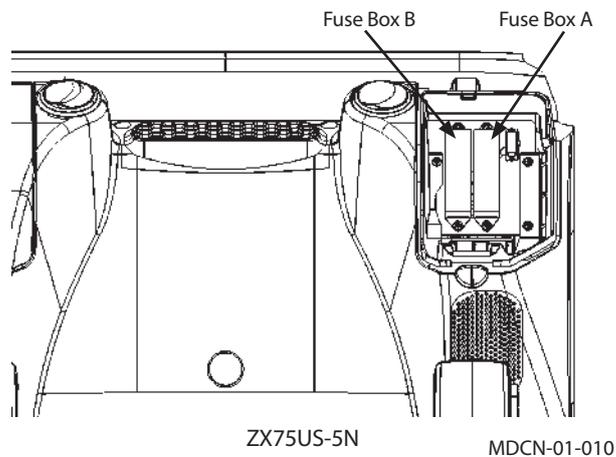
- One each spare fuse for respective fuse capacities is provided in the fuse box.
- A fuse removing jig is provided in the fuse box.

Fuse Box A

10- CONTROLLER 5 A	20- OPTION3 (BATT) 5 A
9- BACKUP 10 A	19- HORN 10 A
8- SPARE	18- IDLE STOP 5 A
7- START 5 A	17- FUEL PUMP 5 A
6- OPTION2 (ALT) 20 A	16- POWER ON 5 A
5- OPTION1 (ALT) 5 A	15- AUX. 10 A
4- SOLENOID 20 A	14- MONITOR 5 A
3- HEATER 20 A	13- LIGHTER 10 A
2- WIPER 10 A	12- RADIO 5 A
1- LAMP 20 A	11- DC-DC 20 A

Fuse BoxB

30- SPARE	40- SPARE
29- SPARE	39- SPARE
28- SPARE	38- SPARE
27- AUX.3 5 A	37- SPARE
26- QUICK HITCH 5 A	36- SPARE
25- IMOBI. 5 A	35- SPARE
24- 12V UNIT 10 A	34- AUX.2 10 A
23- CAB LAMP REAR 10 A	33- WARNING LAMP 10 A
22- CAB LAMP FRONT 10 A	32- CAB LAMP FRONT+2 10 A
21- SEAT HEATER 10 A	31- SEAT COMPR. 10 A



MAINTENANCE

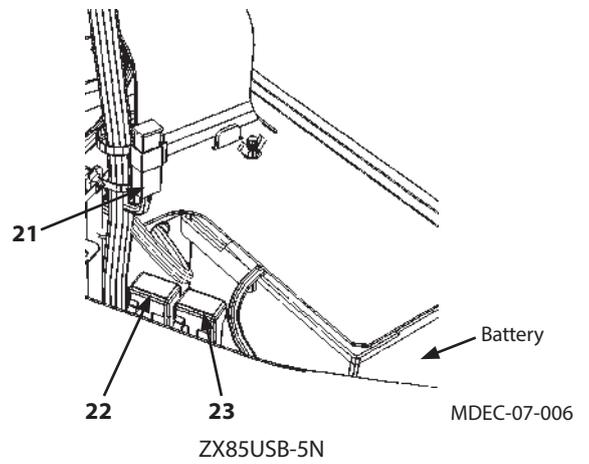
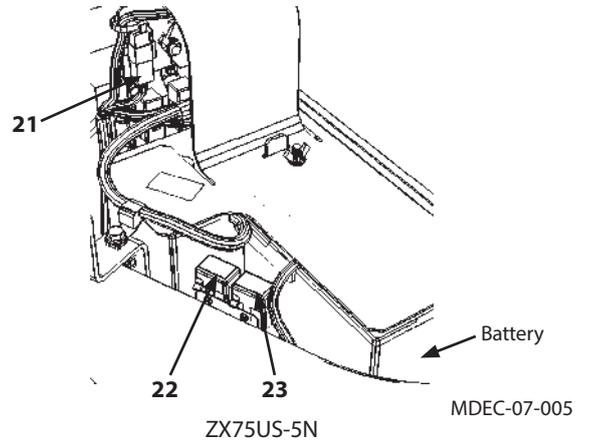
- Fusible Link (Main Fuse)

In case the starter won't rotate even if the key switch is turned to the START position, fusible link may be the cause of the trouble. Remove the cover next to the engine coolant reservoir to check the fuse. Replace it if blown.

21- Black
65 A

22- - Side (Yellow)
60 A

23- + Side (Red)
50 A



MAINTENANCE

I. Miscellaneous

1 Check and Replace Bucket Teeth --- daily

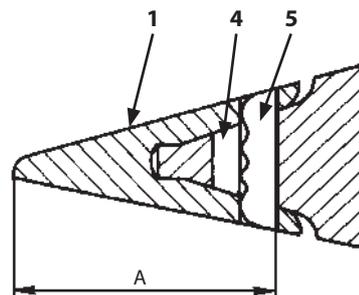
Check bucket teeth (1) for wear and looseness. Replace teeth (1) if tooth wear exceeds the designated service limit shown below.

	New	Limit of Use
A mm (in)	156 (6.1)	80 (3.1)

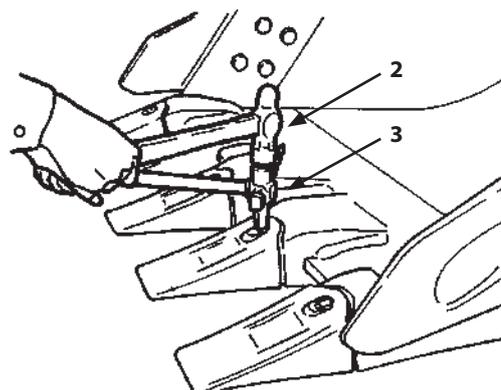
Replace

⚠ CAUTION:

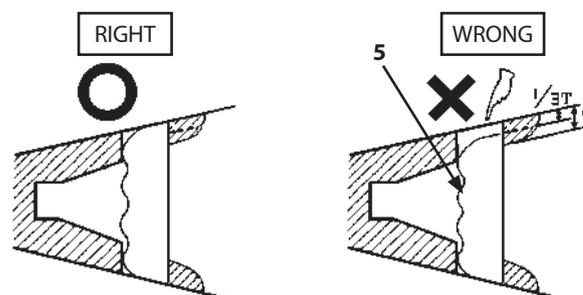
- Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal.
 - Wear hard hat or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.
1. Use hammer (2) and drift (3) to drive out locking pin (5). Take care not to damage lock rubber (4).
 2. Check lock pin (5) and lock rubber (4). Short locking pins and damaged rubber pin locks must be replaced with new ones.



M104-07-056



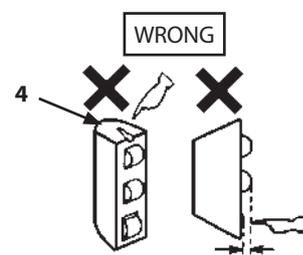
M104-07-116



M104-07-118

Flush one end of the locking pin to evaluate. In this instance, the locking pin is too short.

M104-07-058



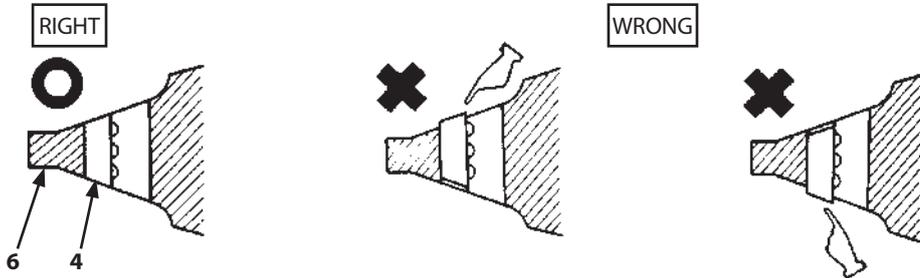
Crack on the rubber. The steel ball may come out.

The steel ball dents when pushing the ball.

M104-07-059

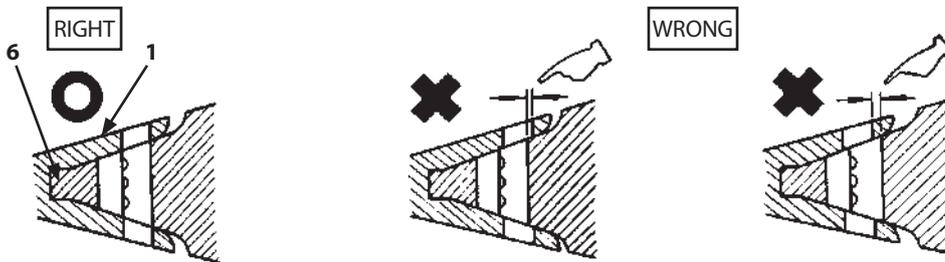
MAINTENANCE

- Clean shank (6) surface.
- Install rubber pin lock (4) into shank (6) hole as shown.



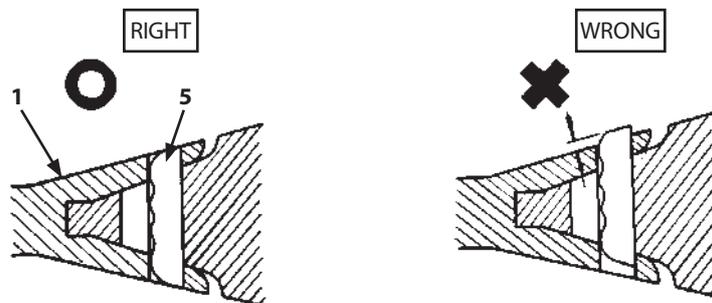
M104-07-060

- Position new tooth (1) over shank (6).



M104-07-061

- Drive locking pin (5) fully into the hole as shown.



M104-07-062

MAINTENANCE

2 Change Bucket

CAUTION: When driving the connecting pins in or out, guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris. Wear hard hat or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

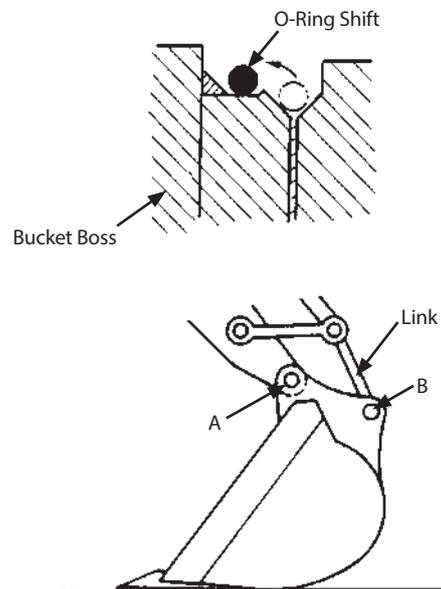
Before starting converting work, keep bystanders clear of the machine. Slowly move the front attachment. When using a signal person, coordinate hand signals before starting.

Removal

1. Place the bucket in a stable position.
2. Slide the O-rings out of the way, as shown.
3. Remove bucket pins A and B to separate the arm and bucket.

Installation

1. Clean the pins and pin bores. Apply sufficient grease to the pins and pin bores.
2. Place the new bucket in stable position as shown in the figure.
3. Fit the arm and alternate bucket. Be sure the bucket will not roll. Install bucket pins A and B.
4. Install the locking pins and snap rings on pins A and B.
5. Install O-rings to the specified positions.
6. Apply grease to each pin.
7. Start the engine and run at slow idle. Slowly operate the bucket in both directions to check for any interference in bucket movement.



M104-07-063

MAINTENANCE

3 Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel

CAUTION: When driving the connecting pins in or out, guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris. Wear hard hat or safety glasses, and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

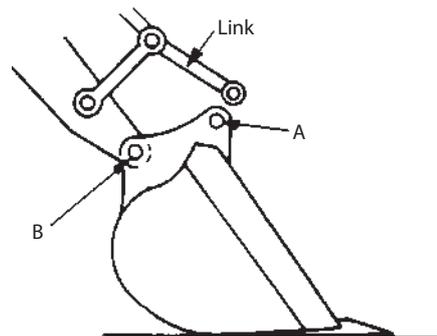
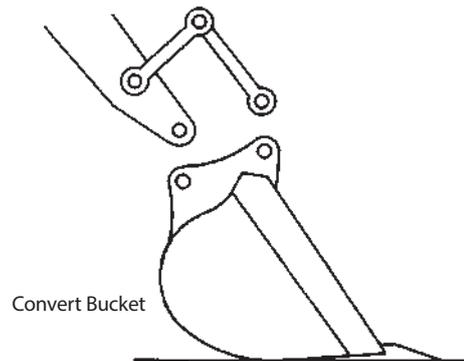
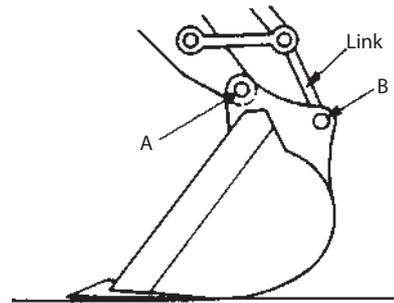
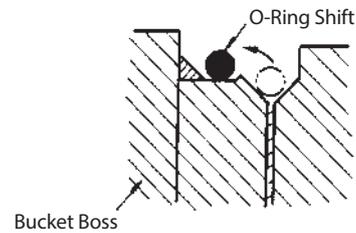
Converting the bucket connection allows you to use the machine as a face shovel. Before starting converting work, keep bystanders clear of the machine. Slowly move the front attachment. When using a signal person, coordinate hand signals before starting.

Procedure:

1. Place the bucket in a stable position.
2. Slide the O-rings out of the way, as shown.
3. Remove bucket pins A and B to separate the arm and bucket.

Clean the pins and pin bores. Apply sufficient grease to the pins and pin bores.

4. Turn the bucket 180°. Be sure the bucket will not roll.
5. Fit the arm and alternate bucket. Be sure the bucket will not roll. Install bucket pins A and B.
6. Install the locking pins and snap rings on pins A and B.
7. Install O-rings to the specified positions.
8. Apply grease to each pin.
9. Start the engine and run at slow idle. Slowly operate the bucket in both directions to check for any interference in bucket movement.



M104-07-064

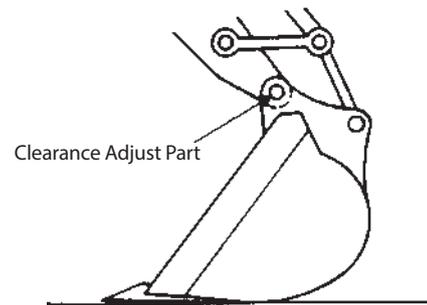
MAINTENANCE

4 Adjust Bucket Linkage

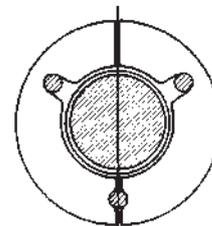
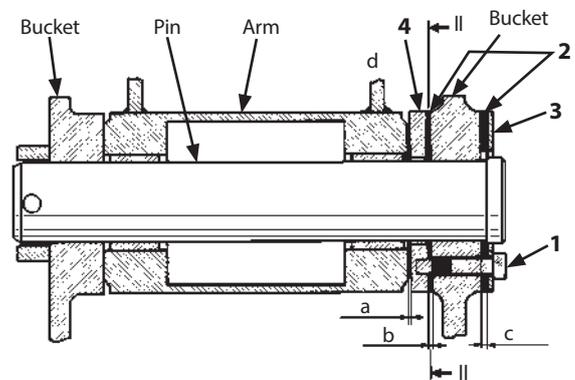
The machine is provided with a bucket adjustment system to take up play in the linkage. When play in the linkage increases, remove and install shims as follows:

1. Place the bucket in a stable position.
2. Run the engine at slow idle. With the bucket on the ground, slowly swing counterclockwise slightly until the top of the left bucket boss contacts the arm.
3. Stop the engine. Pull the pilot control shut-off lever to the LOCK position.
4. Slightly loosen three bolts (1) using a 8 mm wrench. Remove all shims (2) from clearance (c) between plate (3) and bucket. As shim (2) is a dual partitioning type, it can be easily removed by slightly loosening bolt (1) and inserting tip of a screw driver into the contact surface of left and right shims (2).
5. Push and hold bolts (1) to remove all clearance (a) between arm and boss (4). Holding boss (4) against arm increases clearance (b). Install as many shims (2) into clearance (b) as possible.
6. Install remaining shims (2) into clearance (c) and tighten bolts (1) to 50 N·m (5 kgf·m).

 **NOTE:** The total number of shims (2) used in clearance (b) and (c) are $6 \times 2 = 12$. Remaining shims (2) must be installed in clearance (c) to prevent arm end face or bolt damage. Replace boss (4) with new one if measurement (d) is 5 mm (0.2 in) or less.



M503-07-056



Section A

MDED-07-041

MAINTENANCE

5 Remove Travel Levers

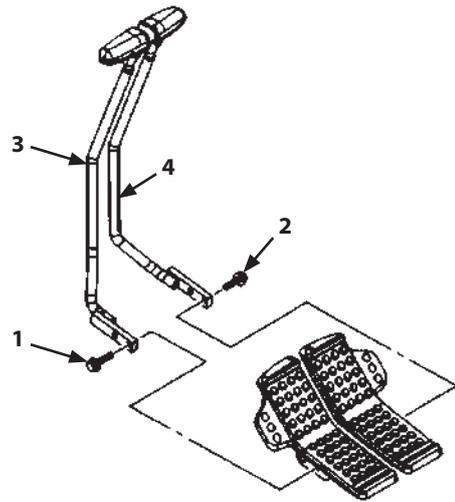
The travel levers may be removed if desired.

Procedure:

Remove bolts (1) and (2) to remove travel levers (3) and (4) from brackets.

 **NOTE:** Wrench size: 17 mm

Tightening Torque: 50 N·m (5 kgf·m)



M178-07-077

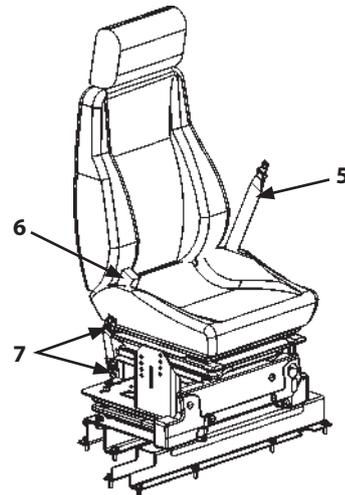
6 Check and Replace Seat Belt

Check --- daily

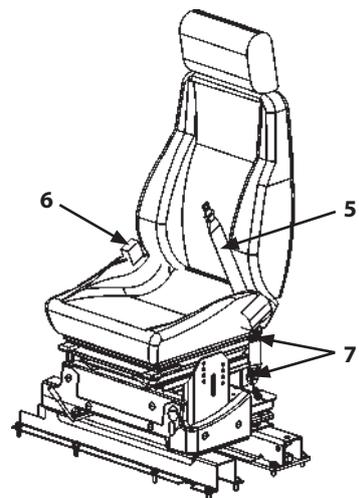
Replace --- every 3 years

Prior to operating the machine, thoroughly examine belt (5), buckle (6) and attaching hardware (7). If any item is damaged or materially worn, replace the seat belt or component before operating the machine.

We recommend that the seat belt be replaced every three years regardless of its apparent condition.



M1U1-07-008

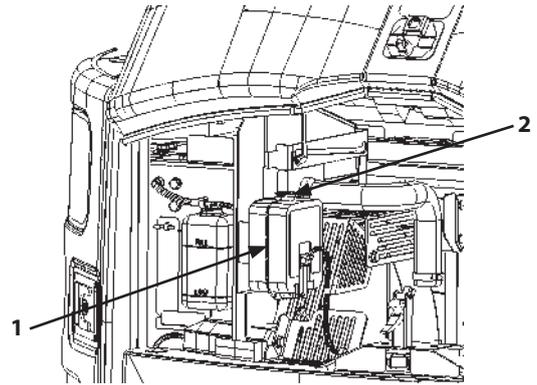


M1U1-07-009

MAINTENANCE

7 Check Windshield Fluid Level

Check fluid in windshield washer tank (1). If the fluid level is low, remove cap (2) and add fluid via the opening. During winter season, use all season windshield washer which will not freeze.



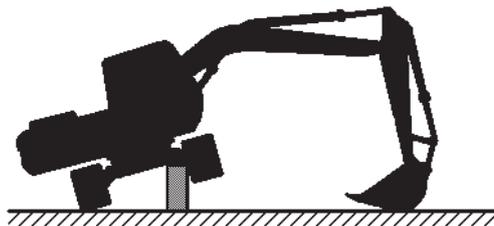
MDED-07-003

MAINTENANCE

8 Check Track Sag (Steel Crawler) --- every 50 hours

Swing the upperstructure 90 ° and lower the bucket to raise the track off the ground as shown. Measure distance (A) at the middle of the track frame from the bottom of the track frame to the back face of the track shoe.

Each time, be sure to place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine.

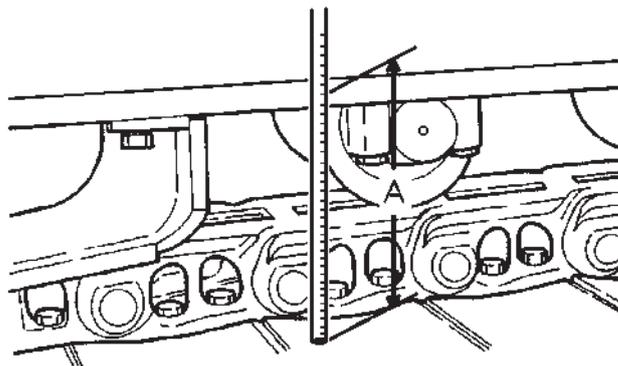


M104-07-067

CAUTION: To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, and any body parts do not become entangled when working around the tracks.

	Appropriate sag
A mm (in)	210 to 245 (8.3 to 9.0)

NOTE: Check track sag after thoroughly removing soil stuck on the track area by washing.



M107-07-068

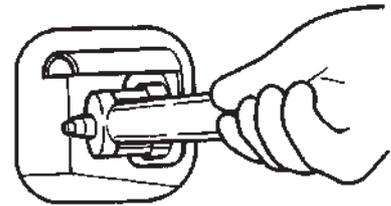
Adjust Track Sag

1. If track sag is not within specifications, loosen or tighten the track following the procedures shown on the next page.
2. When adjusting track sag, lower the bucket to the ground to raise one track off the ground. Repeat this procedure to raise the other track. Each time, be sure to place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine. To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, and any body parts do not become entangled when working around the tracks.
3. After adjusting both side track sags, rotate the tracks backward and forward to equalize both side track sags.
4. Recheck the track sag once more. Readjust as necessary.

MAINTENANCE

Loosen the Track

CAUTION: The pressure inside the cylinder of the track adjuster is high. Do not loosen valve (1) quickly or loosen it too much as valve (1) may fly out or high-pressure grease in the adjusting cylinder may spout out. Slowly loosen valve (1) while keeping body parts and face away from valve (1). Never loosen grease fitting (2).



IMPORTANT: When gravel or mud is packed between sprockets and track links, remove it before loosening.

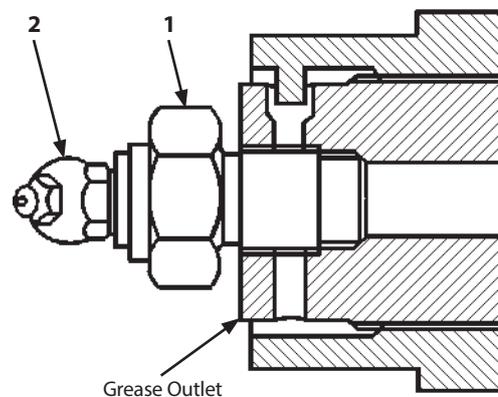
1. To loosen the track, slowly turn valve (1) counterclockwise using long socket 19; grease will escape from the grease outlet.
2. Between 1 to 1.5 turns of valve (1) is sufficient to loosen the track.
3. If grease does not drain smoothly, slowly rotate the raised track.

M107-07-075

CAUTION: To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, and any body parts do not become entangled when working around the tracks.

4. When proper track sag is obtained, turn valve (1) clockwise to the original condition.

Tightening Torque: 150 N·m (15 kgf·m, 108 lbf·ft)



M104-07-119

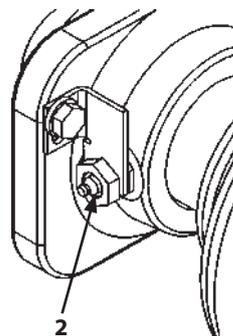
CAUTION: Consult your authorized dealer if grease is not sufficiently drained.

MAINTENANCE

Tighten the Track

⚠ CAUTION: It is abnormal if the track can not be adjusted. The strong force acts on the spring in track adjuster. Therefore, the grease in cylinder is highly pressurized. In such cases, **NEVER ATTEMPT TO DISASSEMBLE** the track or track adjuster, because of dangerous high-pressure grease inside the track adjuster. See your authorized dealer immediately.

To tighten the track, connect a grease gun to grease fitting (2) and add grease until the sag is within specifications.



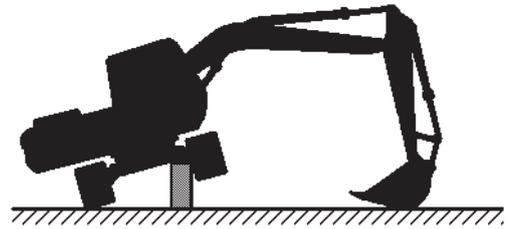
MDAA-07-057

MAINTENANCE

9 Check Track Sag (Rubber Crawler) (Optional)

--- daily

Swing the upperstructure 90 ° and lower the bucket to raise the track off the ground as shown. Rotate the rubber track so that the track joint is positioned at the upper center of the track. Measure distance (A) from the bottom of the lower roller tread to the inner ridge of the rubber track. Each time, be sure to place blocks under the track frame to support the machine.



M104-07-067

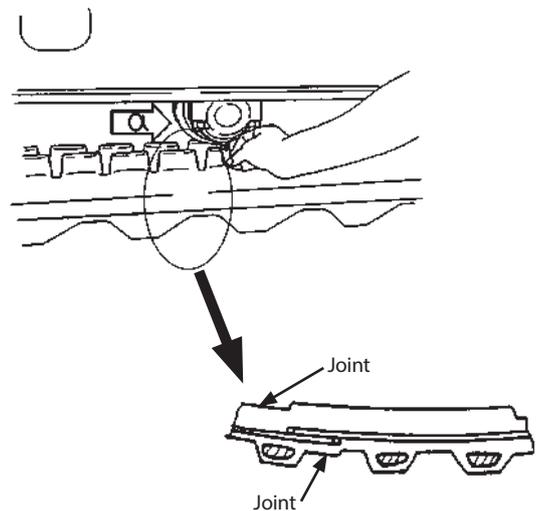
CAUTION: To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, and any body parts do not become entangled when working around the tracks.

Appropriate sag A	15 to 20 mm (0.6 to 0.8 in)
-------------------	-----------------------------

NOTE: Check track sag after thoroughly removing soil stuck on the track area by washing.

Adjust Track Sag

1. If track sag is not within specifications, loosen or tighten the track following the procedures shown on the next page.
2. When adjusting track sag, lower the bucket to the ground to raise one track off the ground. Repeat this procedure to raise the other track. Each time, be sure to place blocks under the machine frame to support the machine. To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, and any body parts do not become entangled when working around the tracks.
3. After adjusting both side track sags, rotate the tracks backward and forward to equalize both side track sags.
4. Recheck the track sag once more. Readjust as necessary.

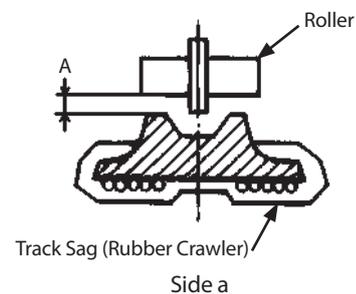


M102-07-070

M102-07-075

Check Rubber Track for Damage

Check the rubber track for damage. If any, consult your authorized dealer for repair.

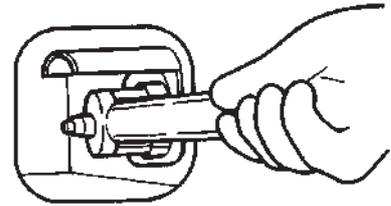


M503-05-050

MAINTENANCE

Loosen the Track (Rubber Crawler)

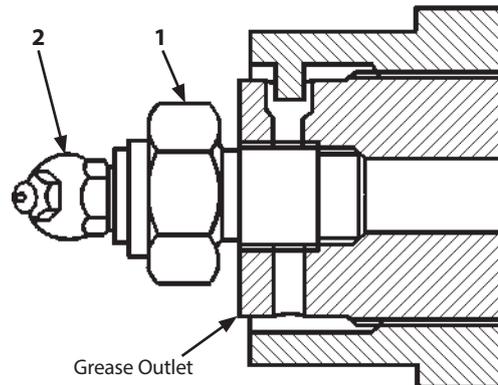
CAUTION: The pressure inside the cylinder of the track adjuster is high. Do not loosen valve (1) quickly or loosen it too much as valve (1) may fly out or high-pressure grease in the adjusting cylinder may spout out. Slowly loosen valve (1) while keeping body parts and face away from valve (1). Never loosen grease fitting (2).



IMPORTANT: When gravel or mud is packed between sprockets and rubber crawlers, remove it before loosening.

M107-07-075

1. To loosen the track, slowly turn valve (1) counterclockwise using long socket 19; grease will escape from the grease outlet.
2. Between 1 to 1.5 turns of valve (1) is sufficient to loosen the track. Do not loosen valve (1) further.
3. If grease does not drain smoothly, slowly rotate the raised track.



M104-07-119

CAUTION: To prevent accidents, care should be taken to ensure that hands, feet, and any body parts do not become entangled when working around the tracks.

4. When proper track sag is obtained, turn valve (1) clockwise to the original condition.

Tightening Torque: 150 N·m (15 kgf·m, 108 lbf·ft)

CAUTION: Consult your authorized dealer if grease is not sufficiently drained.

Tighten the Track (Rubber Crawler)

CAUTION: It is abnormal if the track can not be adjusted. The strong force acts on the spring in track adjuster. Therefore, the grease in cylinder is highly pressurized. In such cases, NEVER ATTEMPT TO DISASSEMBLE the track or track adjuster, because of dangerous high-pressure grease inside the track adjuster. See your authorized dealer immediately.

To tighten the track, connect a grease gun to grease fitting (2) and add grease until the sag is within specifications.

MAINTENANCE

Converting the Track

 **WARNING:**

- **Consult your authorized dealer for converting the track. Extremely strong force is being applied. Do not allow anyone to stand in front of the front idler.**
- **After the rubber track is removed, the front idle will become free to remove. If the front idle comes off unexpectedly, personal injury and/or death may result. Be sure to remove the rubber track only after taking an appropriate measure to prevent the front idler from coming off.**

Consult your authorized dealer for converting the track.
Change the track adjuster whenever converting the steel or rubber track.

MAINTENANCE

10 Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter

Clean Circulating/Fresh Air Filters

Circulating Air Filter --- every 500 hours

Fresh Air Filter --- every 500 hours

Replace Circulating/Fresh Air Filters

Circulating Air Filter --- After cleaning 6 times or so

Fresh Air Filter --- After cleaning 6 times or so

Fresh Air Filter Removal

1. From the cab outside, pull the upper section of filter cover (1) located at the rear of the cab to remove the cover.
2. Pull the grip on fresh air filter (2) through the opening for filter cover (1) to remove fresh air filter (2).

CAUTION: Use reduced compressed air pressure (less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm²) for cleaning purposes. Clear the area of bystanders, guard against flying chips, and wear personal protection equipment including eye protection.

Cleaning

Clean both the external and internal filters by blowing compressed air or washing with water.

When washing the filters with water, follow the procedures below:

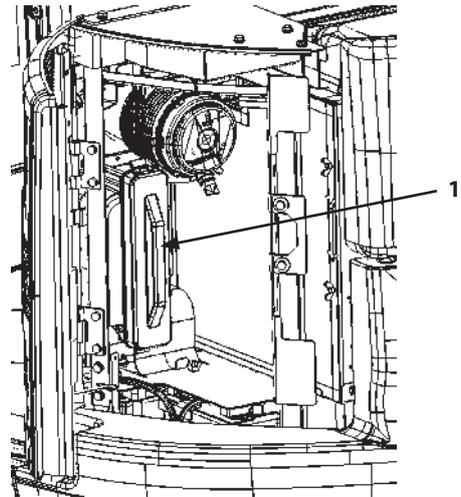
1. Wash with tap water.
2. Soak the filters in neutral detergent-mixed water for approx. 5 minutes.
3. Wash the filters with water again.
4. Dry the filters.

Installation

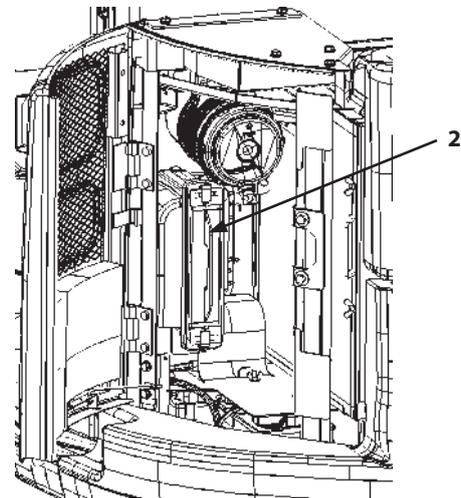
When installing the cleaned circulation filter or new filters, follow the reverse order of the Removing Filter procedures described on the front page.

Fresh Air Filter (2)

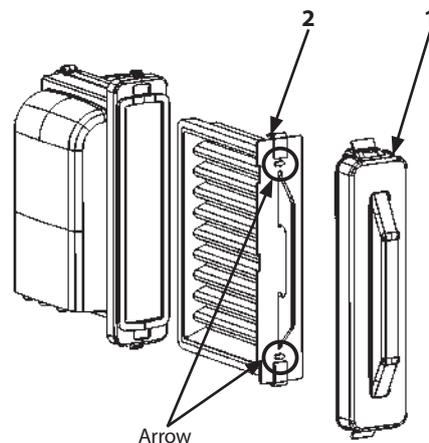
Set fresh air filter (2) so that the arrow faces toward the cab right side. After setting, install the filter cover so that it aligns with the duct.



MDED-07-018



MDED-07-047



MDED-07-048

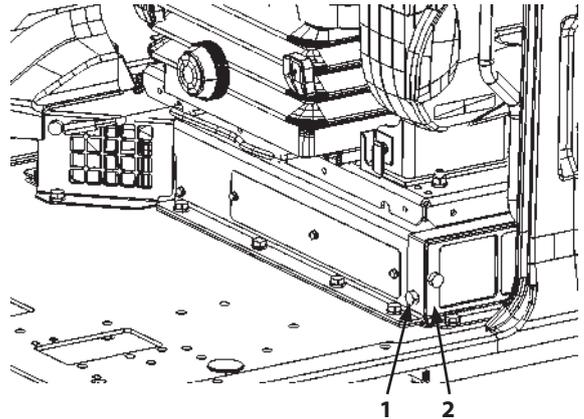
MAINTENANCE

Circulating Air Filter

ZX75US-5N

Removal Circulating Air Filter (Outside)

1. Circulating air filter is located beside the seat stand.
2. Remove screws (1). Remove cover (2) by pulling it to the cab front.
3. Remove screw (3).
4. Remove circulating air filter (outside) (4).



MDED-07-049

Circulating Air Filter (Inside)

1. Remove circulating air filter (inside) (5) by holding grip (6).

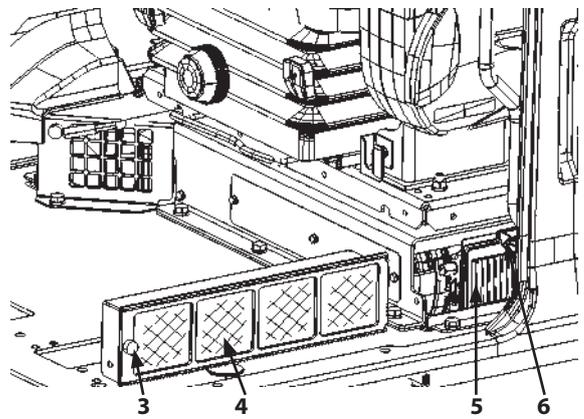
⚠ WARNING: When using compressed air pressure, wear safety glasses or goggles.

Cleaning

Clean the circulating and fresh air filters. Clean both the outside and inside filters by blowing compressed air or washing with water.

Washing procedure with water is as follows:

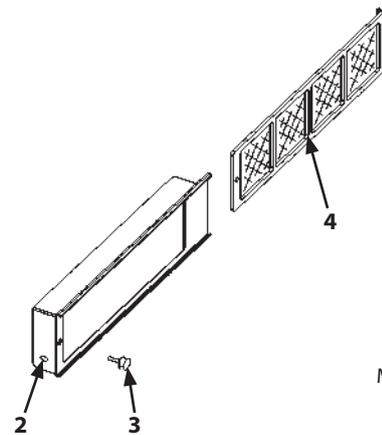
1. Use tap water.
2. Submerge the filter in water containing a neutral detergent for about 5 minutes.
3. Clean the filter with water again.
4. Dry the filters.



MDED-07-050

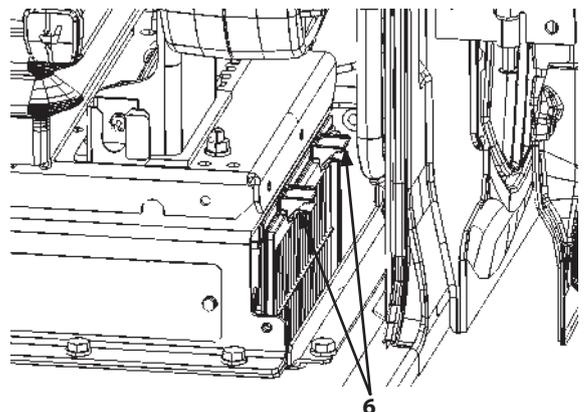
Installation

- Circulating Air Filter (Outside)
1. Install circulating air filter (outside) (4) to cover (2) and secure it with screw (3).
 2. Install cover (2) and secure it with screw (1).



MDED-07-051

- Circulating Air Filter (Inside)
1. Install filter (6) the groove (front section in two pieces) into the groove.



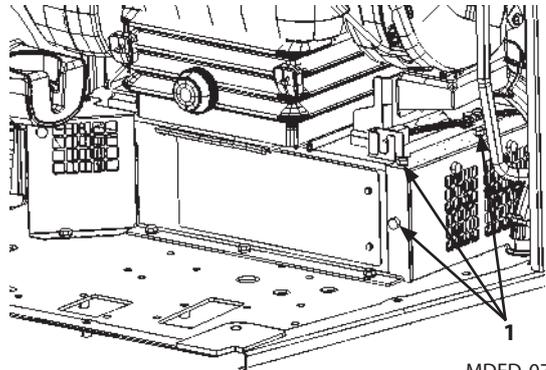
MDED-07-052

MAINTENANCE

ZX85USB-5N

Removal Circulating Air Filter

1. Circulating air filter is located beside the seat stand.
2. Remove screws (1) (3 used). Remove, cover (2) by pulling it toward the cab front.
3. Remove circulating air filter (3) by holding grip (4) and pulling it toward you through the opening for cover.



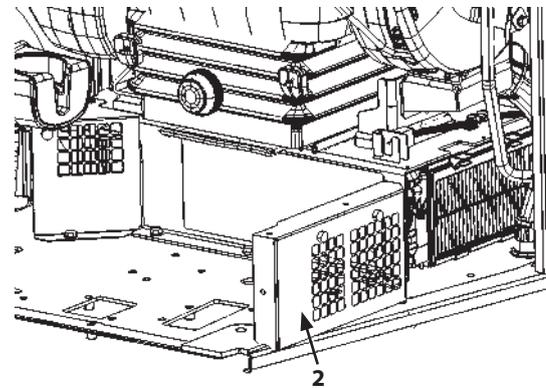
Cleaning

CAUTION: Use reduced compressed air pressure (less than 0.2 MPa, 2 kgf/cm²) for cleaning purposes. Clear the area of bystanders, guard against flying chips, and wear personal protection equipment including eye protection.

Clean both the external and internal filters by blowing compressed air or washing with water.

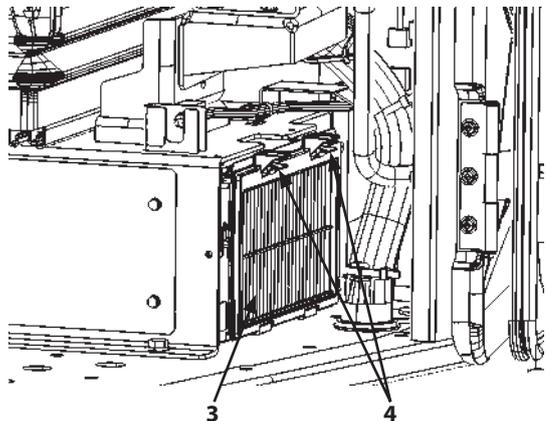
When washing the filters with water, follow the procedures below:

1. Wash with tap water.
2. Soak the filters in neutral detergent-mixed water for approx. 5 minutes.
3. Wash the filters with water again.
4. Dry the filters.



Installation

- Circulating Air Filter (4)
1. Install filter (3) into the groove.
 2. Install cover (2) and secure it with screws (1) (3 used).



MAINTENANCE

11 Check Air Conditioner --- every 250 hours

Check pipe connections for refrigerant gas leakage

If oil seepage is found around pipe connections, it indicates possible gas leakage.

Check Refrigerant

Start the engine and run at approximately 1500 min⁻¹ (rpm). Turn the air conditioner switch to ON. Set the blower switch to HI and set the temperature control switch to the coolest position (18 °C (64.4 °F) on the monitor screen). Operate the air conditioner 2 to 3 minutes. Check if cool air comes out from the vent in the cab.

Kind of refrigerant and amount when shipping the machine

Type	Amount
HFC134a	0.80±0.05 kg

IMPORTANT: Do not dispose FREON into the atmosphere to prevent depletion of ozone layer and global warming.

Check the condenser

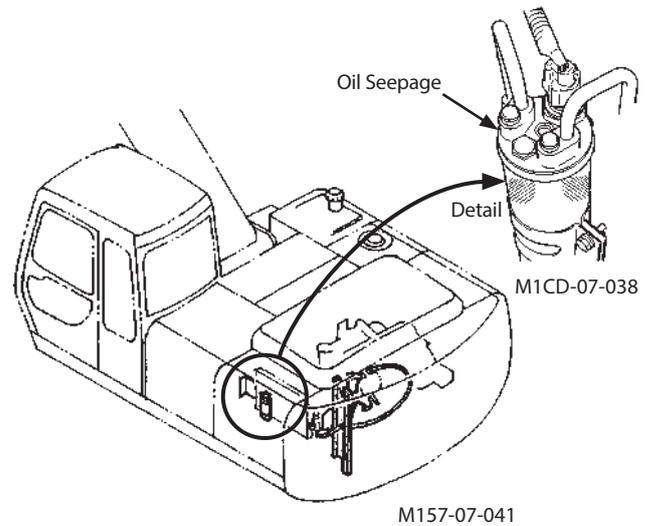
If the condenser fins become clogged with dirt or insects, the cooling effect will be decreased. Be sure to keep it clean at all times. (Refer to "Clean Radiator Core" in Maintenance Section.)

Check compressor

After operating the air conditioner for 5 to 10 minutes, touch both the high pressure pipe and the low pressure pipe. If normal, the high-pressure side pipe will be hot, and the low-pressure side cold.

Check mounting bolts for looseness

Confirm that the compressor mounting bolts and other mounting/fastening bolts are securely tightened.

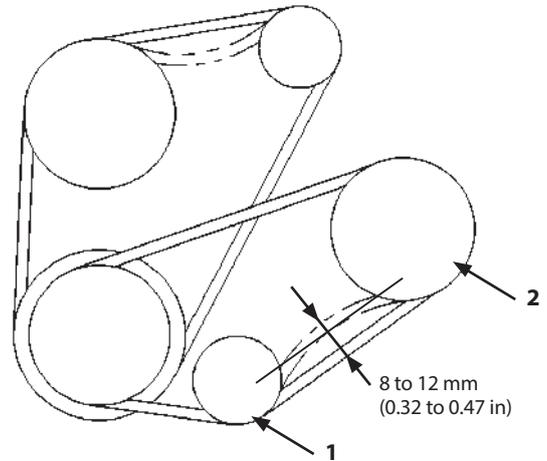


MAINTENANCE

Inspect belt, check and adjust tension

--- every 250 hours

Visually check the compressor and fan belts for wear. Check fan belt tension by depressing the midpoint between compressor pulley (2) and tension pulley (1) with the thumb. Deflection must be shown in the right figure with a depressing force of approximately 98 N (10 kgf). If cool air does not come out, or any other abnormalities are found in air conditioner system, see your authorized dealer for inspection.

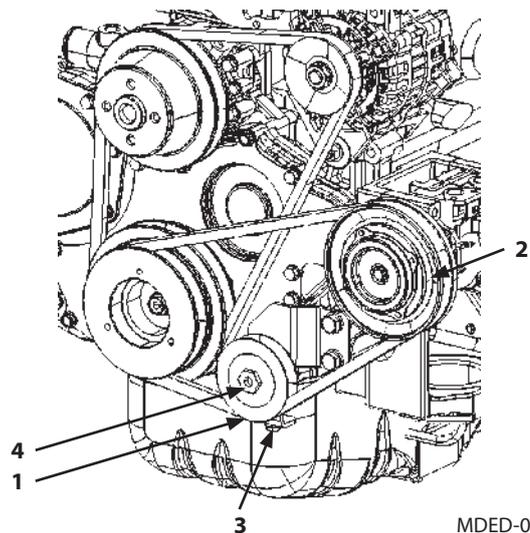


MDED-07-015

Adjust Compressor Belt Tension

1. Loosen lock bolt (4) of tension pulley (1).
2. Move compressor pulley (2) by adjusting bolt (3) under tension pulley (1) until tension is correct.
3. Securely tighten (4) of tension pulley (1).

IMPORTANT: When a new belt is installed, be sure to re-adjust the tension after operating the engine for 3 to 5 minutes at slow idle speed to be sure that the new belt is seated correctly.



MDED-07-025

MAINTENANCE

12 Clean Cab Floor --- as required

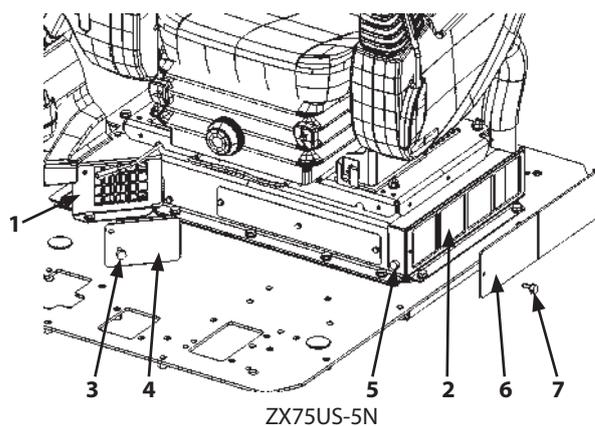
IMPORTANT: When cleaning the cab floor with tap water, spray the floor only. Take care not to splash the surrounding area. Do not increase water spray speed by restricting the hose end, and do not use high pressure steam for cleaning. Be sure to completely remove any moisture from the surrounding area.

1. Park the machine on solid and level surface. Lower the bucket to the ground. Before cleaning, stop the engine.

Protect the air conditioner in-cab air suction port (2) and foot air vent (1) with covers (4, 6, 9 and 11) stored in the pocket behind the backrest.

ZX75US-5N

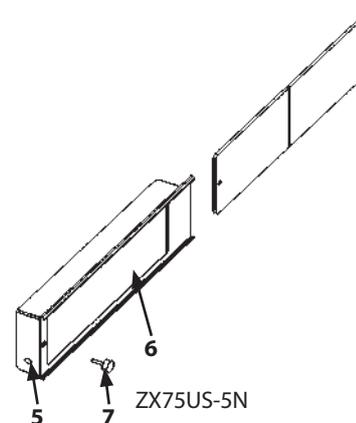
2. Remove screw (7) and the circulating air filter (outside) from cover (5). Install cover (6) with screw (7) in the position where the circulating air filter (outside) is installed. Remove foot air vent holding screws (3). Attach cover (4) onto the foot air vent and secure it with screws (3).



MDED-07-056

ZX85USB-5N

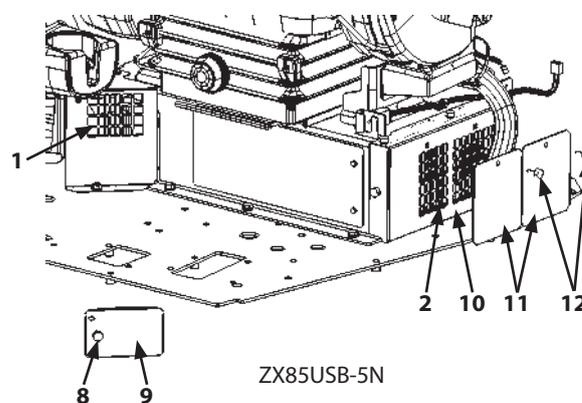
2. Remove screws (12). Install covers (11) with screws (12). Remove floor air vent holding screw (8). Attach cover (9) onto the floor air vent and secure it with screw (8).



MDED-07-057

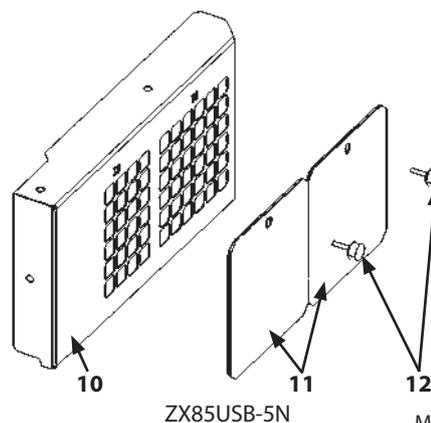
IMPORTANT: Never fail to do this preparation work. Failure to do so may result in damage/failure of the air conditioner.

3. Sweep the cab floor clean using a brush, and brush dust from the cab floor while spraying water.
4. When cleaning the floor mat, sweep dust (water) along the grooves on the floor mat.
5. When cleaning after removing the floor mat, sweep dust (water) through two cleaning holes.
6. After cleaning, remove covers (4), (6), (9) and (11) from the air conditioner in-cab suction hole and the foot air vent while following the above steps in reverse. Install the circulating air filter. (Refer to the descriptions for Clean and Replace Circulating Air Filter and Fresh Air Filter.) Store covers (4), (6), (9) and (11) in the pocket behind the backrest.



MDED-07-058

IMPORTANT: If the A/C is operated without removing the cover, the A/C will not operate efficiently so that its cooling ability is reduced.



MDED-07-059

MAINTENANCE

- 13** Check, Clean and Function Check Injector
--- every 3000 hours

- 14** Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance
--- every 1000 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

- 15** Measure Engine Compression Pressure
--- every 1000 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

- 16** Check Starter and Alternator
--- every 1000 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

- 17** Check, Clean and Function Check EGR Valve
--- every 3000 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

- 18** Check Gas Damper
--- as required

⚠ CAUTION: The gas damper has been charged with high-pressure nitrogen gas. Inappropriate handling may cause explosion, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.

The gas dampers are used in the engine cover and the cab overhead window. Contact your nearest HITACHI dealer immediately at any of the following situations.

- The cover or window can not be opened with normal operating force.
- The cover or window can not maintain its open position.
- Oil or gas leak is found.

MAINTENANCE

19 **Check Crankcase Breather**
--- every 1500 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

20 **Clean EGR Cooler**
--- every 1500 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

21 **Check Intake Throttle Valve**
--- every 3000 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

22 **Check Radiator Cap**
--- every 2000 hours

Consult your authorized dealer for inspection and repair.

23 **Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts**
--- every 250 hours (first time after 50 hours)

Tighten or retighten nuts and bolts used on this machine in accordance with the torque values shown in the following table. Bolts and nuts should be replaced with those of the same or higher grade.

Check tightness after the first 50 hours then every 250 hours. For tightening nuts and bolts other than specified in the table below, refer to the Tightening Torque Chart at the end of this section.

MAINTENANCE

No.	Descriptions	Bolt Dia	Quantity	Wrench size	Torque			
					N·m	(kgf·m)	(lbf·ft)	
1.	Engine cushion rubber mounting bolt	14	2	22	180	(18)	(133)	
		16	2	24	270	(27)	(200)	
2.	Engine bracket mounting bolt	10	8	17	50	(5)	(37)	
		12	8	19	90	(9)	(66)	
3.	Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	16	4	24	270	(27)	(200)	
4.	Fuel tank mounting bolt	16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)	
5.	ORS fittings for hydraulic hoses and piping	–	–	17	25	(2.5)	(19)	
		–	–	19	30	(3)	(22)	
		–	–	22	40	(4)	(30)	
		–	–	27	95	(9.5)	(70)	
		–	–	32	140	(14)	(103)	
		–	–	36	180	(18)	(133)	
–	–	41	210	(21)	(155)			
6.	Pump mounting bolt	18	2	27	300	(30)	(220)	
7.	Control valve mounting bolt	14	3	22	180	(18)	(133)	
8.	Control valve bracket mounting bolt	14	4	22	140	(14)	(103)	
9.	Swing device mounting bolt	16	10	24	210	(21)	(155)	
10.	Swing motor mounting bolt (Hexagon wrench)	14	8	12	175	(17.5)	(129)	
11.	Battery mounting nut	10	4	17	20	(2.0)	(15.0)	
12.	Cab mounting nut	16	4	24	210	(21)	(155)	
13.	Swing bearing mounting bolt	(Upperstructure)	16	24	24	210	(21)	(155)
		(Undercarriage)	16	24	24	270	(27)	(200)
14.	Travel device mounting bolt	16	20	24	300	(30)	(220)	
	Travel reduction device cover mounting bolt	14	8	22	140	(14)	(103)	
15.	Sprocket mounting bolt	16	24	24	270	(27)	(200)	
16.	Upper roller mounting bolt	14	2	22	140	(14)	(103)	
17.	Lower roller mounting bolt	14	40	22	245	(24.5)	(180)	
18.	Track shoe mounting bolt	14	320	22	245	(24.5)	(180)	
19.	Cover mounting bolt	6	–	10	10	(1)	(7.4)	
		8	–	13	10	(1)	(7.4)	
		10	–	17	50	(5)	(37)	
20.	Flexible master coupling of low pressure piping	8	4 sets	13	10.3~12.4	(1.05~1.26)	(7.6 to 9.1)	
21.	Jubilee clamp of low pressure piping	–	4	9.5	4.5	(0.45)	(3.3)	
	Bolt clamp of low pressure piping	Suction hose	2	11	10	(1.0)	(1.0)	(7.4)
		In-take air duct	1	9.5	7.4	(7.4)	(0.74)	(5.4)
		Radiator hose	1	9.5	7.4	(7.4)	(0.74)	(5.4)
22.	Side-cutter mounting bolt	20	6	30	540	(54)	(400)	

MAINTENANCE

Tightening Torque Chart

Bolt Dia. mm	Hexagon Wrench						Socket Bolt			
	  		  		  		Wrench size mm	Socket Bolt		Wrench size mm
	N·m(kgf·m)		N·m(kgf·m)		N·m(kgf·m)			N·m	(kgf·m)	
6					3.3 to 4.2 (0.3 to 0.4)		10			5
8	30	(3.0)	20	(2.0)	10	(1.0)	13	20	(2.0)	6
10	65	(6.5)	50	(5.0)	20	(2.0)	17	50	(5.0)	8
12	110	(11)	90	(9)	35	(3.5)	19	90	(9)	10
14	180	(18)	140	(14)	55	(5.5)	22	140	(14)	12
16	270	(27)	210	(21)	80	(8.0)	24	210	(21)	14
18	400	(40)	300	(30)	120	(12)	27	300	(30)	14
20	550	(55)	400	(40)	170	(17)	30	400	(40)	17
22	750	(75)	550	(55)	220	(22)	32			
24	950	(95)	700	(70)	280	(28)	36			
27	1400	(140)	1050	(105)	400	(40)	41			
30	1950	(195)	1450	(145)	550	(55)	46			
33	2600	(260)	1950	(195)	750	(75)	50			
36	3200	(320)	2450	(245)	950	(95)	55			

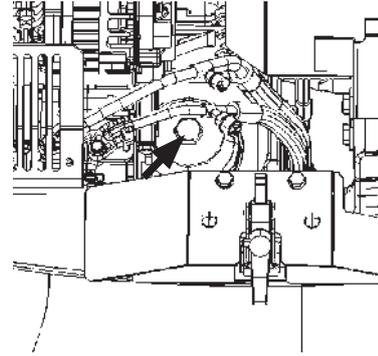
⚠ CAUTION: If fixing bolts for counterweight are loosened, consult your nearest authorized dealer.

IMPORTANT:

- Apply lubricant (e. g. white zinc B solved into spindle oil) to bolts and nuts to stabilize their friction coefficient.
- Remove soil, dust, and/or dirt from the nut and bolt thread surfaces before tightening.
- Tighten nuts and bolts to specifications. If tightened with excessively low or high torque, missing or breakage of nuts and/or bolts may result.

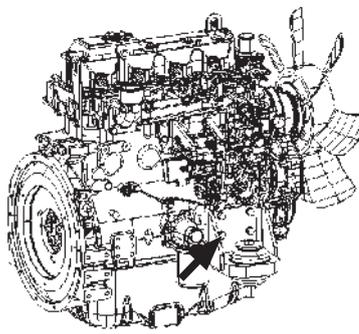
MAINTENANCE

1. Retighten the engine insulation rubber mounting bolts.

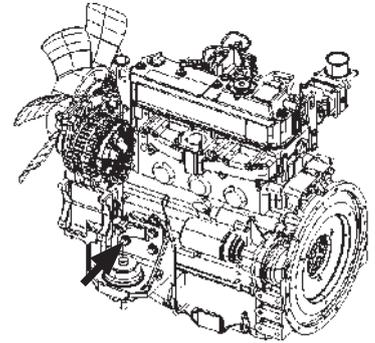


MDED-07-042

2. Retighten the engine bracket mounting bolts.

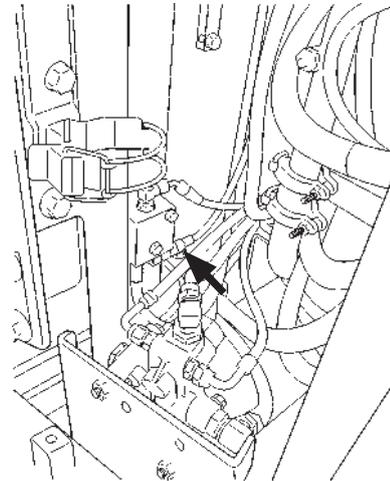


MDED-07-044



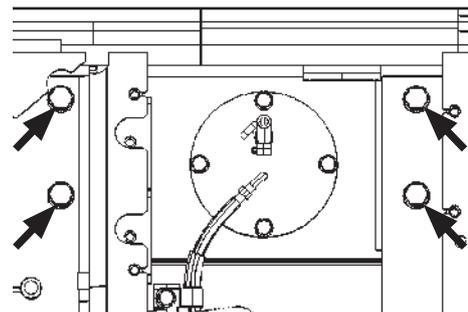
MDED-07-043

3. Retighten the hydraulic oil tank mounting bolts.



MDED-07-045

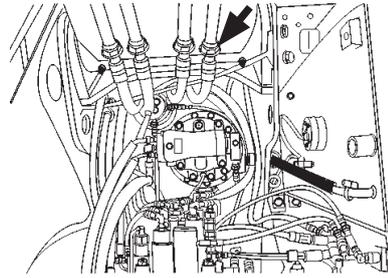
4. Retighten the fuel tank mounting bolts.



MDED-07-030

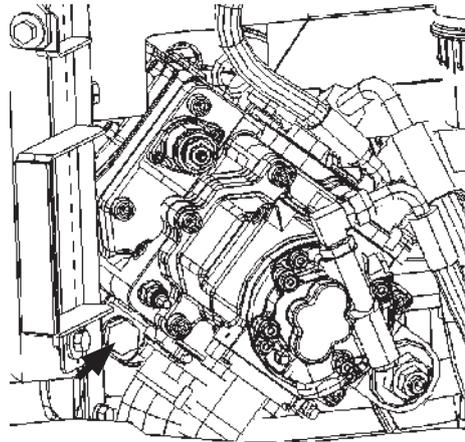
MAINTENANCE

5. Retighten the ORS fittings for hydraulic hoses and piping.



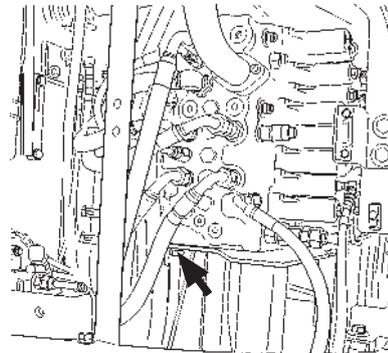
M1CD-07-004

6. Retighten the pump mounting bolts.



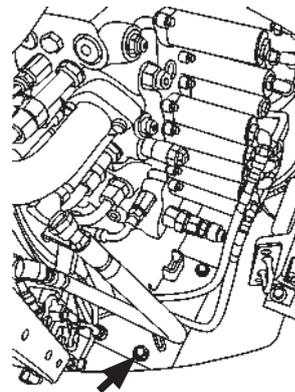
MDED-07-031

7. Retighten the control valve mounting bolts.



M1CG-07-026

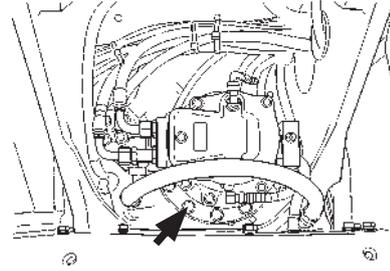
8. Retighten the control valve bracket mounting bolts.



M1P1-07-056

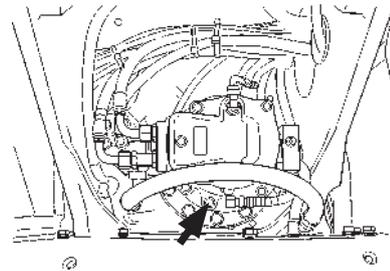
MAINTENANCE

9. Retighten the swing device mounting bolts.



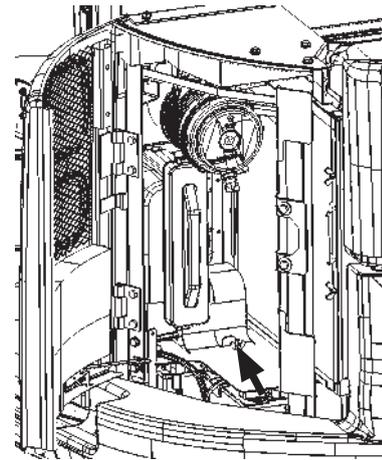
M1CG-07-029

10. Retighten the swing motor mounting bolts.



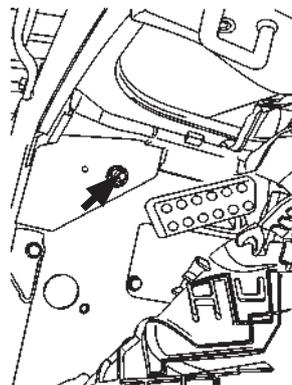
M1CG-07-029

11. Retighten the battery mounting nuts.

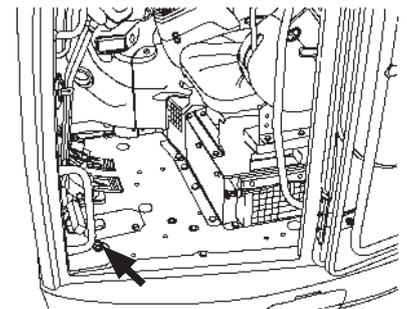


MDED-07-011

12. Retighten the cab mounting nuts.



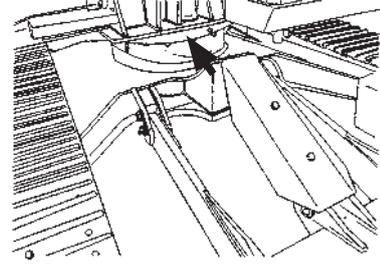
ZX75US-5N M1U1-07-026



ZX85USB-5N M1P1-07-022

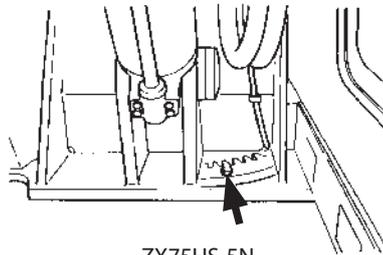
MAINTENANCE

13. Retighten the swing bearing mounting bolts to the upperstructure.



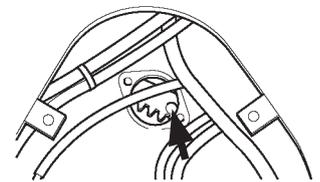
M1CD-07-007

- Retighten the swing bearing mounting bolts to the undercarriage.



ZX75US-5N

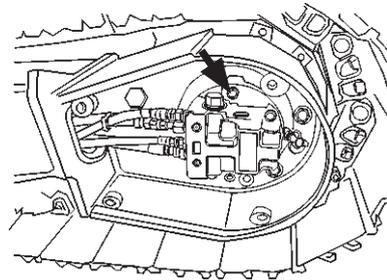
M1CD-07-035



ZX85USB-5N

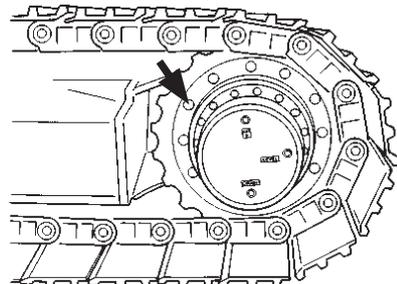
M1CD-07-043

14. Retighten the travel device mounting bolts.



M1CD-01-005

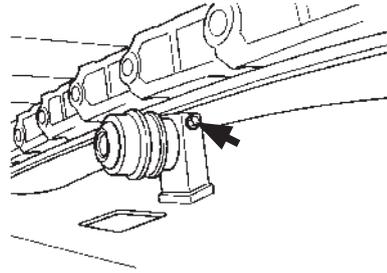
15. Retighten the sprocket mounting bolts.



M1CC-07-019

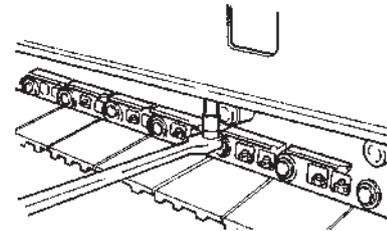
MAINTENANCE

16. Retighten the upper roller mounting bolts.



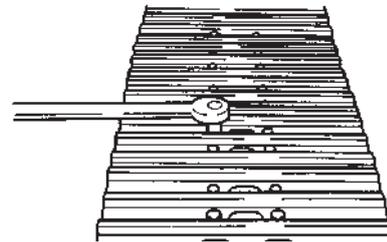
M152-07-046

17. Retighten the lower roller mounting bolts.



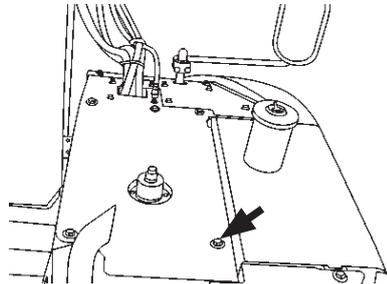
M104-07-090

18. Retighten the shoe mounting bolts.



M104-07-091

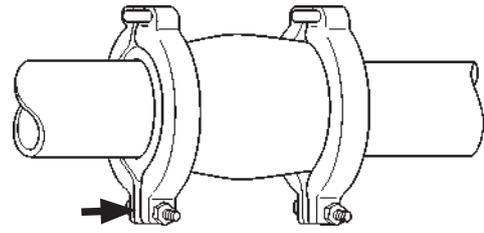
19. Retighten the cover mounting bolts.



M1P1-07-010

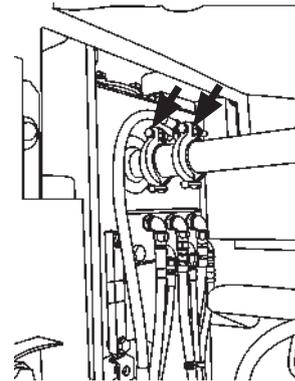
MAINTENANCE

20. Retighten flexible master coupling

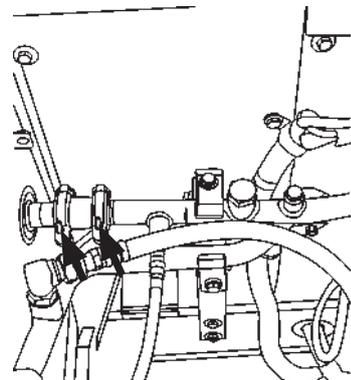


Flexible Master Coupling

M1G6-07-008



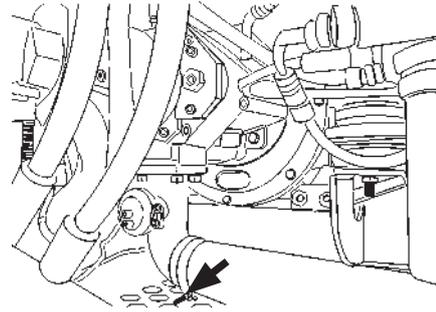
M1P1-07-051



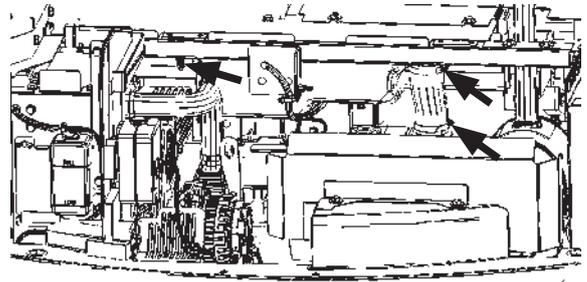
M1P1-07-052

MAINTENANCE

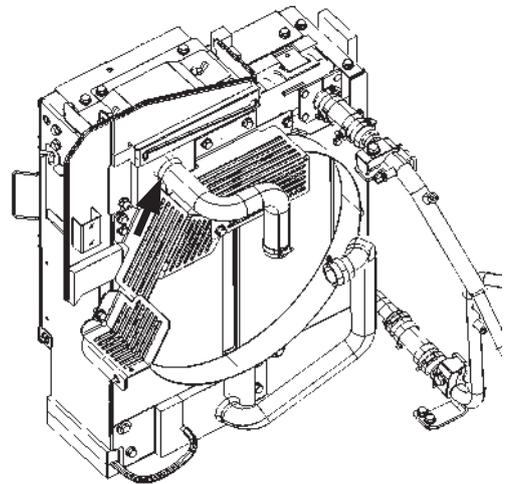
21. Retighten coupling and Bolt clamp



MDED-07-046

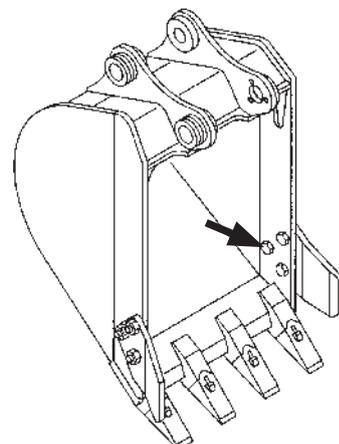


MDED-07-065



22. Retighten side-cutter mounting bolt

MDED-07-008



M196-09-024

MAINTENANCE

J. Muffler Filter

- 1** Check and Clean Filter Element of Muffler Filter
--- every 3000 hours

See your authorized dealer.

- 2** Check and Clean Muffler Filter
--- as required

IMPORTANT: Check and clean flammable objects on the area around the muffler filter.

Do not disassemble the base machine support parts, sensors, differential pressure hoses and pipes.

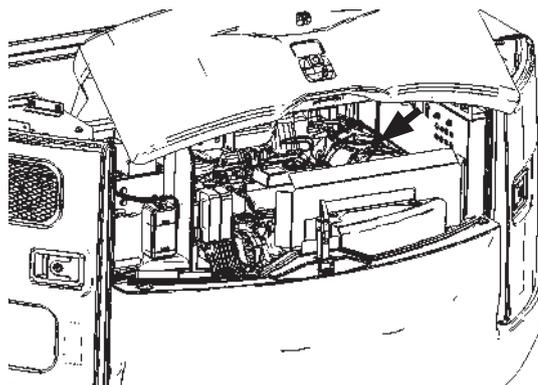
When the machine is operated in dusty areas, refer to "9-1 Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions".

Open the engine cover.

Check differential hoses and pipes for disconnection or cracks.

Check the differential sensors and harnesses of exhaust temperature sensors for abnormality.

Securely close the engine cover.



MDEC-07-004

MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

Maintenance Under Special Environmental Conditions

Operating Conditions	Precautions for Maintenance
Muddy Soil, Rainy or Snowy Weather	After Operation : Clean the machine and check for cracks, damaged, loose or missing bolts and nuts. Lubricate all necessary parts without delay.
Near the Ocean	After Operation : The following salt pollution measures must be taken when the machine is operated at sea or at coastline. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) After completing the work, extend/retract the hydraulic cylinders several times to form oil film on the rod surface. Store the machine with cylinders retracted as much as possible. (2) Thoroughly clean the machine with fresh water to wash off salt. (3) Perform touch up painting periodically on hose fittings, lubrication piping and inserting position of cover, where sea water is easily collected, in order to prevent corrosion. (4) During storage of the machine, cover the machine by tarps to prevent sea water from entering into the cab vent. Apply rust prevention oil (example: ANTIRUST P-1300NP-3 JX Nippon Oil & Energy Corporation) onto plated part of the cylinder rods.
Dusty Atmosphere	Air Cleaner : Clean the element regularly at shorter service intervals. Radiator : Clean the oil cooler screen to prevent clogging of the radiator core. Fuel System : Clean the filter element and strainer regularly at shorter service intervals. Engine, Muffler : Clean earlier than the normal interval to prevent dust from sticking and accumulating. Inhibit regeneration according to the machine operating condition.
Rocky Ground	Tracks : Carefully operate while checking for cracks, damage and loose bolts and nuts. Loosen the tracks a little more than usual. Front Attachment : Standard attachment may be damaged when digging rocky ground. Reinforce the bucket before using it, or use a heavy duty bucket.
Falling Stones	Cab Head Guard : Provide a cab guard to protect the machine from falling stones. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.
Freezing Weather	Fuel/Lubricant : Use high quality and low viscosity fuel and oil. Engine Coolant : Be sure to use antifreeze. Battery : Fully charge the batteries at shorter intervals. If not fully charged, electrolyte may freeze. Track : Keep the track clean. Park the machine on a hard surface to prevent the tracks from freezing to the ground.

STORAGE

Storing the Machine

In case the machine is to be stored for longer than one month, pay attention to the following points to prepare next operation.

Precautions for Long-Term Storage

Item	Remedy
Machine Cleaning	Wash the machine. Remove soil or other debris adhered to the machine.
Lubrication/Greasing	Check lubricant's level and contamination. Fill up or change if necessary. Lubricate all grease points. Coat grease to exposed metal surfaces which are subject to rust. (i.e. cylinder rods etc.)
Battery	Remove the batteries and store them in a dry protected place after charging fully. If not removed, disconnect the negative battery cable from the (-) terminal.
Coolant	Add anti-rusting agent. If storing in extremely cold areas, either add extra anti-freeze or drain coolant completely to avoid freezing. In this case, place a sign reading "NO COOLANT".
Protection Against Dust and Moisture	Store the machine in a dry storage area using a protective cover.
Tools	Inspect and repair, then store.
Lubrication Operation	If oil film on the metal surfaces is lost, rust may begin, possibly causing abnormal wear of the machine when the machine operation is restarted. If the machine is stored for a long time, operate hydraulic functions for travel, swing and digging two to three times for lubrication, at least once a month. Be sure to check the coolant level and lubrication conditions before operating.

NOTE:

- *Lubricating operation is a series of warm-up, travel, swing and digging operation carried out repeatedly for a few cycles at slow speed.*
- *Lubricants will deteriorate during long term storage of the machine. Be sure to carefully check the lubricants before restarting operation of the machine.*

Precautions for Disconnecting or Connecting Batteries

In case the batteries are kept disconnected for more than one month or when the batteries are reconnected, contact your nearest Hitachi dealer. Resetting of the Information Controller may be required.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Troubleshooting

If any machine trouble has occurred, immediately repair it. Make certain the cause of the trouble and take necessary measures to prevent the reoccurrence of the same trouble.

In case troubleshooting is difficult, or measures marked with * must be taken, consult the nearest Hitachi dealer. Never attempt to adjust, disassemble, or repair the hydraulic and/or electrical/electronic parts/components.

IMPORTANT: Never attempt to disassemble or modify the electrical/electronic components.

Engine

Consult the nearest Hitachi dealer for the engine troubleshooting.

Engine Auxiliaries

Problem	Cause	Solution
Batteries will not be charged.	Broken battery separator	Replace
	Faulty regulator	* Adjust and replace
	Faulty ground line	* Repair
	Faulty alternator	* Repair or replace
Batteries discharge quickly after being charged.	Shorted cable	* Repair or replace
	Shorted battery separator	* Repair or replace
	Increased sediment in battery	* Replace
Coolant temperature is too high.	Low coolant level	Refill
	Insufficient fan belt tension	Adjust
	Damaged rubber hose	* Replace
	Faulty thermostat	* Replace
	Faulty coolant temperature gauge	* Replace

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Impossible to Start the Engine			
Problem	Cause	Solution	
Engine will not start	Starter does not rotate or is not powerful	Discharged battery	Charge or replace battery.
		Disconnected, loose, or corroded battery terminals	After repairing the corroded area, securely tighten the connectors.
		Lowered pilot control shut-off lever.	Pull pilot control shut-off lever up.
		Disconnected, loose, or corroded starter ground line terminals.	After repairing the corroded area, securely tighten the connectors.
		Faulty pilot control shut-off lever electrical system	Repair
		Too high engine oil viscosity	Change engine oil with appropriate viscosity.
		Faulty starter and/or electrical system	* Repair and replace
	Starter rotates	No fuel	After checking that no fuel is leaking, refill fuel.
		Air in the fuel system	Bleed air.
		Clogged fuel filter	After draining water, replace the element.
		Frozen fuel	Warm the fuel pump with hot water or wait until the atmospheric temperature rises.
		Engine stop switch is ON	* Repair and replace
		Faulty preheat system	* Repair and replace
Even though the engine is started, the engine stalls soon	Too low idle speed	* Repair and replace	
	Clogged fuel filter	After draining water, replace the element.	
	Faulty engine control system	* Repair and replace	
	Clogged air cleaner	Clean or replace the element.	
	Faulty injection pump	* Repair and replace	
Engine runs irregularly	Faulty fuel system	* Repair and replace	
	Water or air in the fuel system	Drain water or bleed air.	
	Faulty engine control system	* Repair and replace	

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Control Lever		
Problem	Cause	Solution
Lever is heavy to operate.	Rusted joint	* Lubricate or repair
	Worn pusher	* Replace
Does not move smoothly	Worn pusher	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
Does Not Return to Neutral	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
The lever is tilted in the neutral position due to increase in play	Worn joint	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Hydraulic System

When the machine is stored without operation, air mixed in hydraulic oil will become separated and will accumulate in the cylinder upper sections, causing a delay in the response time of the machine movement or weak power development.

In case these symptoms appear, repeatedly operate all actuators several times.

Problem	Cause	Solution
No hydraulic Functions (Noise from pumps)	Faulty hydraulic pump	* Repair or replace
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Refill
	Broken suction pipe and/or hose	* Repair or replace
No hydraulic Functions (Hydraulic pump noise remains unchanged.)	Faulty pilot pump	* Replace
	Faulty pilot shut-off solenoid valve	* Replace
	Faulty wire harness (pilot shut-off solenoid valve) pilot shut-off switch.	* Repair or replace
	The pilot control shut-off lever is in the LOCK position.	Turn the pilot shut-off lever to the UNLOCK position.
All actuators have no power.	Malfunction due to worn hydraulic pump	* Replace
	Decreased main relief valve set pressure in the control valve	* Adjust
	Lack of hydraulic oil	Refill
	Clogged suction strainer in the hydraulic oil tank	Clean
	Absorption of air from the oil suction side	Retighten
	Faulty pressure sensor.	* Replace
	Faulty solenoid valve	* Replace
Only one side lever is inoperable or has no power.	Faulty relief valve in the valve	* Repair or replace
	Broken pipe and/or hose	* Repair or replace
	Loose pipe line joint	Retighten
	Broken O-ring at pipe line joint	* Replace
	Faulty hydraulic pump	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
	Faulty pilot circuit line	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot solenoid valve	* Repair or replace

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Problem	Cause	Solution
Only one actuator is inoperable.	Broken control valve spool	* Replace
	Embedded foreign matter in valve spool	* Repair or replace
	Broken pipe and/or hose	* Repair or replace
	Loose pipe line joint	Retighten
	Broken O-ring at pipe line joint	* Replace
	Broken actuator	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
	Faulty pilot circuit line	* Repair or replace
Only one cylinder is inoperable or has no power.	Faulty pilot solenoid valve	* Repair or replace
	Broken oil seal in cylinder	* Repair or replace
	Oil leak due to damage to cylinder rod	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
	Faulty pilot circuit line	* Repair or replace
Hydraulic oil temperature increases.	Faulty pilot solenoid valve	* Repair or replace
	Stained oil cooler	Clean
Oil leak from low pressure hose	Insufficient engine fan belt tension	Adjust
	Loose clamps	Retighten
	Faulty suction manifold	* Repair or replace

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Drive Function		
Problem	Cause	Solution
One or both side tracks are inoperable.	Damaged center joint	* Repair or replace
	Incompletely released parking brake	* Repair or replace
	Broken travel motor	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
	Faulty pilot circuit line	* Repair or replace
Does not travel smoothly.	Overly tensioned or slackened crawler sag	Adjust
	Lack of lubricant in front idler and/or roller	Refill
	Deformed track frame	* Repair or replace
	Embedded foreign matter such as rock fragments	Remove
	Dragged parking brake	* Repair
Travel speed does not change.	Faulty travel speed switch.	* Replace
	Faulty pressure sensor.	* Replace
	Pump 1 and 2 delivery pressure sensors	
	Pumps 1, 2 control pressure sensors	
	Poor contact in connector	* Repair or replace
	Damaged wire harness	* Repair
	Faulty controller (MC)	* Replace
	Faulty solenoid valve	* Repair or replace
Faulty motor	* Repair or replace	

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Swing Function		
Problem	Cause	Solution
Upperstructure does not swing	Faulty swing parking brake	* Repair or replace
	Faulty swing parking brake release valve	* Repair or replace
	Broken swing motor	* Repair or replace
	Faulty pilot valve	* Replace
	Faulty pilot circuit line	* Repair or replace
Swing is not smooth	Worn swing gear	* Repair or replace
	Damaged swing bearing and bearing balls.	* Repair or replace
	Lack of grease	Refill

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

Immediately after the control valve, swing motor relief valve and/or the swing motor is replaced, a noise may be emitted and/or operation may not be performed smoothly due to air trapped in the hydraulic line.

Slowly continue to operate the machine for approx. 10 minutes to bleed air.

After repair work is complete, be sure to check the oil level in the hydraulic oil tank. Refill hydraulic oil as needed.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Engine Speed		
Problem	Cause	Solution
Even if operating the engine control dial, the engine speed does not change.	Blown fuse	Replace
	Faulty engine control dial	* Replace
	Poor contact in connector	* Repair or replace
	Damaged wire harness (between EC dial and MC, or MC and ECM)	* Repair
	Faulty controller (MC, ECM)	* Replace
	Performing manual regeneration	(Normal control)
Work mode does not change.	Faulty mode switch	* Replace
	Poor contact in connector	* Repair or replace
	Damaged wire harness (between MC and monitor)	* Repair
	Faulty controller (MC)	* Replace
	Faulty solenoid valve	* Repair or replace
Auto-idle is inoperable or not released.	Faulty pressure sensor.	* Replace
	Poor contact in connector	* Repair or replace
	Damaged wire harness	* Repair
	Faulty controller.	* Replace
	Performing manual regeneration	(Normal control)

Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

Pump Control		
Problem	Cause	Solution
Front attachment and/or travel speed is slow.	Blown control fuse	Replace
	Poor contact in connector	* Repair or replace
	Damaged wire harness	* Repair
	Faulty controller.	* Replace
	Faulty pump solenoid valve.	* Replace
	Faulty pressure sensor.	* Replace

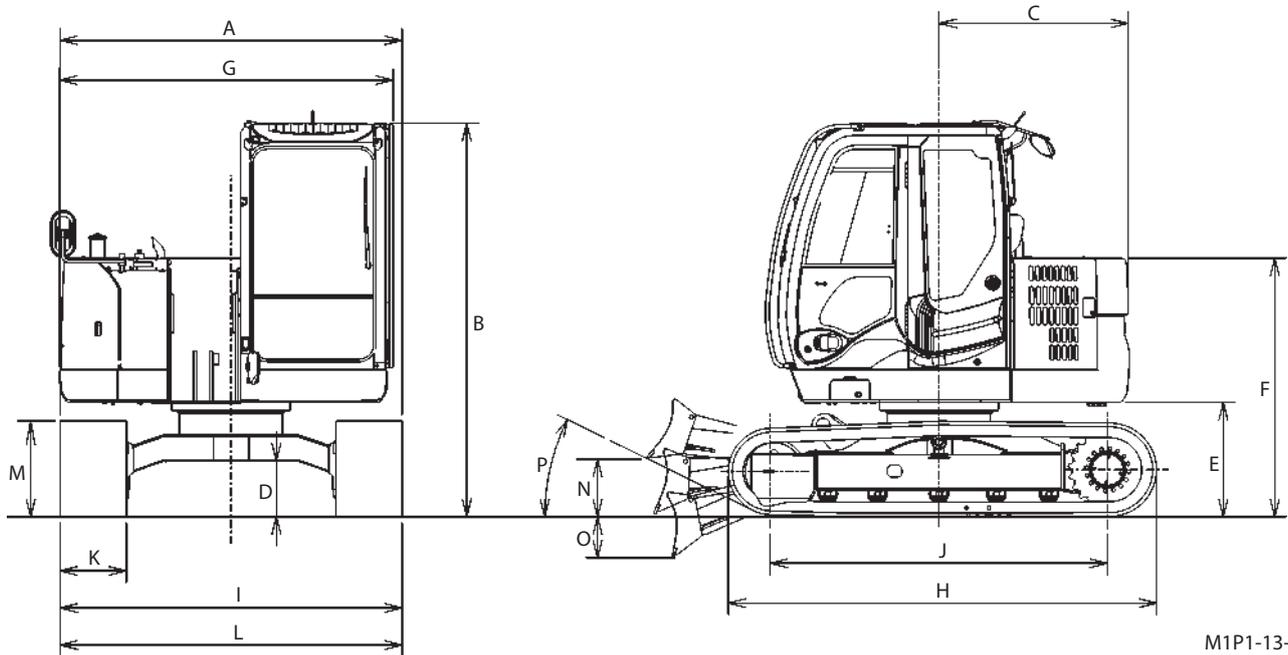
Items with * mark: Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

Others

The machine may have a noise, excessive vibration, and abnormal smell when any trouble occurs. Always beware of the machine conditions during operation.

SPECIFICATIONS

Specifications ZX75US-5N



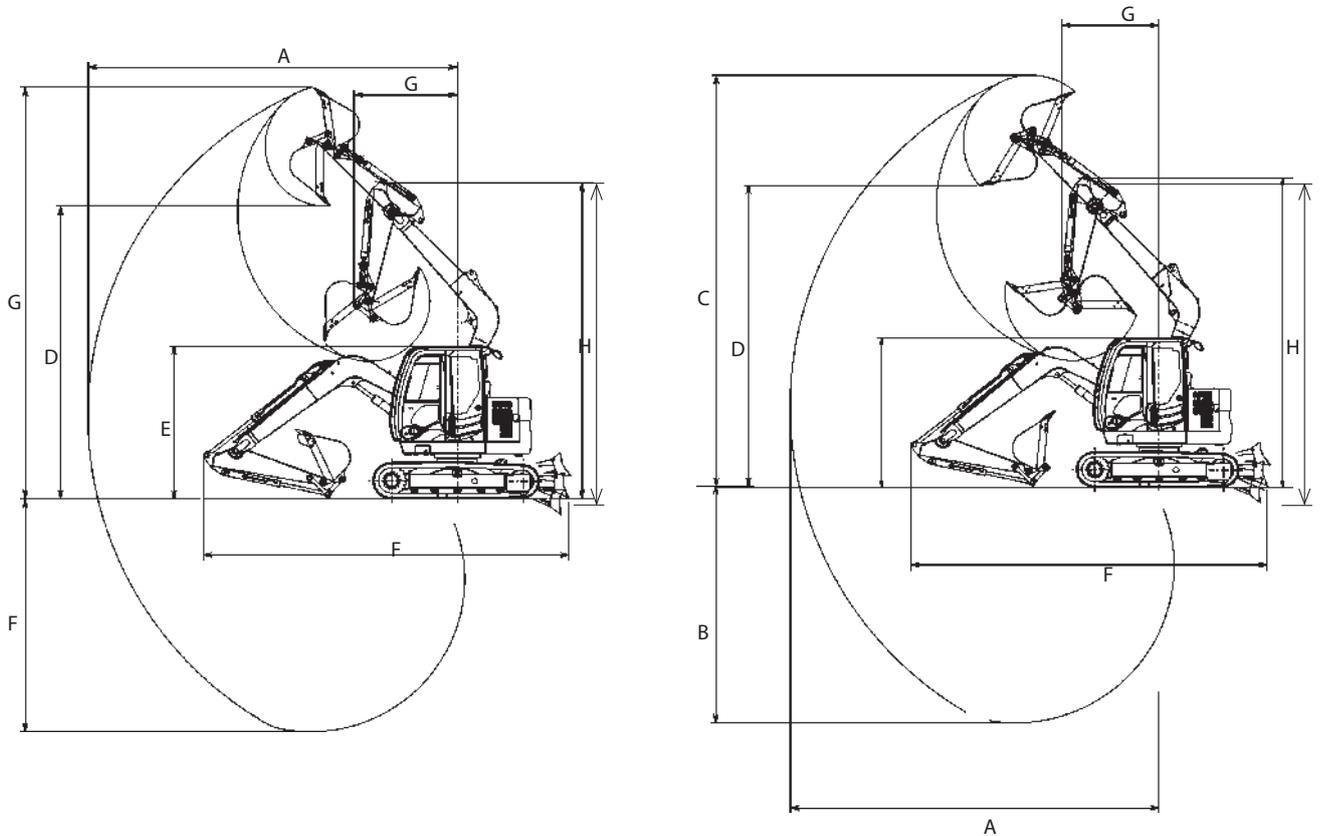
M1P1-13-004

Model	ZX75US-5N
Front-End Attachment	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm
Standard Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m ³ (0.37 yd ³), CECE 0.24 m ³
Operating Weight	8030 (17700 lb)
Base Machine Weight	6030 (14600 lb)
Engine Type	YANMAR 4TNV98C-WHBW
Engine Power	Year of Manufacturing: To Aug. 2020 41.8 kW/2000 min ⁻¹ (56.8 PS/2000 rpm) Year of Manufacturing: From Sept. 2020 39.5 kW/2000 min ⁻¹ (53.7 PS/2000 rpm)
A: Overall Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
B: Cab Height	2690 mm (8 ft 10 in)
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1290 mm (4 ft 3 in)
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 730 mm (2 ft 5 in)
F: Engine Cover Height	* 1850 mm (6 ft 1 in)
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)
H: Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idle Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in)
L: Blade Width	2320 mm (7 ft 7 in)
M: Blade Height	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	* 300 mm (1 ft 0 in)
P: Maximum Approach Angle	26.8 degree (tanθ = 0.51)
Ground Pressure	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm ² , 5.1 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min ⁻¹ (10.5 rpm)
Travel Speed	5.0/3.1 km/h (3.1/1.9 mph)
Gradeability	35° (tan θ = 0.70)

NOTE: * The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

SPECIFICATIONS

Working Ranges ZX75US-5N



Backhoe

M1P1-13-005

Face shovel (Reversed hoe bucket)

M1P1-13-006

Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		6430	21'1"	6570	21'7"	6920	22'8"	7050	23'2"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		4110	13'6"	4250	14'0"	4610	15'2"	4750	15'7"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		7210	23'8"	7370	24'2"	7610	25'0"	7780	25'6"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		5120	16'10"	5390	17'8"	5510	18'1"	5830	19'2"
E: Overall Height		2690	8'10"	2690	8'10"	2690 (without Bucket)	8'10" (without Bucket)	2690 (without Bucket)	8'10" (without Bucket)
						2830 (with Bucket)	9'3" (with Bucket)	2830 (with Bucket)	9'3" (with Bucket)
F: Overall Length		5870	20'8"	6300	20'8"	6370	20'11"	6370	20'11"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		1810	5'11"	1810	5'11"	2170	7'1"	2170	7'1"
H: Minimum Swing Radius Height		5590	18'4"	5590	18'4"	5610	18'5"	5610	18'5"

NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

SPECIFICATIONS

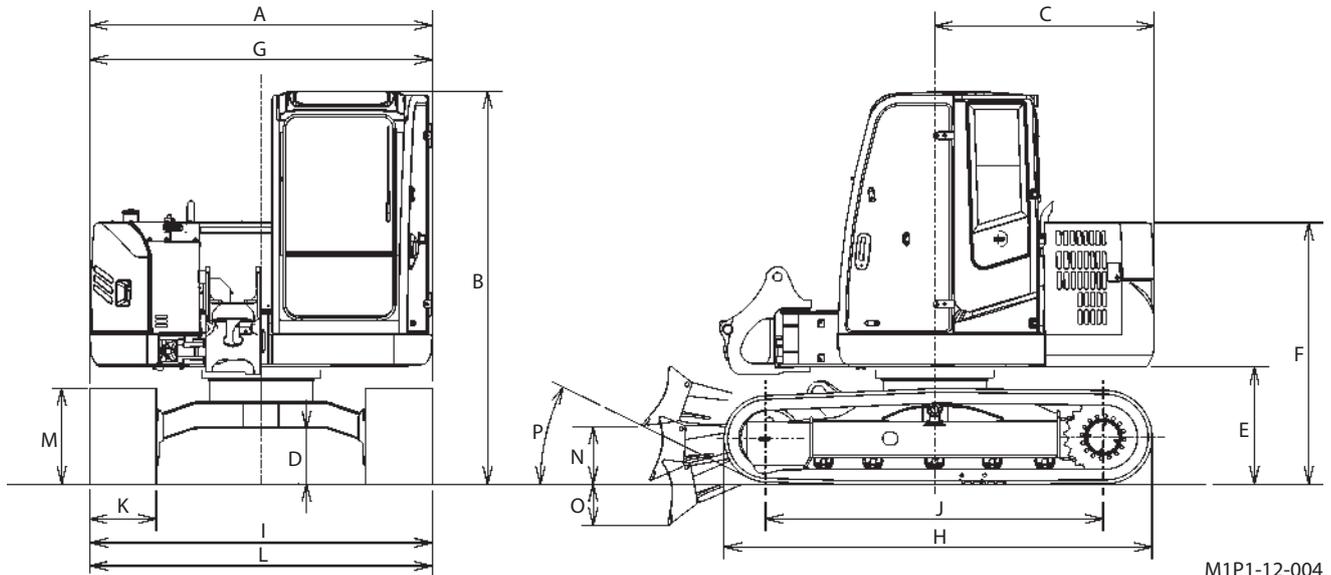
Shoe Types and Applications ZX75US-5N

Shoe Width		450 mm (18") Grouser shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser shoe	450 mm (18") Flat shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Crawler Shoe
Application		For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	8030 (17700)	8220 (18100)	8410 (18500)	8080 (17800)	8050 (17700)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	6630 (14600)	6820 (15000)	7010 (15500)	6680 (14700)	6050 (14700)
Cab Height	mm (ft·in)	2690 (8'10")	2690 (8'10")	2700 (8'10")	2720 (8'11")	2720 (8'11")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft·in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390 (1'3")	410 (1'4")	410 (1'4")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft·in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft·in)	2320 (7'7")	2470 (8'1")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")	2320 (7'7")
Ground Pressure		35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm ² , 5.1 psi)	27 kPa (0.27 kgf/cm ² , 3.9 psi)	36 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm ² , 5.3psi)	35 kPa (0.36 kgf/cm ² , 5.0 psi)	35 kPa (0.35 kgf/cm ² , 5.0 psi)

-  **NOTE:**
- The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m³ (0.37 yd³) bucket.
 - 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) flat shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
 - * The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

SPECIFICATIONS

Specifications ZX85USB-5N



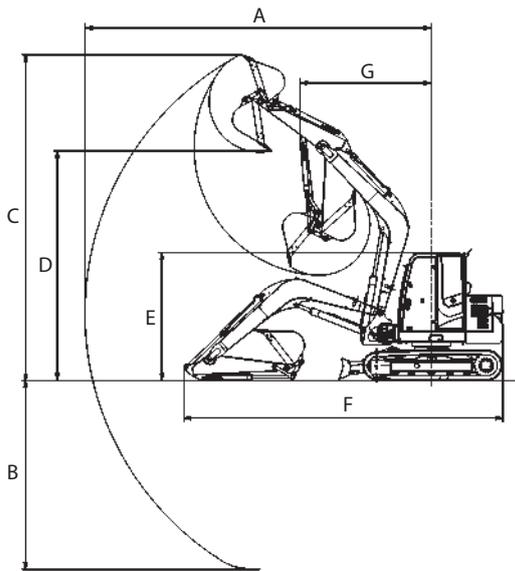
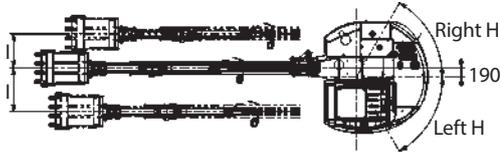
M1P1-12-004

Model	ZX85USB-5N
Type of Front-End Attachment	Boom-Swing Type 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm
Bucket Capacity (Heaped)	PCSA 0.28 m ³ (0.37 yd ³), CECE 0.24 m ³
Operating Weight	8490 kg (18700 lb)
Base Machine Weight	7100 kg (15700 lb)
Engine Type	YANMAR 4TNV98C-WHBW
Engine Power	Year of Manufacturing: To Aug.2020 41.8 kW/2000 min ⁻¹ (56.8 PS/2000 rpm)
	Year of Manufacturing: From Sept.2020 39.5 kW/2000 min ⁻¹ (53.7 PS/2000 rpm)
A: Overall Width (Excluding Back Mirrors)	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)
B: Cab Height	2530 mm (8 ft 4 in)
C: Rear End Swing Radius	1490 mm (4 ft 11 in)
D: Minimum Ground Clearance	* 360 mm (1 ft 2 in)
E: Counterweight Clearance	* 720 mm (2 ft 4 in)
F: Engine Cover Height	* 1810 mm (5 ft 11 in)
G: Overall Width of Upperstructure	2260 mm (7 ft 5 in)
H: Undercarriage Length	2920 mm (9 ft 7 in)
I: Undercarriage Width	2200 mm (7 ft 3 in)
J: Sprocket Center to Idler Center	2290 mm (7 ft 6 in)
K: Track Shoe Width	450 mm (18 in) (Grouser shoe)
L: Blade Width	2200 mm (7 ft 3 in)
M: Blade Height	460 mm (1 ft 6 in)
N: Blade Bottom Highest Position (above ground level)	* 340 mm (13.5 in)
O: Blade Bottom Lowest Position (below ground level)	* 320 mm (12.5 in)
P: Maximum Approach Angle	25.8 degree
Ground Pressure	37 kPa (0.38 kgf/cm ² , 5.3 psi)
Swing Speed	10.5 min ⁻¹ (rpm)
Travel Speed	5.0/3.1 km/h (3.1/1.9 mph)
Gradeability	35 ° (tanθ = 0.70)

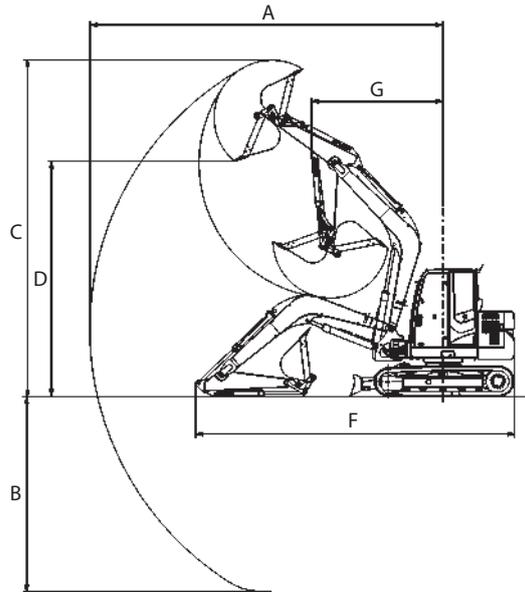
NOTE: * The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

SPECIFICATIONS

Working Ranges ZX85USB-5N



Backhoe



Face shovel (Reversed hoe bucket)

M1P1-12-012

Item	Category	1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) Arm				2.12 m (7 ft 0 in) Arm			
		Backhoe		Shovel		Backhoe		Shovel	
		mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in	mm	ft-in
A: Maximum Digging Reach		7210	23'8"	7350	24'1"	7700	25'3"	7840	25'9"
B: Maximum Digging Depth		3990	13'1"	4130	13'7"	4510	14'9"	4650	15'3"
C: Maximum Cutting Height		6790	22'3"	7000	23'0"	7140	23'5"	7340	24'1"
D: Maximum Dumping Height		4770	15'3"	4890	16'1"	5080	16'8"	5260	18'5"
E: Overall Height		2610 mm (8'7")							
F: Overall Length		6640	21'9"	6640	21'9"	6820	22'4"	6820	22'4"
G: Minimum Swing Radius		2740	8'12"	2740	8'12"	2890	9'6"	2890	9'6"
H: Maximum Boom-Swing Angle		Left 60°/Right 60°							
I: Offset Distance		Left 910 (3'0") Right 720 (2'4")							

NOTE: "E: Overall Height" includes the height of shoe lug; Other dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

SPECIFICATIONS

Shoe Types and Applications ZX85USB-5N

Shoe Width		450 mm (18") Grouser shoe	600 mm (24") Grouser shoe	450 mm (18") Flat Shoe	450 mm (18") Pad Crawler Shoe	450 mm (18") Rubber Crawler Shoe
Application		For Ordinary Ground (Standard)	For Weak Footing (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)	For Paved Road (Option)
Operating Weight	kg (lb)	8490 (18700)	8680 (19100)	8580 (18900)	8460 (18700)	8430 (18600)
Base Machine Weight	kg (lb)	7100 (15700)	7290 (16100)	7270 (16000)	7160 (15800)	7130 (15700)
Cab Height	mm (ft-in)	2530 (8'4")	2530 (8'4")	2540 (8'4")	2560 (8'5")	2540 (8'4")
Minimum Ground Clearance	mm (ft-in)	* 360 (1'2")	* 360 (1'2")	390(1'3")	410 (1'4")	390 (1'3")
Undercarriage Length	mm (ft-in)	2920 (9'7")	2920 (9'7")	2940 (9'7")	2970 (9'9")	2980 (9'9")
Undercarriage Width	mm (ft-in)	2200 (7'3")	2350 (7'9")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")	2200 (7'3")
Ground Pressure		37 kPa (0.38 kgf/cm ² , 5.3 psi)	28 kPa (0.29 kgf/cm ² , 4.1 psi)	38 kPa (0.38 kgf/cm ² , 5.4 psi)	37 kPa (0.38 kgf/cm ² , 5.3 psi)	37 kPa (0.37 kgf/cm ² , 5.3 psi)

-  **NOTE:**
- The specifications for the front-end attachment is for 1.62 m (5 ft 4 in) arm with PCSA 0.28 m³ (0.37 yd³) bucket.
 - 600 mm (24 in) grouser shoe, 450 mm (18 in) pad crawler shoe and 450 mm (18 in) rubber pad shoe should not be used on gravel or rocky ground.
 - * The dimensions do not include the height of the shoe lug.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Selecting a Breaker or Crusher

Select a breaker, crusher or quick coupler with the correct size and weight for your machine, considering the stability of the machine, hydraulic oil pressure and flow rate of the breaker, crusher or quick coupler. See your authorized dealer for correct breaker information.

Precautions for Operation

Carefully study the operation manuals of the breaker, crusher and quick coupler.

To avoid damaging the machine, hydraulic breaker, crusher or quick coupler, follow the precautions given below.

Precautions for Connecting Breaker or Crusher Piping.

Do not allow impurities to enter into the system when switching the breaker, crusher or the quick coupler with the bucket.

When the breaker, crusher or quick coupler is not used, apply the cover to the pipe opening on the arm top and install the plug or cap into the hose end of the breaker, crusher or the quick coupler to prevent impurities from entering the system.

Be sure to provide spare covers and plugs in the tool box so that they will be available when needed.

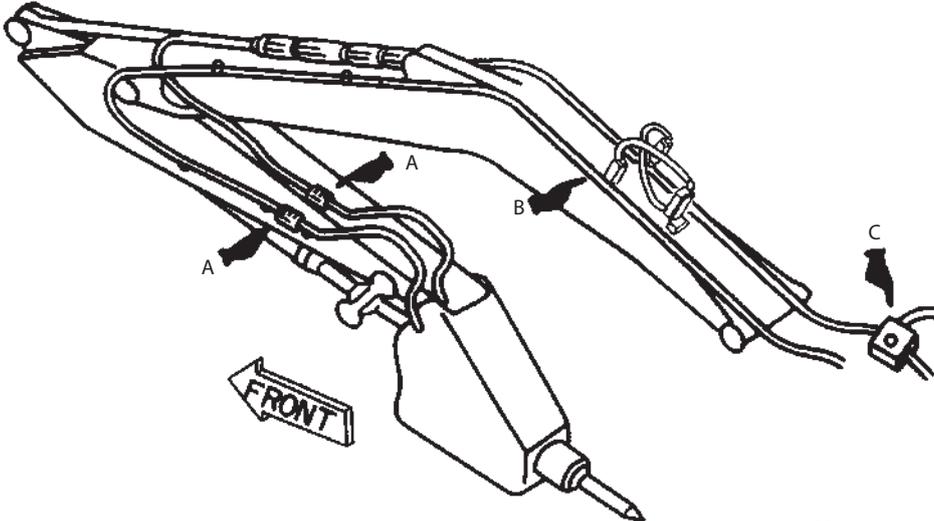
After connecting, check the connecting seal fitting for oil leakage, and pipe clamp bolts for looseness.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

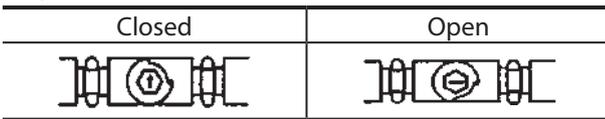
Pipings for Breaker and Crusher

- Layout of Stop and Selection Valves



Stop Valves A and B

M105-05-006



Selection Valves C

Serial No.	To Valve	To Tank
ZX75US-5N: 015001 to 017696 ZX85USB-5N: 017001 to 022638		
ZX75US-5N: 017697 and up ZX85USB-5N: 022639 and up		

Att: To Front Attachment

C/V: To Control Valve

T: Drain Line

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

- Valve Operation Guide

Wrench size

Model	Serial No.	Wrench size [mm]
ZX75US-5N	015001 to 017696	24
	017697 and up	30
ZX85USB-5N	017001 and up	24

Stop Valves A

Valve Operation	Closed	Open
Description	When not using attachment or is detached.	When using attachment

Stop Valves B

Valve Operation	Closed	Open
Description	When using crusher	When using breaker

Selection Valve C

Valve Operation	To Valve	To Tank
Description	When using crusher	When using breaker

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

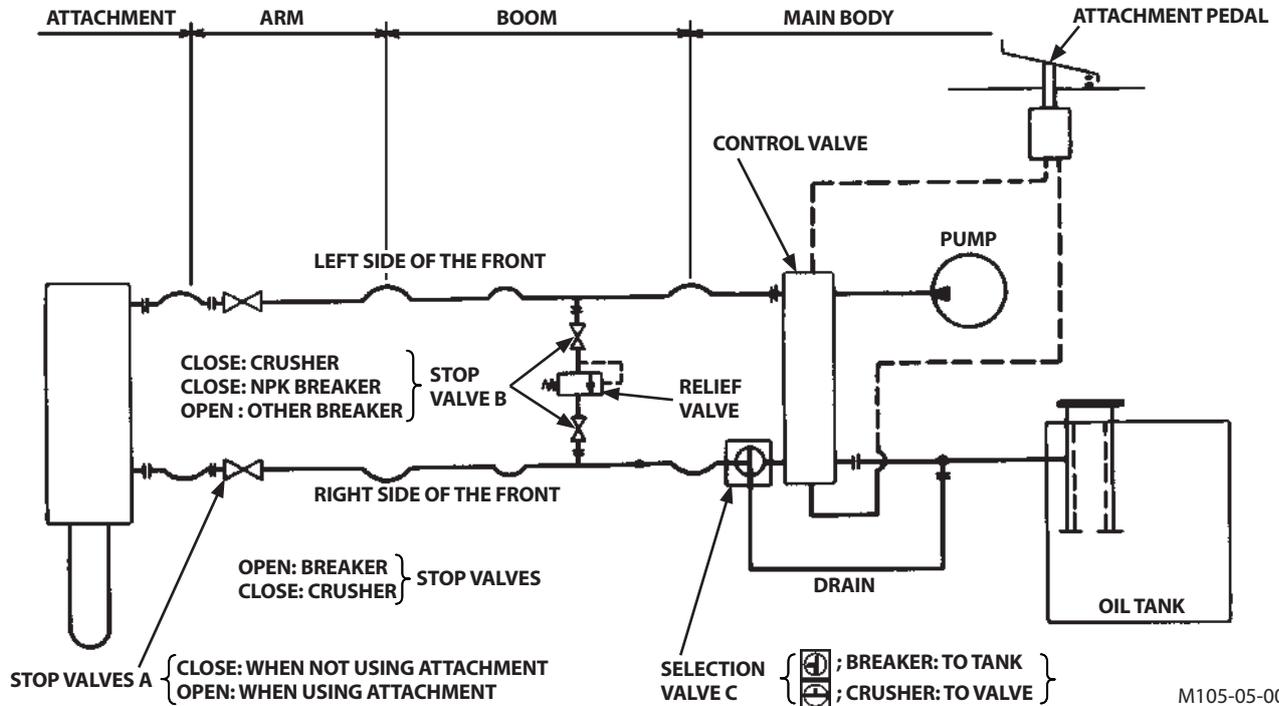
Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

- Image of Hydraulic Circuit

Serial No.

ZX75US-5N: 015001 to 017696

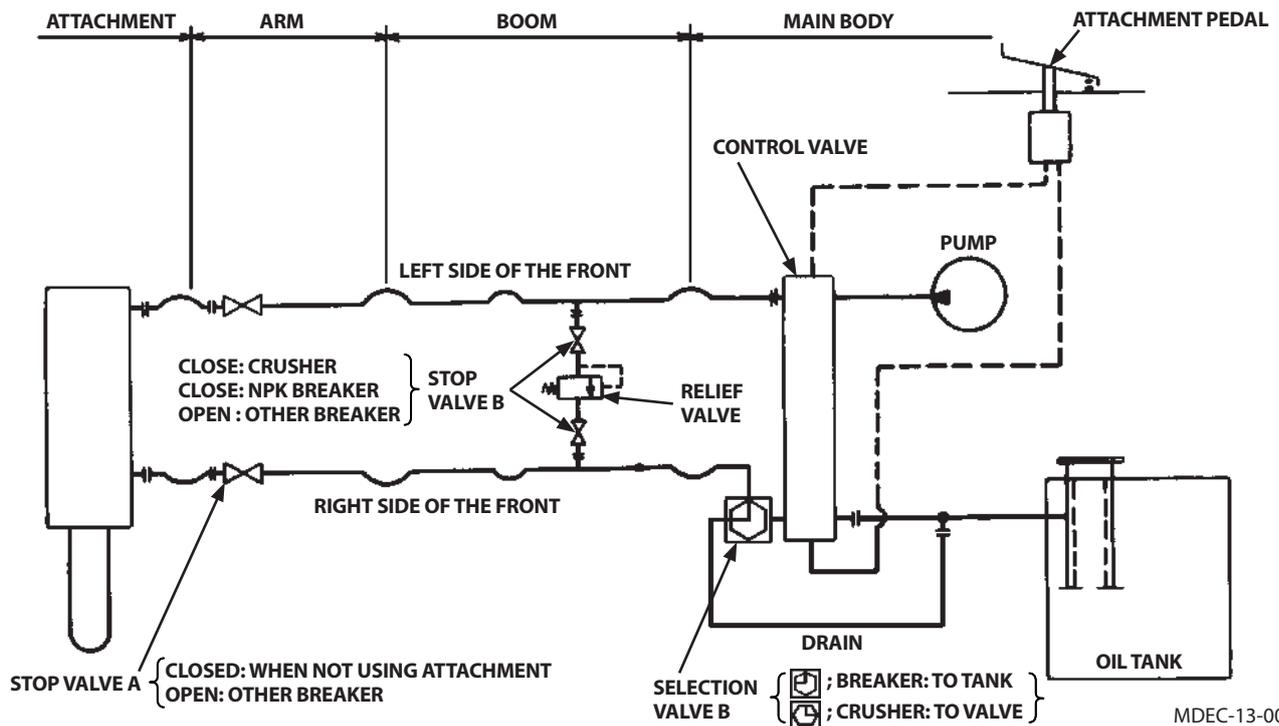
ZX85USB-5N: 017001 to 022638



Serial No.

ZX75US-5N: 017697 and up

ZX85USB-5N: 022639 and up



OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Secondary Relief Pressure Adjustment

Depending on the breaker model, the secondary relief valve relief set pressure differs.
Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer for installing a breaker.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Breaker) (Optional)

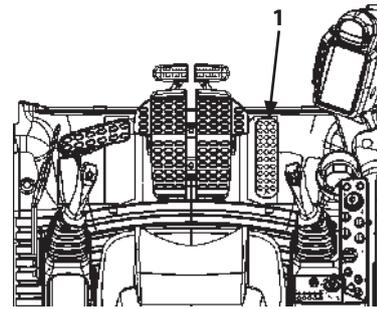
The Breaker can be operated using attachment pedal (1) located on the right front of the seat, as illustrated.

CAUTION: Be sure to lock attachment pedal (1) with pedal lock (2) when the attachment pedal is not in use. Do not allow your foot to rest on the pedal when the attachment pedal (1) is not in use. When changing pedal lock (2) position, pull the pilot control shut-off lever up to the LOCK position.

1. Move pedal lock (2) forward to the UNLOCK position.
2. Push down on attachment pedal (1) to operate the breaker.

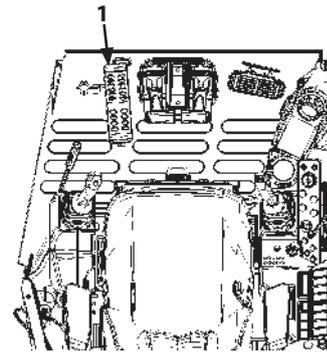
Loosen stopper bolt (4) until stopper bolt (4) comes in contact with the bracket in attachment pedal (1) neutral to prevent attachment pedal (1) from being stepped backward.

3. Remove foot from attachment pedal (1) to stop the breaker.
4. Always keep attachment pedal (1) locked with pedal lock (2) when attachment pedal (1) is not in use.



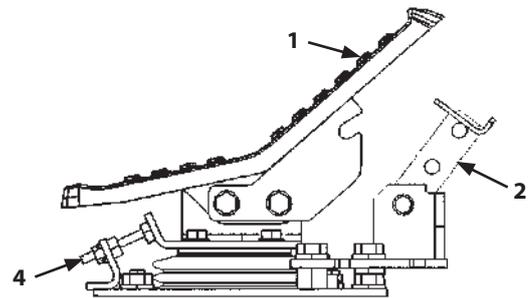
ZX75US-5N

MDED-13-001



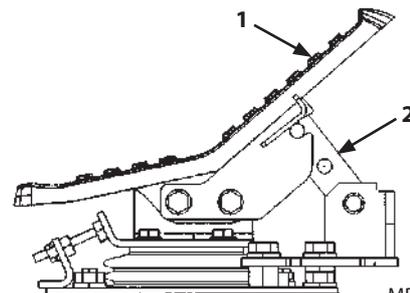
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-13-002



Unlocked Attachment Pedal

MDED-13-003



Locked Attachment Pedal

MDED-13-004

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Precautions for Breaker Operation

⚠ WARNING : Machine stability is reduced as the breaker is much heavier than the bucket. When using a breaker, the machine is more apt to tip over. Also, flying objects may hit the cab or other part of the machine. Observe the following precautions and take any other precautions necessary to prevent accidents and machine damage from occurring.

Avoid Hitting Objects with Breaker.

The breaker is heavier than the bucket, causing the breaker to lower faster.

Take care not to hit any objects with breaker. Doing so will result in damage to the breaker, the front attachment, and/or the upperstructure. Always move (lower) the breaker slowly to position the tip of the chisel on the object to be broken before starting breaker operation.



MZX5-13-019

Avoid Moving Objects with Breaker.

Do not use the breaker and/or the bracket to move objects. Damage to the boom, arm, and/or breaker may result. Do not use the breaker and/or the swing function to move objects. Damage to the boom, arm, and/or breaker may result.

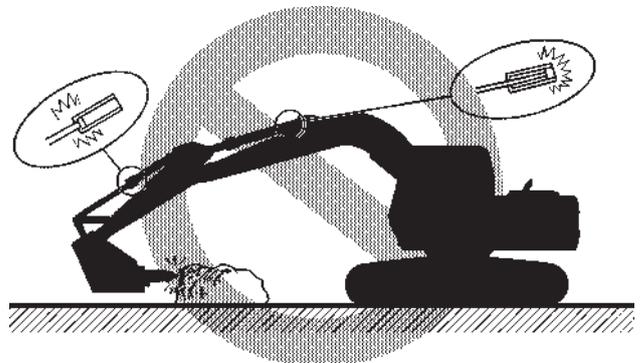


MZX5-13-020

Avoid Operating Breaker at Cylinder Stroke End

Always operate the breaker by positioning the cylinder rods 100 mm or longer before the stroke end position.

When operating the breaker with cylinders fully retracted or extended, hydraulic cylinders, arm or boom may be damaged.



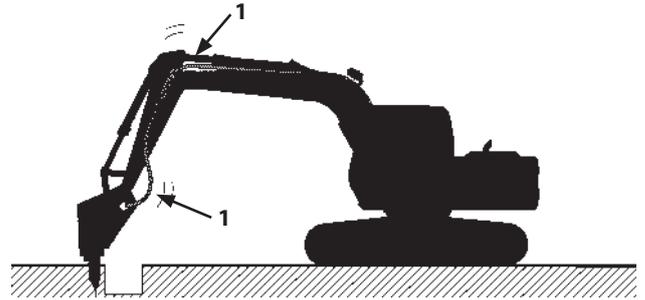
MZX5-13-021

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Stop operation if breaker hydraulic hoses jump abnormally.

When a hydraulic hose (1) shakes abnormally, continuing to use it as-is results in massive shock, damage to the pump and a negative impact on the machine. Immediately consult the nearest Hitachi representative.

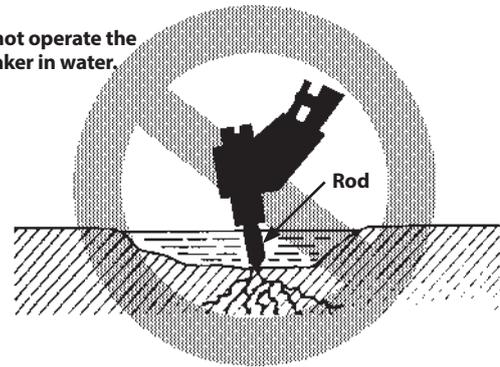


M104-05-058

Do Not Operate the Breaker in Water.

Doing so will cause rust and seal damage, resulting in damage to the hydraulic system components. Rust, dust and water may enter into the hydraulic oil through the broken seal, damage to the hydraulic system may result.

Do not operate the breaker in water.



MZX5-13-017

Do Not Use Breaker for Lifting Operation.

The machine tipping over and/or breaker damage may result.



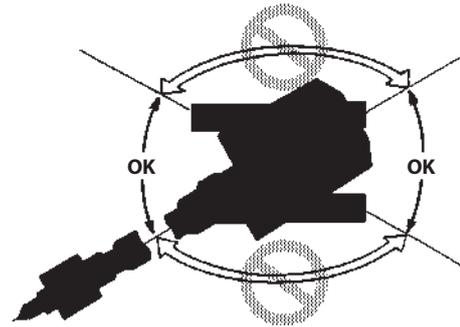
MZX5-13-022

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

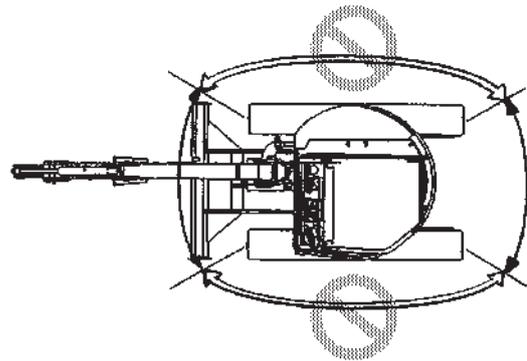
Do Not Operate the Breaker to the Side of the Machine.

The machine may become unstable and undercarriage component life may shorten as a result from operating the breaker to the side of the machine.



ZX75US-5N

MZX5-13-023

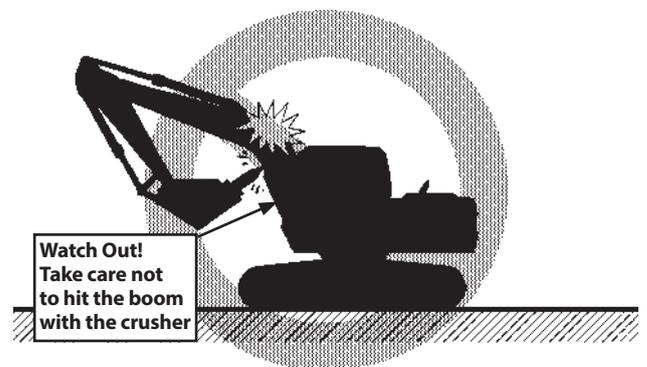


ZX85USB-5N

MZX5-13-005

Operate the Hydraulic Excavator Carefully to Avoid Hitting the Boom.

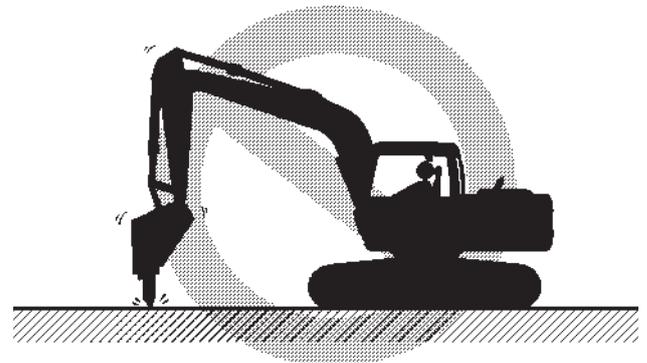
When the arm rolled in with the breaker equipped, the chisel may come in contact with the boom.



MZX5-13-024

Do Not Operate Breaker with the Arm Positioned Vertically.

Excessive vibration to the arm cylinder will occur, causing oil leakage.



MZX5-13-006

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Press the Breaker So That the Chisel (The Axis) Is Positioned and Thrusted Perpendicular to the Object.

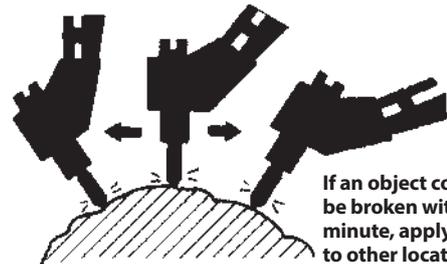
Failure to do so may damage the chisel or may cause seized piston.



MZX5-13-007

Do Not Operate the Breaker Continuously Longer Than One Minute.

Failure to do so may result in premature wear of the chisel. If an object could not be broken within one minute, apply the chisel to other locations, less than one minute for each location.

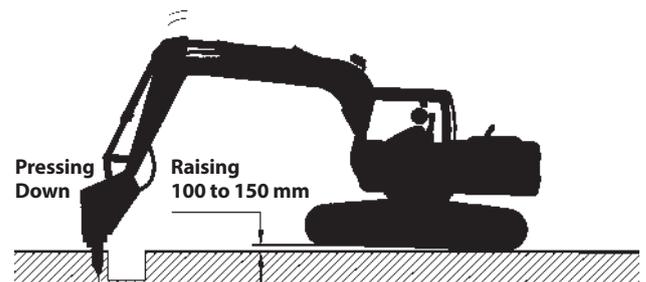


If an object could not be broken within one minute, apply the chisel to other locations.

M147-05-015

Raising the Front Part of the Undercarriage by Pressing Down the Breaker May Cause Damage to the Front Attachment.

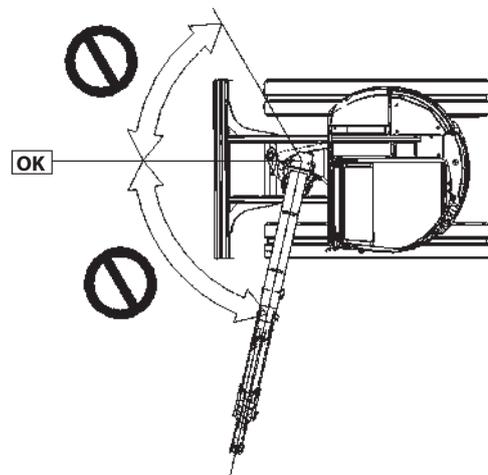
Never raise the front edge of the undercarriage higher than 150 mm (6 in) by pressing the breaker down.



M147-05-016

Do Not operate breaker with the boom swing operation. (ZX85USB-5N)

Do not operate the breaker for long period of time while swinging the boom. Failure to do so may shorten the service life of the main frame.



MADB-13-044

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element

Hydraulic breaker operation subjects the hydraulic system to become contaminated faster and to quickly deteriorate the hydraulic oil.

Failure to adhere to proper maintenance intervals may result in damage to the base machine and the breaker.

In order to extend the service life particularly of the hydraulic pump, change the hydraulic oil and the full-flow filter element at the specified frequency given below. (Refer to the "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" Section.)

Replacement intervals differ depending on the brand of hydraulic oil used. Refer to the Hydraulic System in the MAINTENANCE section.

Use the high performance element (micro-glass) on excavators engaged in demolition and logging work.

 *NOTE : Full-flow filter restriction indicator is optional. If a filter-paper element is used, this indicator does not operate. (Refer to the "Hydraulic System" in the "MAINTENANCE" Section.)*

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

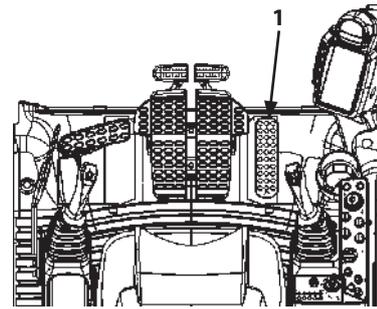
Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Crusher) Std. Model (Optional)

The crusher can be operated using attachment pedal (1) located on the right front of the seat, as illustrated.

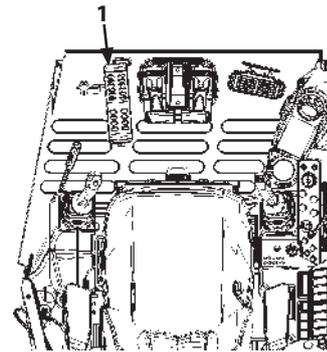
CAUTION: Be sure to lock attachment pedal (1) with pedal lock (2) when the attachment pedal is not in use. Do not allow your foot to rest on the pedal when the attachment pedal (1) is not in use. When changing pedal lock (2) position, pull the pilot control shut-off lever up to the LOCK position.

1. Move pedal lock (2) forward to the UNLOCK position.
2. Push down on attachment pedal (1) either forward or backward to open or close the crusher.
3. Remove foot from attachment pedal (1) to stop the crusher.
4. Always keep attachment pedal (1) locked with pedal lock (2) when attachment pedal (1) is not in use.



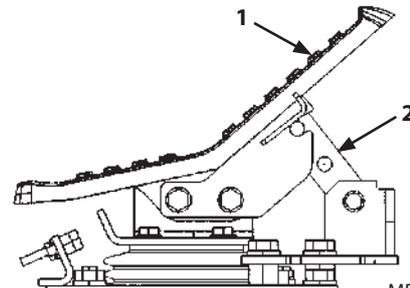
ZX75US-5N

MDED-13-001



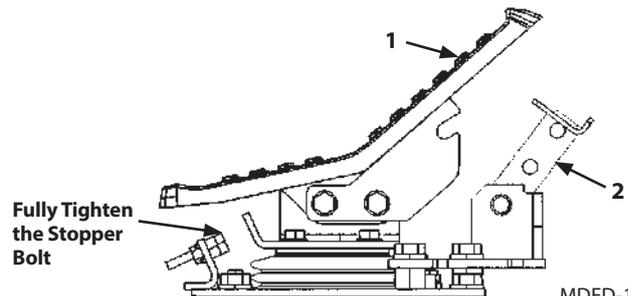
ZX85USB-5N

MDED-13-002



Locked Attachment pedal (Crusher)

MDED-13-005



Unlocked Attachment pedal (Crusher)

MDED-13-006

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

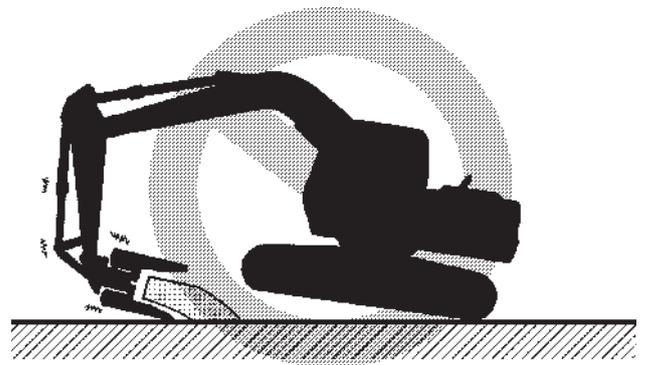
Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Precautions for Crusher Operation

Prevent machine tipping over and damage to the front attachment. Observe the following precautions for crusher operation.

⚠ WARNING : Machine stability is reduced as crusher is much heavier than bucket. When operating with a crusher, the machine is more apt to tip over. Falling or flying objects may hit the cab or other part of the machine. Observe the following precautions and take any other precautions necessary to prevent accidents and machine damage from occurring.

- Do not allow the machine's weight to be supported by the crusher or bucket cylinder with the bucket cylinder fully extended or retracted. Failure to do so may result in damage to the front attachment. In particular, avoid doing so with the bucket cylinder fully extended, as the front attachment will be easily damaged. Take care to prevent this from happening when dismantling foundation structures using the crusher.
- Using the front attachment, do not raise the base machine off the ground with the arm cylinder fully extended. Failure to do so may result in damage to the arm cylinder.
- When a heavyweight attachment such as a crusher is installed, avoid quickly starting or stopping the front attachment. Failure to do so may result in damage to the front attachment.
- Do not attempt to perform crushing on either side of the machine. Always perform crushing operations to the fore or rear, parallel with the tracks. Otherwise, tipping over may occur.



MZX5-13-008

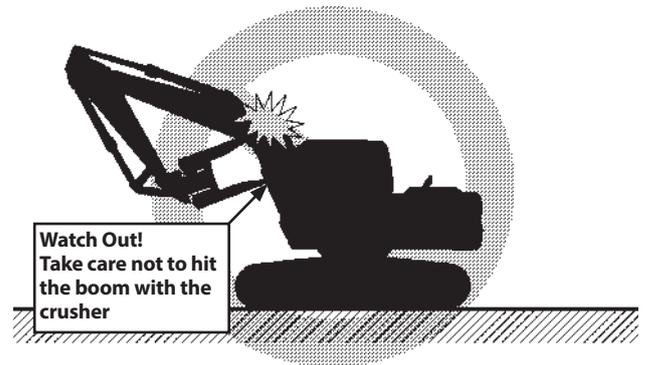


MZX5-13-009

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

- When the arm rolled in with the crusher equipped, the crusher may come in contact with the boom.



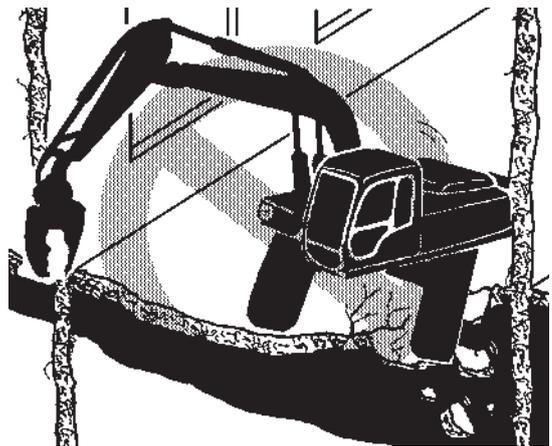
MZX5-13-010

- When operating the crusher up high with the boom fully raised, be careful of falling objects.



MZX5-13-011

- When operating the crusher on a floor in a building, first confirm that the floor has sufficient strength to support the load caused by crushing, in addition to the machine weight.
The load equivalent or higher than the machine weight may be applied on floor depending on the operation method.



MZX5-13-012

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

- Always operate the crusher on a stable, level surface, not on a slope or on crushed scraps.
- Do not use the crusher to haul or load crushed scraps.
- If a multiple number of attachments, such as crusher and bucket, or crusher and breaker, are used, replacing them with each other at intervals, impurities are more apt to enter the hydraulic system and the hydraulic oil deteriorates quickly. For this reason, replace the hydraulic oil tank filter and change the hydraulic oil at the intervals specified in the breaker time sharing diagram in the previous section.
- Always remove the crusher from the excavator before transporting the machine. Do not fully extend the bucket cylinder when transporting, as this may damage the front attachment, when vibrations arise during transportation.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Attachment

Allowable Weight Limits of Installed Attachment

- When an attachment other than the standard bucket is installed on the machine, the machine stability will be different.
If a heavy attachment is used, not only will controllability be affected but also machine stability will be reduced, possibly causing safety hazard.
- Before installing attachments such as hydraulic breaker, crusher (concrete crusher), or pulverizer, take machine controllability into account when selecting the weight of the attachment by referring to the table below.

Unit : kg (lb)

Specification	Base Machine		Breaker		Crusher/Pulverizer	
	Model	Arm	Std. Weight	Max. Weight	Std. Weight	Max. Weight
Standard Type	ZX75US-5N	Std.	700 (1540)	750 (1650)	800 (1760)	950 (2090)
	ZX85USB-5N	Std.	550 (1210)	600 (1320)	650 (1430)	750 (1650)

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

- Breaker operation speed is faster than crusher operation so that the recommended breaker max. weights are reduced more than those of the crushers.
- The weight is not the only factor to be considered when selecting a breaker. Select proper manufacturer's breaker models while referring to the table on the next page.
- Avoid installing an attachment with a long overall length. Damage to the front attachment may result.
- When an attachment of the max. weight is installed, always operate the attachment over the front or rear side of the machine. In addition, avoid operating the attachment at the maximum reach.
- Crushers are heavier than breakers. Slowly move the control lever when operating a crusher.

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Attachment

Example commercial attachment models (breakers and crushers) for excavators are shown in the following table. Among the crusher models, some models are heavier than the recommended weight on the previous page. Before installing them, sufficiently coordinate with the attachment manufacturer. Always contact your nearest HITACHI dealer before installing attachments shown with this mark *.

When an attachment other than the standard bucket is installed on the machine, the machine stability will be different. If a heavy attachment is used, not only will controllability be affected but also machine stability will be reduced, possibly causing safety hazard. Thoroughly read and understand the base machine operator's manual and the attachment manual to prevent accidents.

Breaker

Maker	HITACHI		NPK	NPK	Okada	Furu-kawa	Mitsubishi	Toukuu	Matuda	MON-TABERT	STK	Ranma	GERMANY KRUPP	
Model	HSB66	HSB66S	H-10XB	E-12X	OUB312	HB20G	MKB1400	TNB14E	THBB1400	BRH501	SIB221	E-66	HM960CS	
Weight	kg (lb)	1510 (3330)	1520 (3350)	1450 (3200)	1550 (3420)	1400 (3090)	1480 (3260)	1480 (3260)	1487 (3280)	1480 (3260)	1350 (2980)	1400 (3090)	1300 (2870)	1500 (3310)
Flow Rate	(L/min)	110~160	110~160	160~200	165~210	140~180	125~150	110~160	130~170	120~170	110~140	160~210	100~160	130~170
Operating Pressure	MPa (kgf/cm ²)	12.3~13.2 (125~135)	12.3~13.2 (125~135)	11.8~13.7 (120~140)	15.7~17.7 (160~180)	13.7~16.7 (140~170)	15.7~17.6 (160~180)	14.7~17.6 (150~180)	12.7~16.7 (130~170)	9.8~12.7 (100~130)	7.8~10.8 (80~110)	15.7~17.6 (160~180)	13.2~14.2 (135~145)	11.8~13.7 (120~140)
Secondary Relief Valve Set Pressure	MPa (kgf/cm ²)	21.6 (220)	21.6 (220)	—	—	17.6 (180)	17.6 (180)	17.6 (180)	17.6 (180)	12.7 (130)	10.8 (110)	19.6 (200)	15.9 (160)	16.7 (170)

Crusher

Maker	HITACHI		SANGO JYUKI	NPK*	Sakado	Oosumi*	STK*	
Model	HSC100	HSC160	TS850RCD	S-22XA	SPAC80R-3	MR1100-2	CX1100	
Weight	kg (lb)	2430 (5360)	2300 (5070)	2000 (4410)	2000 (4410)	1640 (3620)	2100 (4630)	2350 (5180)
Overall Length	mm (ft.in)	2340 (7'8")	2600 (8'6")	2500 (8'2")	2500 (8'2")	1810 (5'11")	2100 (6'11")	2450 (8'0")
Rated Pressure	MPa (kgf/cm ²)	27.9 (285)	27.9 (285)	27.4 (280)	24.5 (250)	27.4 (280)	27.4 (280)	27.4 (280)
Maximum Opening Width	mm (ft.in)	900 (2'11")	850 (2'9")	850 (2'9")	850 (2'9")	850 (2'9")	1000 (3'3")	1100 (3'7")
Swing Method		Hydraulic	Hydraulic	Free	Free	Free	Free	Free
Jaw Tip Crushing Force	kN (tf-f)	640 (65)	—	980 (100)	970 (99)	630 (64)	—	590 (60)
Jaw Center Crushing Force	kN (tf-f)	980 (100)	1570 (160)	1570 (160)	—	780 (80)	1540 (157)	880 (90)

 **NOTE:** Size change of return front piping may needed for some MONTABERT breaker. Consult your nearest Hitachi dealer.

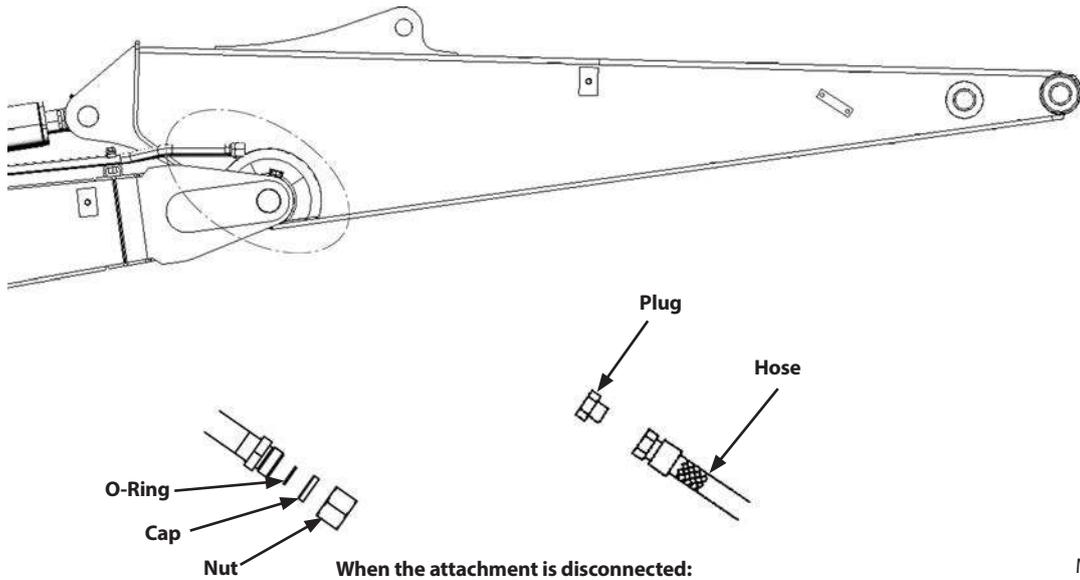
OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Attachment Connection Parts

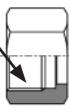
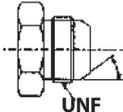
The attachment hydraulic line and connection parts are located as illustrated below. When the attachment is disconnected, be sure to install caps or plugs to the ends of both the boom and attachment side hydraulic lines to prevent dust from entering or from sticking.

Year of Manufacturing: To May 2020



MDEC-13-001

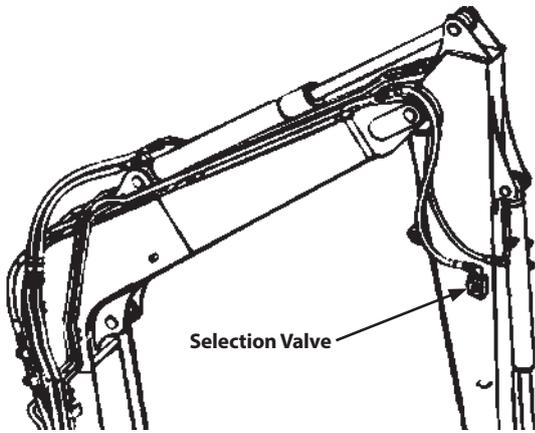
Part No. List (Fill attachment manufacturer's part Nos. in the blank spaces.)

Maker	Nominal Size	O-Ring	Cap	Nut	Plug	Hose
	Female-Type UNF			UNF 	 UNF	
	1-3/16-12UN	4187308	4189094	4188136	4209823	

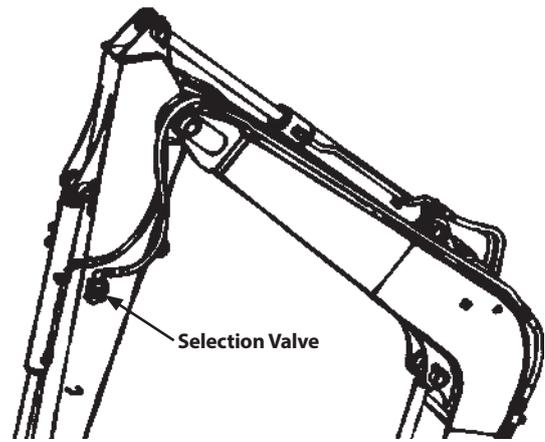
OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

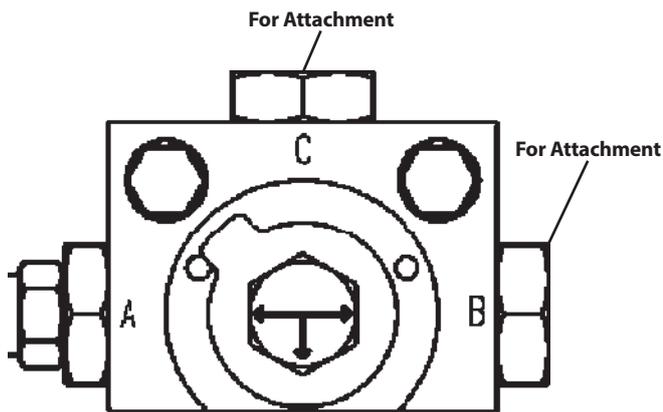
Year of Manufacturing: From June 2020



MDEC-13-004

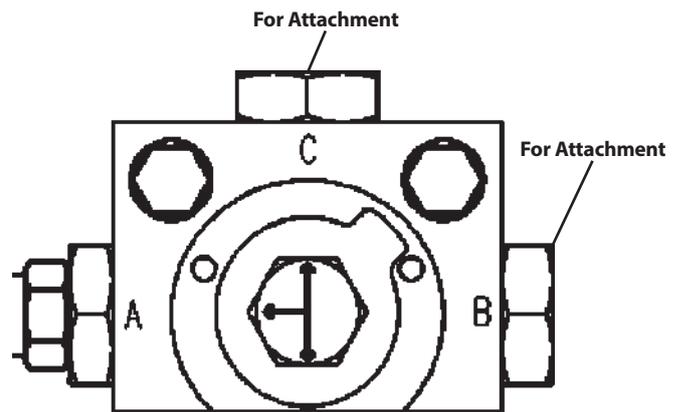


MDEC-13-005



MABC-13-008

When using attachment of port "B" side.



MABC-13-009

When using attachment of port "C" side.

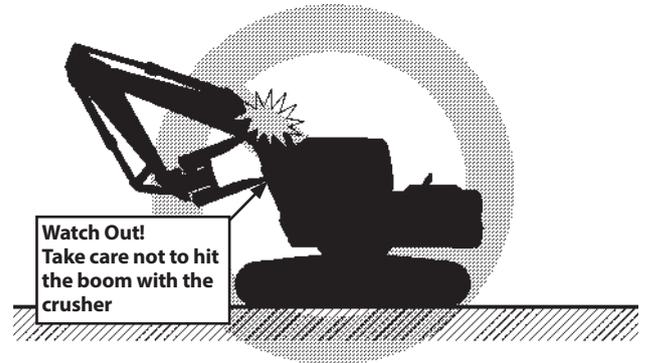
OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler

Precaution for Arm Roll-In/Bucket Roll-In Combined Operation

When Installing an Attachment Longer Than Standard Bucket

- ⚠ WARNING :** When an attachment (such as a hydraulic breaker, crusher or quick coupler), the overall length of which is longer than that of the bucket, is installed, the attachment may come in contact with the cab and/or the boom. Operate the machine with care not to allow the tip of the front attachment to hit the cab and/or the boom while rolling in the front attachment.



MZX5-13-010

Precaution for Arm Roll-In/Bucket Roll-In Combined Operation

---If Headguard-Integrated Cab or Rainguard is Equipped

- ⚠ WARNING :** The bucket teeth will hit the headguard or rainguard if the bucket is rolled in with the arm fully rolled in, as illustrated. When performing combined operation of long arm roll-in/bucket roll-in or when rolling in the bucket with the arm fully retracted, be careful not to hit the headguard or rainguard with the bucket teeth.



MDED-13-007

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Control Lever (HITACHI)

Control Lever (HITACHI)

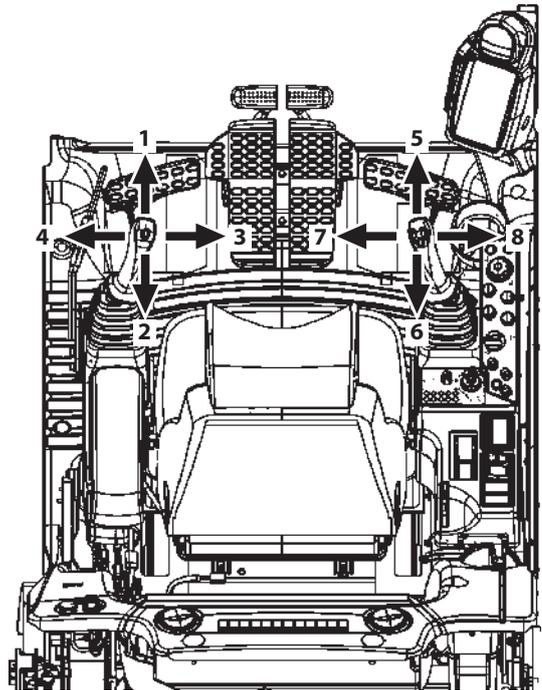
WARNING :

- **Never place any part of body beyond window frame. It could be crushed by the boom if boom control lever is accidentally bumped or otherwise engaged. Never remove the window sash bar.**
- **Make sure you know the location and function of each control before operating.**
- **Do not change the control lever operation pattern. Failure to do so may result in operation mistake of the machine.**

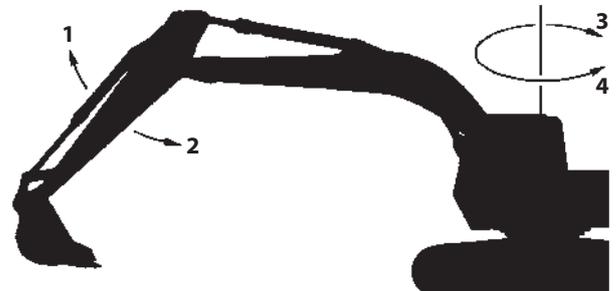
A label showing the control patterns of the levers and pedals is attached on the right side in the cab.

When a lever is released, it will automatically return to neutral, and that machine function will stop.

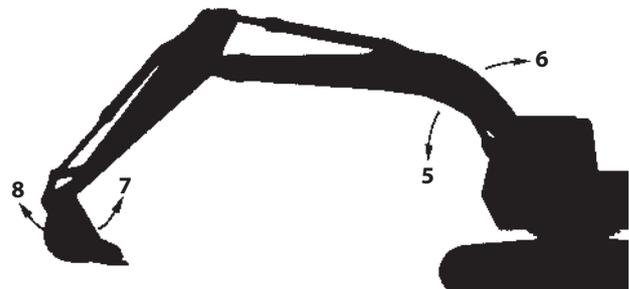
- 1- Swing Right
- 2- Swing Left
- 3- Arm Roll-In
- 4- Arm Roll-Out
- 5- Boom Lower
- 6- Boom Raise
- 7- Bucket Roll-In
- 8- Bucket Roll-Out



MDAA-01-288



M104-05-001



M104-05-002

OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES

Control Lever (SAE-backhoe Pattern)

Control Lever (SAE-backhoe Pattern)

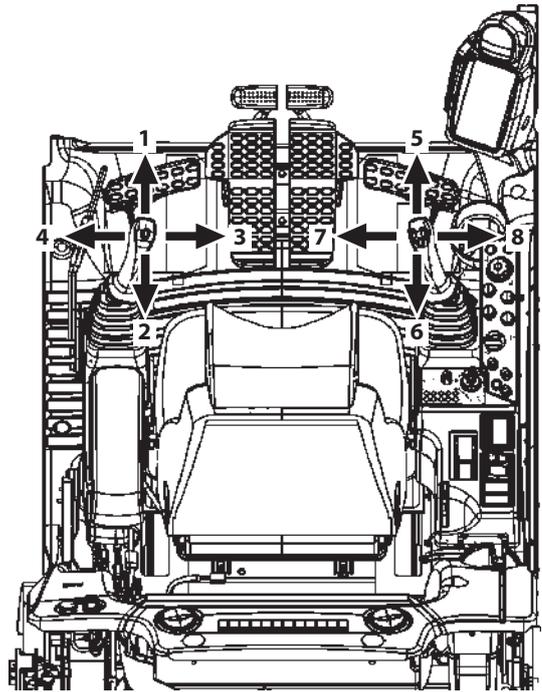
WARNING :

- **Never place any part of body beyond window frame. It could be crushed by the boom if boom control lever is accidentally bumped or otherwise engaged. Never remove the window sash bar.**
- **Make sure you know the location and function of each control before operating.**
- **Do not change the control lever operation pattern. Failure to do so may result in operation mistake of the machine.**

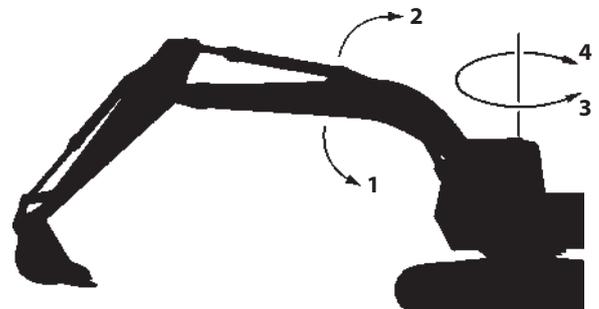
A label showing the control patterns of the levers and pedals is attached on the right side in the cab.

When a lever is released, it will automatically return to neutral, and that machine function will stop.

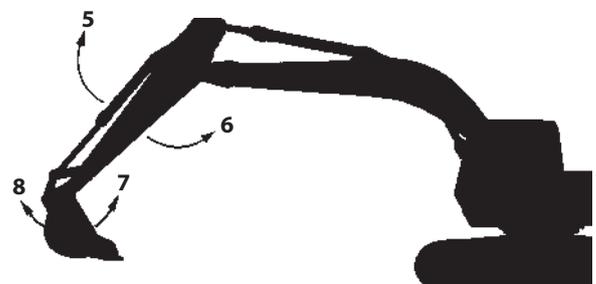
- 1- Boom Lower
- 2- Boom Raise
- 3- Swing Left
- 4- Swing Right
- 5- Arm Roll-Out
- 6- Arm Roll-In
- 7- Bucket Roll-In
- 8- Bucket Roll-Out



MDAA-01-288



M104-05-065



M104-05-066

INDEX

A	
Acting Time Setting	1-40
Actual operation	1-69
Adjust Bucket Linkage	7-73
Adjust the Operator's Seat	5-6
Adjusting Operator's Seat	1-120
Adjusting Operator's Seat (Optional)	1-122
Adjusting Procedures.....	1-124
Adjusting Seat Height.....	1-122
Air Bleeding Procedures.....	7-36, 7-51
Air Cleaner	7-55
Air Conditioner	1-28
Air Conditioner ON/OFF.....	1-28
Alarm Occurrence Screen.....	1-18
AM/FM Radio Operation.....	1-106
AM/FM Selector/Tuning Switch (Radio)	1-81
Angle Adjustment of Seat Surface	1-123
Armrest Adjustment.....	1-121, 1-123
Attachment.....	13-14
Attachment Connection Parts	13-17
Attachment Operation	1-65
Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Breaker) (Optional)	13-4
Attachment Pedal (Hydraulic Crusher) Std. Model (Optional).....	13-10
Audio Input (Optional)	1-110
Auto Air Conditioner	1-98
Auto Shut-Down.....	1-39, 5-8
Auto Shut-Down: ON/OFF.....	1-39
AUTO/OFF Switch/Fan Switch (Air Conditioner)	1-80
Auto-Idle.....	5-6
Auto-Idle Switch	1-82
Avoid Abusive Operation	5-18
Avoid Applying Heat to Lines Containing Flammable Fluids.....	5-35
Avoid Driving Bucket Teeth into Ground	5-17
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines	5-35
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	5-30
Avoid Hitting Blade with Front-End Attachment.....	5-19
Avoid Injury from Back-Over and Swing Accidents	5-17
Avoid Injury from Rollaway Accidents.....	5-16
Avoid Power Lines.....	5-21
Avoid Side Load the Bucket.....	5-18
Avoid Striking With Bucket	5-17
Avoid Tipping.....	5-19
Avoid Undercutting.....	5-19
B	
BREAK-IN.....	2-1
Backrest Adjustment.....	1-121, 1-123
Basic Screen.....	1-10
Batteries.....	7-62
Before Starting Engine	3-2
Beware of Asbestos and Silicon Dust and Other Contamination.....	5-36
Beware of Exhaust Fumes.....	5-33
Blade Joint Pins	7-22
Blade Lever	5-3
Breaking in New Machine	2-1
Brightness Adjustment.....	1-51
C	
COMPONENTS NAME.....	1-1, 1-99
Cab Door Release Lever	1-111
Cab Features.....	1-6
ZX75US-5N	1-6
ZX85USB-5N	1-7
Cab Heater Operation.....	1-102
Cab Light Switch.....	1-94
Change Bucket	7-71
Change Coolant	7-60
Change Engine Oil	7-24
Change Hydraulic Oil	7-34
Change Hydraulic Oil and Replace Full-Flow Filter Element	7-30, 13-9
Check Air Conditioner.....	7-85
Check and Adjust Fan Belt Tension	7-59
Check and Clean Filter Element of Muffler Filter.....	7-99
Check and Clean Muffler Filter	7-99
Check and Replace Bucket Teeth.....	7-69
Check and Replace Seat Belt.....	7-74
Check Coolant Level.....	7-58
Check Crankcase Breather.....	7-89
Check Electrolyte Specific Gravity.....	7-65
Check Fuel Hoses.....	7-54
Check Fuel Level	7-47
Check Gas Damper	7-88
Check Hoses and Lines.....	7-43
Check Hydraulic Oil Level.....	7-32
Check Instruments After Starting Engine.....	3-7
Check Intake Throttle Valve	7-89
Check Radiator Cap	7-89
Check Rubber Track for Damage	7-79
Check Starter and Alternator	7-88
Check the Hour Meter Regularly.....	7-3
Check Track Sag (Rubber Crawler) (Optional)	7-79
Check Track Sag (Steel Crawler)	7-76
Check Windshield Fluid Level	7-75
Check, Clean and Function Check EGR Valve	7-88
Check, Clean and Function Check Injector	7-88
Cigar Lighter.....	1-93
Circulation Air Mode	1-28
Clean Air Conditioner Condenser.....	7-61
Clean and Replace Air Cleaner Outer Element	7-55
Clean and Replace Air Conditioner Filter.....	7-82
Clean Cab Floor	7-87
Clean EGR Cooler.....	7-89
Clean Fuel Cooler Front Screen	7-61
Clean Oil Cooler and Radiator Front Screen	7-61
Clean Radiator and Oil Cooler Core	7-61
Clock.....	1-14
Confirm Direction of Machine to Be Driven.....	5-13
Console and Seat Fore-aft Adjustment	1-120, 1-122
Console Height Adjustment	1-124
Control Lever (HITACHI).....	13-20

INDEX

Control Lever (ISO Pattern)	5-1	Fuse Box A.....	1-97
Control Lever (SAE-backhoe Pattern).....	13-21	Fuse Box B	1-97
Controller Part Name and Function.....	1-100	G	
Controls on the Radio	1-106	GETTING ON/OFF THE MACHINE	1-2
Convert Bucket Connection Into Face Shovel.....	7-72	General Precautions for Cab.....	5-5
Converting the Track.....	7-81	Grading Operation.....	5-16
Cool Head/Warm Foot Operation.....	1-104	Greasing.....	7-18
Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	1-15	H	
Cooling Operation	1-103	Handle Chemical Products Safely.....	5-38
Cooling System	7-57	Handle Fluids Safely—Avoid Fires.....	5-24
Correct Maintenance and Inspection Procedures.....	7-1	Hood and Access Covers.....	7-9
D		Horn Switch.....	1-89
DRIVING THE MACHINE	4-1	Hour Meter.....	1-14
Date Adjustment	1-35	How to Use Screens.....	1-11
Date and Time.....	1-33	Hydraulic Breaker, Hydraulic Crusher and Quick Coupler.....	13-1
Default Setting	1-9	Hydraulic System	7-28
Defroster Operation	1-104	I	
Demolition and logging work	7-38	Information Menu.....	1-62
Dig with Caution.....	5-20	Input Password.....	1-16
Display Item Selection (Rear View Camera OFF).....	1-58	Inspect and Adjust Valve Clearance.....	7-88
Display Mode Setting.....	1-37	Inspect Machine	5-4
Displaying Basic Screen	1-11	Inspect Machine Daily Before Starting	3-1
Dispose of Waste Properly.....	5-38	Inspection and Maintenance of Hydraulic Equipment... 7-28	
Do Not Use Wide Track Shoes on Rough Ground.	5-20	Install OPG Guard	5-12
Drain Fuel Pre-Filter	7-50	Installation and Adjustment of Mirrors	1-125
Drain Fuel Tank Sump	7-49	Investigate Job Site Beforehand	5-11
Drain Hydraulic Tank Sump	7-33	J	
Drive Machine Safely.....	5-14	Jump Starting	5-9
E		K	
Electrical Control Main Switch (Optional).....	1-88, 1-90	Keep Person Clear from Working Area.....	5-18
Electrical System.....	7-62	Keep Riders off Machine	5-9
Electrolyte Level Check	7-64	Key Switch.....	1-89
Emergency Boom Lowering Procedure	5-23	Kind of Oils.....	7-15
Emergency Exit	1-118	L	
Engine.....	7-23	Language Settings	1-53
Engine Control Dial.....	1-81	Layout.....	7-4
Engine Oil Level	7-23	Lifting.....	5-22
Engine Speed Control.....	5-5	Lifting Machine	6-7
Engine Stop Switch.....	1-96	Lists of Display Language.....	1-55
Ensure Safety Before Rising from or Leaving Operator's Seat.....	5-7	Loading/Unloading on a Trailer	6-2
Evacuating in Case of Fire.....	5-33	M	
Extending Password Duration Time	1-17	MACHINE NUMBERS	1
F		MAINTENANCE UNDER SPECIAL ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS	9-1
Fasten Your Seat Belt.....	5-7	Mail (Optional).....	1-30
Fastening Machine for Transporting	6-5	Main Menu.....	1-27
Features	1-98	Main Menu Sequence Change	1-60
Follow Safety Instructions.....	5-2	Maintenance	1-71, 7-1
For Rapid Cooling.....	1-105	Maintenance Guide	7-10
Fore-Aft Position Adjustment of Seat Surface	1-123	Maintenance Guide Table.....	7-5
Front Joint Pins.....	7-18	Maintenance Notice	1-71
Fuel Consumption.....	1-63		
Fuel Gauge.....	1-14		
Fuel System.....	7-47		
Fuse Box.....	1-97		

INDEX

Manual Regeneration Procedure.....	1-26	Precautions for Breaker Operation.....	13-5
Measure Engine Compression Pressure.....	7-88	Precautions for Communication Terminal.....	5-39
Miscellaneous.....	7-69	Precautions for Crusher Operation	13-11
Monitoring.....	1-77	Precautions for Handling Accumulator and Gas Damper	5-35
Move and Operate Machine Safely.....	5-8	Precautions for Lightning.....	5-21
Muffler Filter.....	1-3, 1-24, 7-99	Precautions for Operations.....	5-10
Muffler Filter Condition Display	1-24	Precautions for Traveling on Slopes.....	4-10
Muffler Filter Manual Regeneration.....	5-11	Precautions for Welding and Grinding	5-34
Muffler Filter Manual Regeneration Request	1-25	Preparations for Inspection and Maintenance	7-8
Muffler Filter Regeneration Inhibited	1-41	Prepare for Emergencies.....	5-3
Multi Function Monitor	1-8	Prevent Battery Explosions	5-37
N		Prevent Burns.....	5-29
Never Position Bucket Over Anyone	5-18	Prevent Fires.....	5-31
Never Ride Attachment.....	5-39	Prevent Parts from Flying	5-28
Never Undercut a High Bank.....	5-20	Protect Against Flying Debris and Falling Object.....	5-23
Notes for Muffler Filter.....	5-39	Protect Against Noise	5-4
Notes on Protection of Operator's Station When the Machine Rolls Over.....	5-40	Provide Signals for Jobs Involving Multiple Machines....	5-13
Numeric Keypad	1-85	R	
O		Radio	1-29
OPERATING THE ENGINE.....	3-1	Raise One Track Using Boom and Arm	4-7
OPERATING THE MACHINE.....	5-1	Rear View Camera Monitor	1-49
OPERATOR'S STATION	1-3	Rear View Camera ON/OFF	1-49
OTHER ATTACHMENTS AND DEVICES	13-1	Rear Work Light Switch (Optional)	1-87
Object Handling	5-22	Recognize Safety Information	5-1
Off-Season Air Conditioner Maintenance	1-105	Recommended Engine Oil	7-15
Opening Side Windows.....	1-116	Remedy	1-20
Opening Upper Front Window.....	1-113	Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating	5-36
Opening/Closing and Removing Cab Inside Window ..	1-112	Remove Travel Levers.....	7-74
Opening/Closing Overhead Window (Clear Hatch: If Equipped)	1-117	Removing and Storing Lower Front Window	1-115
Operate Only from Operator's Seat	5-8	Replace Air Breather Element	7-42
Operate with Caution	5-20	Replace Air Cleaner Inner Elements (Optional)	7-55
Operating Backhoe.....	5-14	Replace Batteries	7-66
Operating in Water or Mud.....	4-9	Replace Engine Oil Filter	7-24
Operating Status Icon Display	1-15	Replace Fuel Main Filter Element	7-52
Operation	1-63	Replace Fuel Pre-Filter Element	7-53
Overhead Window Wiper and Washer Switch (ZX75US-5N) (Optional)	1-85	Replace Full-Flow Filter	7-37
Overload Alarm Switch (Optional)	1-87	Replace Pilot Oil Filter	7-40
P		Replace Rubber Hoses Periodically.....	5-30
Park Machine Safely.....	5-24	Replace Swing Drain Filter	7-41
Parking the Machine	4-11	Replacing Fuses	7-67
Parking the Machine on Slopes.....	4-11	Restriction of Attachment Installation	5-12
Password Change (Optional).....	1-43	Return to Basic Screen (Monitor)	1-80
Periodic Replacement of Parts.....	7-14	Return to Previous Screen (Monitor)	1-80
Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever	1-95, 5-2	Rotating Lamp Switch (Optional)	1-88
Pipings for Breaker and Crusher.....	13-2	S	
Power Mode	5-13	SAFETY	5-1
Power Mode Switch.....	1-83	SAFETY SIGNS	5-41
Power Switch/Volume Control Knob (Radio)	1-81	SPECIFICATIONS.....	12-1
Practice Safe Maintenance.....	5-26	STORAGE.....	10-1
Precaution for Arm Roll-In/Bucket Roll-In Combined Operation.....	13-19	Seat Belt	1-126
Precautions for After Operations	5-26	Seat Fore-Aft Adjustment.....	1-120, 1-122
		Seat Heater Switch	1-88
		Seat Height and Angle Adjustment.....	1-120
		Secondary Relief Pressure Adjustment	13-3

INDEX

Security Functions (Optional)	1-16	U	Understand Signal Words.....	S-1
Select/Confirm Switch (Monitor)	1-80	Unit Selection	1-56	
Serial No.....	7-41	Unloading	6-6	
ZX75US-5N 015001 to 017522	7-41	Use Handholds and Steps	S-6	
ZX85USB-5N 017001 to 022111	7-41	Using Booster Batteries	3-8	
Service Air Conditioning System Safely	S-37	Using Cigar Lighter	1-93	
Setting Menu	1-32	W		
Setting Procedure	1-41	Warming Up Operation.....	5-4	
Shackle Hole Usage	5-21	Warn Others of Service Work	S-27	
Shoe Types and Applications ZX75US-5N	12-3	Wear Protective Clothing.....	S-3	
Shoe Types and Applications ZX85USB-5N	12-6	When Windows Become Clouded.....	1-105	
Shovel	5-15	Wiper/Washer Switch.....	1-84	
Specifications ZX75US-5N.....	12-1	Wire Rope Length while lifting the Machine, Wire Rope Load Bearing Values	6-9	
Specifications ZX85USB-5N	12-4	Work Light Switch	1-83	
Starting the Engine	3-3	Working Ranges ZX75US-5N.....	12-2	
Station Auto-Presetting Procedure.....	1-108	Working Ranges ZX85USB-5N	12-5	
Station Presetting Procedure	1-107			
Stay Clear of Moving Parts	S-28			
Std. Model	7-37			
Stopping the Engine	3-10			
Store Attachments Safely	S-29			
Storing the Machine.....	10-1			
Sub Meter	1-47			
Suction Filter Cleaning	7-34			
Support Machine Properly	S-27			
Suspension Adjustment.....	1-120, 1-123			
Swing Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional).....	1-87			
Swing Bearing.....	7-20			
Swing Internal Gear	7-21			
Switch Panel	1-79			
Switch Panel (for Optional Equipment).....	1-86			
T				
Temperature Control Switch/Mode Switch (Air Conditioner).....	1-80			
Tightening and Retightening Torque of Nuts and Bolts	7-89			
Time Adjustment.....	1-33			
Time Remains and Maintenance Interval	1-73			
Tips for Optimal Air Conditioner Usage	1-105			
TONE Control	1-109			
Towing Machine	4-8			
Transmission	7-26			
Transport Safely	S-25			
TRANSPORTING.....	6-1			
Transporting by Road	6-1			
Travel Alarm (Optional)	4-4			
Travel Alarm Deactivation Switch (Optional)	1-87			
Travel Levers and Pedals	4-1			
Travel Mode Switch	1-82, 4-3			
Travel Operation	1-67			
Travel Reduction Gear	7-26			
Traveling	4-5			
Traveling on Soft Ground	4-6			
Troubleshooting	1-75, 11-1			
Tuning Procedure.....	1-106			